Haoma and Harmaline

The Botanical Identity of the Indo-Iranian Sacred
Hallucinogen “Soma” and its Legacy in Religion,
Language, and Middle Eastern Folklore

David Stophlet Flattery and
Martin Schwartz

University of California Press
HAOMA AND HARMALINE
Haoma and Harmaline

The Botanical Identity of the Indo-Iranian Sacred Hallucinogen "Soma" and its Legacy in Religion, Language, and Middle Eastern Folklore

David Stophlet Flattery and Martin Schwartz

University of California Press
Berkeley • Los Angeles • London
Contents

List of Tables and Figures, vii

Part I
David Stopflet Flattery

1. INTRODUCTION

2. PHARMACOLOGICAL CORRESPONDENCE
   Sauma Intoxication in Iranian Accounts, 13
   Harmel Intoxication, 23

3. HISTORICAL AND GEOGRAPHICAL AVAILABILITY OF HARMEL
   Iranian Awareness of the Properties of Harmel, 31
   Geographical Distribution of Harmel, 35

4. ETHNOBOTANIC CONTINUITY OF SAUMA IN IRAN
   The Iranian Names for Harmel Identify it as Sauma, 45
   Correspondence of Harmel to Sauma in Apotropaic Function, 47
   Correspondence in Attributes and Invocations, 54
   Attribution of generative powers, 60
   Simultaneously both Incense and Intoxicant, 62

5. THE EVIDENCE OF ZOROASTRIAN RITUALS
   Ephedra, 68
   (a) The relationship of Ephedra to sauma, 68
   (b) Ephedra as evidence that sauma was harmel, 75
   Pomegranate, 76
   (a) Pomegranate and the identification of sauma with hašanêspátā, 76
   (b) Pomegranate and the identification of sauma with barsom, 80
   Ruta graveolens, 84
   (a) Ruta graveolens in rituals represents harmel, 84
   (b) Use of Ruta graveolens in zaotras represents sauma, 86
   (c) Use of Ruta graveolens in the drôn ceremony represents sauma, 87
   (d) Use of Ruta graveolens to represent Avestan dūraoša, 88
   (e) Ruta graveolens and the history of soma in India, 92

6. THE HISTORICAL PERSISTENCE OF THE SAUMA RITES

7. SUMMARY OF ARGUMENTS SHOWING IDENTIY OF SAUMA AND HARMEL

v
Part II
Martin Schwartz

1. AVESTAN PASSAGES RELEVANT TO HAOMA
   Alleged Gathic References to haoma, 105
   Annotations to the Hōm Yasht, 106
   Yasna 10.8: urvāsman-, 106
   Yasna 10.14: Avestan draša-, 108
   Yasna 10.14 and 19: Avestan fraša-, 111
   Yasna 10.16: Avestan ūnā-, 113
   Yasna 11.2: Avestan bāšar-, 114
   Yasna 10.5: Avestan namy-(asu-), 114
   Pahlavi translations of Avestan mad-, 115

2. AVESTAN TERMS FOR THE SAUMA PLANT
   Etymology of soma-/haoma-, 117
   More on mushrooms, and the alleged PIE *bhongo- ‘psychotrope’, 121
   Haoma and hops, 129
   Avestan dūraoša-, 130
   Avestan hašānaṃpštā-, ‘Peganum harmala’, 130
   On pātā-, AtharvaVeda 2.27, 134
   Avestan barasman-, Indic barhīs, 138

3. OTHER NAMES FOR HARMAL
   Iranian *svanta ‘Peganum harmala’, 141
   Arabic harmal and its Old Berber equivalent, 144
   Egyptian epnoubou, 145
   Greek māju, 145
   Names for Harmel in al-Birūnī’s Kitāb al-Ṣaydana, 147
   Persian sudāb/sadāb, 148

References, 153

Index Locorum, 173

Word Index, 177

General Index, 191
List of Tables and Figures

TABLES

1. Some names for Peganum harmala L. 40
2. Some names for species of Ruta 41
3. Modern Indo-Iranian names for Ephedra species 70

FIGURES

1. Peganum harmala L. 38
2. Species of Ruta: Ruta graveolens, Ruta chalepensis, Ruta montana 39
3. Panja: Harmel capsules strung from a cloth square 48
4. Ephedra species of the Indo-Iranian area 71
5. The manipulation of harmel plants for extraction 81
Part I

David Stophlet Flattery
INTRODUCTION

§1 In this book I intend to demonstrate that harmel or wild rue, *Peganum harmala* L. (Zygophyllaceae), a common weed of the Central Asian Steppes, the Iranian Plateau, and adjacent areas, was the original intoxicant plant represented in the Iranian religious tradition by the term *haoma* and in the religious tradition of India by the etymologically identical term *soma*. I also intend to show that this identification of the plant improves our understanding of the origin and nature of certain rituals that were central to Indic and Iranian religions, and of the nature of the religions themselves.¹

§2 Both in the ancient Vedic rites of India, which are partially recorded in post-Vedic literature and to some extent are still practiced, and in the rites preserved by the surviving representatives of the ancient Iranian religion, the Zoroastrians, *soma/haoma* appear as the central and most important elements. The modern day rituals of the two traditions are accompanied by recitation of liturgies whose highly formulaic language preserves the most archaic forms of

¹ The synonyms harmel and *Peganum harmala* will be used interchangeably here. It may be claimed that harmel was implicitly the plant first identified with *soma* in Western scholarship. In 1794 Sir William Jones translated the only occurrence of *soma* in the *Laws of Manu* as “a species of mountain rue” (1796: 72). The reasons for Jones’s identification are unclear, but the plant growing in India which he could have most accurately characterized as “a species of mountain rue” is *Peganum harmala*. Neither the mountain rue known in Europe, *Ruta montana* L., nor any other species of the genus *Ruta*, occurs as a wild plant east of the Euphrates (see below, §127). The only genuine rue (i.e. *Ruta* species) known in India (or in Iran) is the cultivated garden herb *Ruta graveolens* L. Traditional Persian botany, however, regards *Peganum harmala* and *Ruta graveolens* as, respectively, the wild and cultivated species of the same genus, and since both plants have become widely known in India largely through their introduction by way of Iran, this taxonomy prevails in India as well. Since there is no uncultivated species of *Ruta* to which “rue” could refer in India, “mountain rue” must represent the Persian *sudab-i kühl* which is defined in Indo-Persian lexicons and botanical works as, in effect, *Peganum harmala*.

“Soma” was therefore virtually identified at the outset of the comparative study of Indo-Iranian cultures. This book may be regarded as the vindication of Jones’s original proposition. The probability that harmel was the source of *soma* has also been apparent to others since Jones, e.g. to Paul Ladero (1866), the zoologist Wilkins (see Roth 1884: 136n.), and Claudio Naranjo (Efron 1967: 445-446).
Indic and Iranian. These liturgies were memorized and transmitted orally and written down only much later. The attested texts speak of soma/haoma as intoxicating, yet the plants used in the present ceremonies associated with these texts are not intoxicating, nor is intoxication reflected in the conduct of the ceremonies. The plants now called soma and haoma lack the distinctive properties or cultural importance that could account for their being the focus of such ancient and elaborate practices.

§3 Despite the apparent conservation of minute details, these contemporary ceremonies are based on earlier practices which involved the drinking of an extract of an intoxicating plant. In neither tradition is the ceremony conducted with an open acknowledgment that the plant regularly used as soma or haoma is not the one originally used, or that the character of the rite was ever markedly different from what it is now. The respective secondary literatures of commentary and interpretation virtually ignore the absence of the intoxication indicated by the liturgical texts.

§4 The terms soma and haoma (pronounced hauma) are applied to the non-intoxicating plants used in modern ceremonies. In this connection it should be noted that *sauma-, the form which must be reconstructed for the Proto-Indo-Iranian ancestral language, merely denoted a ‘pressed out (liquid or plant)’, without reference to any more specific properties of the substance. Thus, rather than exclusively designating the primary intoxicant plant, the term *sauma could have referred to either nonintoxicating or intoxicating plants extracted in ceremonies, and early on came to be used as a common name for a secondary plant (namely Ephedra, see below, §106). Nevertheless, because of the narrowly Indian or Iranian sense of soma or haoma, the term sauma (without italics or asterisk to distinguish it from the hypothetical word *sauma- as it may have been historically used in Proto-Indo-Iranian) will be adopted here with restricted reference to the original intoxicant plant.

§5 Numerous scholars have attempted to find evidence for the identification of sauma in the numerous references to soma in the RgVeda, enigmatic though these may be. The most important of these studies is R. Gordon Wasson’s Soma: Divine Mushroom of Immortality (1968) and his subsequent publications, where it is argued that soma was the fly-agaric or Amanita muscaria, a hallucinogenic mushroom consumed until recently for intoxication by peoples in Siberia.  

---

2. Indian Brahmans know the plant now used as soma in south Indian rituals, Sarcostemma brevistigma, to be a substitute for an earlier "soma". The "soma" which Sarcostemma has directly replaced, however, seems not to have been the original plant but an Ephedra, a nonintoxicating plant which was itself a secondary constituent of rituals. See §§107-114.

3. For a summary of the history of scholarship on the botanical identification of sauma, discussing over 140 publications, see O’Flaherty (1968).
§6 Wasson (1971:171) states that the following four points respecting the ṚgVeda lead him to equate soma with Amanita muscaria: (1) there is no mention of the roots or branches or blossoms or seed of soma; (2) the poets locate the plant high in the mountains (and A. muscaria may be the one psychotropic plant which can only be found at high elevations in the Indo-Iranian area); (3) there appears in the hymns “a succession of tropes each appropriate for the fly-agaric, indeed fitting it like a glove”; and (4) “no word in the ṚgVeda is inconsistent with this plant.” The last of these points touches on a major difficulty of using the ṚgVeda to resolve the botanical identity of sauma, for the descriptions in the ṚgVeda are so general that they may be applied to any psychotropic plant and not just to Amanita muscaria. Hence, the Vedic evidence cannot be used as positive support for a specific identification of the plant; its value is merely corroborative. While Wasson’s first three points would seem to make A. muscaria a reasonable candidate, the actual significance of each is not beyond doubt, as may be noted: (1) A major reason why there is so little mention of the constituent elements of the soma plant is not that they were absent from the plant, but rather that, except in a very few cases (see Geldner 1951: 241), the soma referred to in the ṚgVeda and adduced by Wasson as pertaining to the mushroom is the liquid extract (soma pavamāṇa) or the deity Soma, and hence not the soma plant at all. Moreover, one cannot make too much of what the poets omit: all living things that appear in the ṚgVeda have parts of some kind which the text fails to mention, but one cannot on that account claim that a given part did not exist. (2) While soma in the ṚgVeda (and haoma in the Avesta) is indeed repeatedly said to grow in the mountains, it may be questioned whether these passages were intended to locate the plant physiographically, to indicate that it grew wild, or merely to assert its lofty origins (see below, §83). (3) Many allusions to soma could suit A. muscaria, albeit as it is seen in the field and not as it would appear in the circumstances of soma ceremonies, but each such allusion can be interpreted quite as appropriately in other ways. Ambiguity pervades virtually all of the complex metaphors and similes associated with soma in the ṚgVeda. There is, moreover, little reason to attribute to the Vedic poets any intention to describe the appearance of the soma plant.

§7 Although direct links between soma and Amanita muscaria have not been established, this mushroom has a remarkable property which may allow its presence to be determined indirectly. The urine of a person intoxicated by A. muscaria may itself be drunk for intoxication, and such urine drinking is actually attested in Siberia. Since such practices are not known for any other plant, if evidence could be found that the urine of soma drinkers was itself drunk, this would strongly support Wasson’s identification. No evidence for this, however, has come to light. According to Wasson (1970: 28): “there is only one overt passage in the ṚgVeda that refers to the soma-urine,” namely, “the
swollen men piss the flowing (soma) [9.48.4].” Even interpreting this literally (and supposing the “men” to refer to priests, which is not at all certain), there is still nothing to suggest the drinking of such urine. Wasson’s reason for suspecting that the urine of soma drinkers was consumed comes from an ostensible reference to this practice not in the RgVeda but in an Iranian source, namely in the Gathas of Zarathushtra, where, in Yasna 48.10, a passage occurs whose contents are summarized by Wasson as “[Zoroaster] exorciates the priests who evilly delude the people with the urine of drunkenness” (Wasson 1968: 32). If this were what was actually said in the Gathas, Wasson’s proposal would justify continued investigation. However, close examination of the text by Schwartz (1985a and 1987:4; see below, §158) reveals that such a translation is based on an erroneous reading; the alleged word “drunkenness”, madahyā, did not originally occur in this passage and appears in manuscripts as a scribal error for magahyā. In addition, the word translated as ‘urine’, mūḍrām, more likely means ‘feces, filth’. In reality, the passage has no connection with drinking at all, either of urine or of anything else, and has nothing remotely to do with sauma. Apart from the illusory support of this passage, none of the data presented by Wasson on the subject of urine drinking has any relevance for soma.4

§8 The limits of the possibilities of determining the botanical identity of sauma from the RgVeda have been made clear in Wasson’s work. As already mentioned, the Vedic descriptions of soma are so general that they cannot be used to prove or disprove his or any other hypothesis. Since no effective criteria have been established from the RgVeda, any probative evidence for the botanical identification of sauma must have its basis outside of that text.5

§9 Wasson attempted to find a plant that would provide a material basis for a widely assumed theory, namely, that the soma hymns of the Ninth Book of the RgVeda reflect direct experience of the drug, and that, as the hymns imply, soma was consumed in order to experience ecstasy, but that not long after the

4. The recycling of ones own urine for therapeutic purposes in modern India, to which Wasson (1978: 222; 1979: 104) draws attention, appears to reflect the influence of the popular book Human Urine, An Elixir of Life, by Rajivbhai Manibhai Patel (1963), the precedent for whose self experiments with urine drinking came not from Indian tradition but from 20th century Arkansas.

5. Some association of Indian vernacular plant names with sauma are considered below (§§109 and 140). The significance of such names is generally ignored by Wasson, probably because Indo-Iranian vernacular names for species of mushrooms are without links to sauma. Even if the Santal name putka, which Wasson found to be the “me for a puffball in Orissa, could derive from a Sanskrit word pūtika, meaning “stinking” (as Kramrisch [1975] proposes), this could be explained by the puffball’s cadaverous stench and there would still be no grounds for believing that a plant called in Sanskrit pūtika 2000 years earlier was a mushroom (and that, therefore, the soma which the pūtika replaced [as an additive to the clay of a ritual pot] was a mushroom). At all events, Kuiper (1984) has now shown that the Santal term putka has no etymological connection with Sanskrit pūtika, and is thus irrelevant.
hymns were composed, the original plant ceased to be available, for which reason it was replaced in the ceremonies by nonintoxicating substitutes. Rather than dwell upon the uncertainties of his conclusions, it is important here to examine whether the underlying assumptions are adequately founded. 

§10 One need not suppose that all the poets of the RgVeda had direct experience of sauma intoxication, for it appears that “soma intoxication” had become a fixed literary theme, a subject for elaboration by poets in verbal contests for many generations before the fixation of the Vedic texts. In the RgVeda soma is represented as an offering, made above all to Indra, who is said to depend upon it for his strength. The concept of the extract as an offering to be drunk by the gods, however, is not found in Iranian texts, and must have emerged in India at a time when the extract no longer had the purpose of intoxicating the priests who consumed it. Because an extensive mythology associated with this apparent rationalization of the ritual presence of soma had already developed, it may be supposed that the use of the intoxicating plant had vanished from the usual ceremonies long before the final fixation of the Rksamhitā as we have it.

§11 The RgVeda indicates soma regularly induced a state of ecstasy, which, again, is not verifiable from the Iranian materials for haoma. Even if we could be sure that the Vedic poets had personal experience of the effects of the drug, there is good reason to hesitate before assuming that those effects would be accurately described in hymns. If one were going to drink soma anyway, he might well pray that the result be beneficial, but simply because beneficial effects are alone mentioned in the Vedas does not establish that they were always or ever actually experienced. The soma hymns could be expected to extol sauma intoxication regardless of how it was usually experienced or the purpose for which the drug was taken. As will be noted (§87), the effects attributed to haoma in the Avesta may have been intended to influence the outcome of consuming the drug and to encourage results which were not expected as a matter of course, and the same perspective may be applicable to the Vedic panegyrics to soma.

---

6. This theory seems to be an elaboration of the historically uncritical view of pious Brahmins that the Vedas reflect a golden age which ended when the gods withdrew from this wicked world, taking with them the source of divine ecstasy, the soma plant. There is no genuine evidence that the absence of the original intoxicant from the ceremonies necessarily results from a shortage of it.

7. For the various views, see Brough [1971a and 1971b] and the other articles and reviews listed in R. G. Wasson [1978 and 1979].

8. A further motive for priests claiming to find the experience agreeable may have been to show themselves as enjoying the approval of the gods (see below, §150). The “ecstasy” of soma may be an exaggeration, for in the Atharvaveda the remains of the sacrificial offering (4 34, 35) (and perhaps [at 11.1.25] the porridge odana) are said to produce ecstasy (Keith 1925: I, 275).
§12 It is also a RgVedic cliché that soma induced battle fury in Indra, so that it has been supposed (Bergaigne 1878:150; Lincoln 1981) that it must have been consumed for that effect by warriors. Without denying that sauma drinking may have had such potentialities, it may be said that if sauma reliably produced a state either of battle fury or of ecstasy, or of any subjective state valued for its own sake, then the ceremonies would have been essentially superfluous for achieving these objectives and the ceremonies would not likely have been everywhere the form chosen to represent the use of the drug. Moreover, if one assumes that sauma was drunk for these results, it cannot be expected that its consumption would have been confined to such ceremonies; it would surely have been drunk by many more people than only priests. Since such results would have remained valuable in later times as well, the consumption of the drug outside of, as well as within, the ceremonies should have continued to the present day. Because there is no clear evidence from India of sauma consumption outside of the ceremonies at any time and because, instead of sauma, nonintoxicating plants appear in present day rituals, it has been generally concluded that sauma must have become unavailable. Although no reference to a shortage of the plant appears in the RgVeda or in Iranian sources of any date, it has been alleged as a criterion for its identification that sauma must be a plant not now obtainable in India or Iran. The question of how such a useful plant utterly vanished from the botanical repertory of whole nations who literally worshipped it has added considerably to the mystery of this subject.

§13 If the purpose of the ceremonial use of the plant was ecstasy, the natural response to an unavailability of sauma would have been to abandon the ceremonies rather than to reenact them using nonintoxicating substitutes. It cannot be supposed that a universal, spontaneous transition from using sauma to using substitute plants occurred as soon as the plant completely disappeared, nor can it be supposed, alternatively, that there was a unanimous and universal conspiracy of priests in both India and Iran to replace the missing sauma and, saying nothing publicly about the change, proceed as before. Considering only the geographical and linguistic problems this would entail, it is clear that nothing of this sort could have happened.

§14 Previous attempts to explain the absence of sauma seem not to have noted that its "replacement" in ceremonies with nonintoxicating plants should be of Proto-Indo-Iranian date. The mere simulation of drinking sauma extract is a common feature of all the relevant Indic and Iranian ceremonies. This continuation of ceremonies without the intoxicant essential to their ostensible purpose is too extraordinary an occurrence to have developed independently, rather ceremonies omitting the intoxicant must have already been practiced before the two peoples became separated. Consequently, if these merely imitative ceremonies came about because sauma was unavailable, it must have become unavailable at a time even antedating the earliest parts of the RgVeda,
so that the RgVeda would be of no value as evidence for the unavailability of the plant. Iranian evidence for the continued use of the intoxicant into historic times (see next chapter) shows that the plant remained available and hence that its displacement from the ceremonies cannot have been caused by difficulties in its supply. Rather, it must be the case that from the earliest times ceremonies merely imitating the drinking of sauma existed side by side with ceremonies in which sauma was actually consumed.

§15 The Indian sources have not only failed to yield the botanical identity of sauma, but also have not provided satisfactory explanations for why the consumption of sauma took place in ceremonial contexts, nor for specific features of the sauma ceremonies such as the intimate association of sauma drinking with animal sacrifice. Nor has any hypothesis based on Indic materials plausibly accounted for the displacement of sauma in the rituals by other plants, for the particular plant species chosen to represent sauma, nor for why in the two distinct religious traditions, sauma rituals lacking the intoxicant became the central organizing principle.

§16 The present work differs from all previous studies in focusing not on Indian but on Iranian sources, which have hitherto received little or no attention in this connection. The Iranian testimony on sauma is by any reckoning at least as cogent as the Indian, and in light of the failure of the Indic materials to provide acceptable solutions, an investigation of the Iranian situation is the only viable alternative. The value of this approach will ultimately be judged on the merits of the solutions proposed below, but it is strongly supported by the considerations now to be detailed.

§17 Iranian data have precedence over those of India because sauma is to be placed in an Iranian, not Indian, geographical perspective. The use of sauma has been ascribed above to the Proto-Indo-Iranians, that is, the speakers of the reconstructable prehistoric ancestor of the Indic and Iranian languages. During the period of linguistic unity the Proto-Indo-Iranians clearly lived northwest of India. The disintegration of the Proto-Indo-Iranian unity culminated in the emigration of those groups that eventually became the Indo-Aryans. The vacuum left by their departure resulted in the expansion, in Central Asia and eventually Western Asia, of the people known in history as the Iranians.9

---

9. While the precise location of the homeland of the Proto-Indo-Iranian-speaking peoples remains undetermined, it can confidently be surmised to have been somewhere within an area well defined by the topography of interior Eurasia. Given that their language was the southeasternmost branch of the Indo-European family and that their descendants occupy India and Iran, they must have lived in an area west of China, north of India, east of the civilizations of Mesopotamia (whose annals do not record their existence until marked linguistic differentiation had occurred), and south of the subarctic forests of Siberia. (Although it has sometimes been argued that at one time the speakers of Proto-Indo-Iranian occupied areas to the far north, it is certain that they were cattle-rearing herdsmen, and they could not
§18 There is every reason to believe that the use of sauma was developed by the speakers of Proto-Indo-Iranian while they were living somewhere within that area of Central Asia which from the beginning of recorded history has been predominantly Iranian in culture and, until the arrival of the Turks from the fifth century C. E. onwards, also Iranian in speech. The Greater Iranian cultural area (which should be understood wherever the term Iran is used geographically here) should therefore include the environment where sauma grew; thus sauma must have remained available at least to those Iranians who continued to occupy the lands of their ancestors. This cultural area is relatively homogeneous in climate and flora. Regardless of whether the same species of plant continued to be available also to the groups who migrated toward India, the social and economic adaptations required in the radically different environments to the south are likely to have had some effect on the ethnobotany of the migrating tribes. These factors will not have affected the environmental relationships of those people who remained in the Iranian area. Hence it is probable that there has been a continuity of Proto-Indo-Iranian and Iranian ethnobotanical traditions absent in India.

§19 It must not be assumed that because of its early date the RgVeda, as against the Avesta, more closely reflects the Proto-Indo-Iranian situation and therefore bears more directly on the problem of sauma. There is scholarly consensus that in general the Avesta is the more conservative text, that is, it more faithfully reflects archaic realia than does the RgVeda, which is prone to extensive poetic elaboration. The Vedas and the Avesta are products of a Proto-Indo-Iranian oral literature connected with sauma rites. Only when that tradition of oral composition began to decline in India and Iran did the hymns become fixed. In the case of the RgVedic hymns this occurred soon after the arrival of Aryan-speaking peoples in India (c. 1200 B.C.E.). In Iran the formation of that portion of the Avesta in the Gothic dialect spoken by Zarathushtra also dates from around the end of the second millennium B.C.E., the bulk of the Avesta, however, results from processes of oral transmission and composition that continued far longer and allowed for textual reflections of the actual ethnobotanic situation of sauma, as against the Indian situation of a long-ossified corpus, which is, moreover, largely poetic in its “recollection” of the plant. The Iranian haoma texts probably became fixed in their present form little earlier than the time of the Achaemenian Empire (i.e. sixth to fourth centuries B.C.E.).

10 The Iranian haoma hymns are in the Younger Avestan language, in which texts continued to be composed in the Hellenistic period, and perhaps even later. The haoma hymns do not show the grammatical degeneration of the latest Avestan texts and linguistically
productive oral composition persisted in Iran for perhaps a thousand years longer than it did in India and is evidence for the continuity of ancient traditions into historical times.

§20 This is the working definition of sauma used in the arguments which follow: a plant (1) regarded as intoxicating by the early Indo-Iranians and (2) available over the area occupied by Indo-Iranian peoples, which (3) was revered by these peoples as sacred and (4) was consumed in the central rites of their priests. The four parts of this definition serve as an organizing principle for the data presented below; they provide parameters which increasingly restrict the range of botanical alternatives to Peganum harmala as sauma.

and stylistically give the impression of belonging to the older stratum of the later Avesta, but cannot be strictly dated.
PHARMACOLOGICAL CORRESPONDENCE

SAUMA INTOXICATION IN IRANIAN ACCOUNTS

§21 That the Avestan term maδa- (root mad-) meant 'intoxication' has been established on the basis of cognate words in Indic and in later Iranian languages, and the term's use in the Avesta to refer to both the effects of haoma and those of wine (see Spiegel 1883; Harlez 1883; Bartholomae 1883). In the surviving Avesta, however, elaboration of the experience to which haoma intoxication referred is limited to the following passages from Yasna 9-11 (i.e. the Hōm Yasht, see below, §78):¹

Yasna 9.17: ni.tē zāire maδam mruyē
O, Yellowish One, I call down thy intoxication.
Y. 10.8 (partially repeated in Yasht 17.5):
vispe zi anyē maδaŋhō
Indeed all other intoxications
aδēm haacintē xrvūm.drivō
are accompanied by Violence of the Bloody Club,
āṣat hō yō haomahe maδō
but the intoxication of Haoma
aša haacinte urvāsmana
is accompanied by bliss-bringing Rightness.
ranjaiti haomahe maδō
The intoxication of Haoma goes lightly.

Y. 10.14: mā mē yaδa gaoš drafdō
May (thy intoxications), besetting me at their own
āṣitō vārama caire
impulse, not move me about as a cow's trembling.
fraša frayantu tē maδō
May thy intoxications come forth clear(ly).
varzəyuŋuŋhō jasontu
May they arrive bringing straightness of mind.
pair.tē haoma ašāum ašavāzō
To thee, Haoma, righteous, promoting Rightness,
daδāmī imām tanūm
do I give this body,
yā mē vaēnaitē hurəoδa
which seems to me well formed.
Y. 10.19: imāsə tūnciŋ tāvōya
May thee thyself, and may these
fraša frayantu tē maδō
thy intoxications come forth to me clear(ly).
raoxšna frayantu tē maδō
May thy intoxications come forth bright(ly).
ranjyō +vazāinte *tē maδō
May thy intoxications move lightly.

Y. 11.10: pair.tē haoma ašāum ašavāzō
To thee, Haoma, righteous, driving forth Truth,
daδāmī imām tanūm
do I give this body,
yā mē vaēnaitē hurəoδa
which seems to me well-formed,
θwaxšai *haomahe maδāi
for the active intoxication *of Haoma,
havanuŋhāi ašavastāi
for well being, for Rightness.
pair.mē tūnciŋ dayā
May thou give me, righteous dūraoša Haoma,
haoma ašava dūraoša
the Best Existence of the righteous,
vahīstam ahūm ašaonam
full of light, and having every comfort.
raocagham vispō.xvādram

¹. Avestan translations are by Schwartz and are discussed by him below, §§162-182.
§22 The sources for ancient Iranian religion preserved in Zoroastrianism include as well as the Avestan texts from the first millennium B.C.E., a literature in Middle Persian (Pahlavi) which reflects the Zoroastrianism of Sasanian Persia (c. 230-630 C.E.). By the time that the Sasanian clergy translated the Avesta into Pahlavi, the meaning the haoma texts seems to have become for them a matter of speculation, and the Yasna rite at which these texts were recited had come to be so exclusively performed using as haoma, not sauma, but a nonintoxicating plant, that the priests seem no longer to have been aware that the haoma (Middle Persian hōm) consumed in that ceremony had ever been an intoxicating drug. Their ignorance of this is revealed by the fact that the Avestan term maδ(a)- ‘intoxication’ is never correctly rendered in the Pahlavi translation of the above Avestan passages.2

§23 Most of the Sasanian Avesta is now lost. Pahlavi translations of much of it still existed in the ninth century, however, and served as the basis for a number of books then composed in Pahlavi by Zoroastrian priests in Fars. These Pahlavi books appear to contain descriptions of the effects of sauma; in these descriptions, however, sauma is not referred to by the name hōm/haoma. It seems that at the time these accounts were composed the term hōm/haoma, rather than continuing its original reference to sauma, had come simply to designate the nonintoxicating plant consumed in daily Yasna rites. Consequently, in order to refer to sauma in the Pahlavi texts recourse would have been necessary to terms other than hōm/haoma.

§24 The most explicit and detailed Iranian account of intoxication for religious purposes is the Ardā Wīrāz Nāmag. The prologue (Chapters 1-3) of this Pahlavi text says that in order to dispel doubts about the claims of the Iranian priests to religious knowledge, Wīrāz, having been selected as the most righteous of men, is given a drug before a public assembly, whereupon, lying tranquilly before the people, he has a vision of the fate of souls after death, which he afterwards dictates to a scribe. This prologue demonstrates the belief that pharmacologically induced visions were the means to religious knowledge and that they were at the basis of the religion that the Magi claimed to have received from Zoroaster. It has previously been supposed that the event described in this text was outside the tradition of the sauma ceremonies; its possible relevance to the question of sauma has therefore never been explored. It will consequently be necessary to show that, although the drug administered

2. Avestan maδa- would have been correctly translated by Middle Persian mastiδh ‘intoxication’ (e.g. in Pahlavi Vendidad 19.41). Instead, for the above cited Avestan passages the Pahlavi has mvdšn (i.e. māyišn ‘copulation’, which gives little sense here), except in two cases: in Yasna 10.14 Avestan maδō is translated mēnišn ‘thinking’, and in Yasna 11.10 Avestan maδāi is not translated at all. See J. M. Unvala (1924: 28-29, 60), J. Darmesteter (1892-1893: I, 100, n.22), and B. N. Dhabhar (1949: Glossary 125). These Pahlavi forms are discussed below §§183-185.
to Wirâz is termed *mang*, it is the same substance as sauma. Here follows an abridgement of the opening chapters of the *Ardâ Wirâz Nâmâg* as translated by W. Belardi (1979: 89-92):

(I.2) And after that (there) were sedition and contention among people of the Iranian kingdom, and thus they had no king, no ruler, no chief, no theologian aware of the Religion, and concerning matter(s) of God they were doubtful. And doctrines of many kinds and different manners of faith, and skepticism and different legislations appeared in the world . . . . And several decisions and judgments were made (in conformity) with diverging doctrines and diverging faiths, and this Religion was in confusion and people in doubt.

And afterwards (besides those) (there) were other Magians and theologians of the Religion; compared with those scoundrels (these) were submissive and sorrowful. And an assembly of them was summoned to the temple of the victorious Farrbag Fire; and (there) were speeches and considerations of many kinds on this (subject). (They said) that "it is necessary for us to seek means in order that someone of us goes and brings information from the spirits, so that people who exist in this time will know whether these *yazišn* and *drôn* and *āfrinagân* and *nêrang* and ablation(s) and purification(s), which we bring (to God) according to (our) rite, attain to God or to the Devas, and come to help of our souls or not."

And afterwards, with the consent (coming) from the theologians of the Religion, they called all the people to the temple of the Farrbag Fire. And from the whole they separated seven men who were most undoubtful about God and the Religion and whose own thought(s) and speech(es) and deed(s) (were) most fit and righteous. And they said: "Sit down in your turn, and from (among) you choose one who (is) good for this enterprise, and most sinless and most renowned."

And afterwards these seven men sat down, and from (these) seven three (men) were chosen, and from (these) three one, named Wirâz [was chosen] . . . .

And then this Wirâz, as he heard that speech, stood upon (his) feet, and joined (his) hands on (his) breast and said: "If you please, then don't give me the *mang* which I don't desire, until you, Mazdayasnians, cast lots for the trial. And if the lot comes to me, I'll willingly go to that place of the pious and the wicked (souls); and I'll exactly refer and truly bring this message."

And then the trial lots of these Mazdayasnians were drawn . . . [and] each of the three lots came to Wirâz.

[II.1] And seven sisters were of this Wirâz and all these seven sisters were as wives of Wirâz . . . [they said]: "Don't make this thing, you Mazdayasnians . . . (if) you send (him) from this realm of the living to that of the dead before (the natural) time, a fulfillment of violence is made upon us without reason."

And afterwards the Mazdayasnians, when they heard these words, gave satisfaction to the seven sisters, and said: "We shall deliver Wirâz to you within seven days, perfect in (his) body; and the glory of this journey will remain on this man." And then they became agreeing.

And afterwards this Wirâz, before the Mazdayasnians, joined (his) hands on (his) breast and said to them: "It is of (our) custom that first I (have to) worship (the departed)

---

3. Belardi translates *mang* as 'narcotic'.
souls, and eat food, and accomplish the prescription(s), then you will give me wine and maga." The theologians ordered: "Do it accordingly."

And afterwards these theologians of the Religion in the abode of the Spirit selected, for that good (man); a thirty-step (wide) place. And this Wiraz washed (his) head and (his) body, and put on a new garment; perfumed (himself) with an agreeable perfume, spread a new, clean blanket on some appropriate boards. At a (given) moment (he) sat down on the clean blanket, and performed the (rite of the) dron, and remembered (the departed) souls, and ate food. And afterwards the theologians of the Religion filled three golden cups with wine and with the Wishtaspian mang, and they gave one cup over to Wiraz . . . and the second cup . . . and the third cup . . . . And he drank that wine and mang and consciously said grace and fell asleep on the blanket.

The theologians of the Religion and the seven sisters . . . chanted the Gathas and kept watch in the dark. . . . The seven sisters together with all theologians and herbads and mobads of the Religion of the Mazdayasniens did not in any manner neglect protection (to the body of Wiraz).

[III] [The third chapter relates how Wiraz arises, asks for and receives a meal as his due, and dictates his vision to a scribe.]

§25 In Wiraz's vision, he arrives in the spirit world at the bridge over which the dead must pass, and because of his extraordinary righteousness is welcomed across it by two spirit guides who remain with him and interpret what he sees. For a while he beholds multitudes in splendor and enters into the presence of beings whom he is told are Ohrmazd and his entourage. Then there begins the spectacle of horror and violence that occupies the largest part of the narration. He perceives a vast territory filled with writhing bodies and sees in fine detail the terrifying circumstances of each: some ceaselessly being torn apart by demons, some crushed by snakes, and so forth. In each case his guides relate their torment to an infraction of the moral or ritual injunctions propounded by the Magi.

§26 It is not possible to determine the date of this text with much confidence. Although the extant version is not older than the ninth century C.E., there are reasons to believe it was originally composed somewhat before the third century establishment of the Sasanian state (Belardi 1979: 121). At all events, it was written at a time when it had apparently ceased to be understood that the Iranian ceremonies had once included the consumption of the drug sauma. Since one did not then think of hoom/haoma as a plant which produced visions, that term would not have been used for the drug in this text even if that drug was sauma. There is, however, little reason to expect that the Middle Persian word mang identified more precisely the substance given Wiraz than as a "psychoactive drug." In the contexts in which mang occurs its sense is primarily pharmacological, not botanical, and there is no warrant to assume it to have
named a specific plant. The drug given Wirāz was clearly an extract, and its identification by the term *mang* does not disqualify it as the sauma drug, which must surely have been included in the same pharmaceutical class as the extract which Wirāz consumed.

§27 That this *mang* was indeed sauma can also be inferred from the circumstances of its administration to Wirāz. This occurs at just that point in the recital of the *Yasna* liturgy appropriate for consuming sauma, that is, where the *Hōm Yash†* is now recited (see below, §133). Wirāz sits before the fire, performs the *dṛōn* rite (see below, §§133 and 152), and has the *mang* handed him in three cups (corresponding to the three swallows of *haoma* in the *Yasna* preceeding recitation of the Gathas).

§28 The drug given Wirāz is, moreover, not simply called *mang* but specifically the "*mang* of Wishtāsp". The latter is clearly linked with sauma in a ninth-century Pahlavi text, the *Dēnkird* (Book VII, 4.84-86), itself from a lost Avestan source, which tells how Kay Wishtāsp (Avestan Kavi Vīštāspa) accepted Zoroaster’s (i.e. Zarathushtra’s) teaching. Here it is said Wishtāsp was given *hōm* and *mang*. This was regarded as the most important single event in the

---

4. The fact that *bang*, while being the Pahlavi gloss of *mang*, also appears as a Persian name for henbane (*Hyoscamus*) in early Islamic pharmacognosy, does not necessarily mean that *mang* specified henbane in the context of Zoroastrian literature. As a loan word into Arabic, *banj* (with verbal forms) has been used of intoxicating plants in general and not exclusively of henbane (see Rosenthal 1971), while the use of Persian *bang* since at least the 13th century for both henbane and hashish implies its earlier reference to a general class of substances (as does also al-Birūnī’s 11th-century use of *banj* for datura). Schwartz (below, §§198-222) shows that Avestan *banga*-, long supposed to be the etymon of Middle Persian *mang* and to have an extensive history as a Eurasian “Wanderwörter” (see, e.g. Eliade 1972: 399-402; Crevatin 1983) was, in fact, never a name of a specific drug or plant.

Henning’s (1951: 32-34) claim that the story indicates the *mang* given Wirāz was a deadly poison and hence must have been henbane seems (as Belardi notes) directed opposed by the text itself, for Wirāz’s sisters ask if the drug will harm him and are assured it will have no ill effects. Wirāz’s behavior does not particularly suggest that he thought he was risking his life, and no motive is supplied for why he would have been willing to do so. It would certainly have won few converts to the cause of the Magi if Wirāz had never regained consciousness, and the danger of a mishap would not have been lessened by selecting the most righteous of men to take the chance. If *mang* was thought to be potentially lethal to the righteous, it would have been disadvantageous to suggest that religious knowledge depended on its use, for this would discourage belief that the Magi easily and frequently put themselves in contact with the spiritual world.

5. Although this *Dēnkird* account (Madan 1911: 642.13f.; Nyberg 1964: 60.16) of the episode seems to have been directly translated from Avestan, the fact that Avestan *haoma*- could refer to the nonintoxicating routinely administered ritual drink may have motivated the addition of the word *mang* to indicate a drug with the capability of causing Wishtāsp to have an experience of the sort indicated. Somewhat later versions of the episode later texts omit the original word *haoma* altogether and describe the drink as “*mang* and wine” or “(dṛōn) wine”. Thus, in the Pahlavi *Rivāyat* narration of the same incident (*Pahlavi Rivāyat* 140.6-10; see below, §29), Wishtāsp drinks *mang* in wine. In the account of the Persian *Zarādušt-Nāma* (ed. F. Rosenberg 1904) written in the 10th century C.E. (so dated by Rempis 1963:341) and in
legendary history of the Zoroastrian religion. In order to influence Kay Wishtāsp, Ohrmzd (Avestan Ahura Mazdah) sends three spirit beings to promise that ruler a life of 150 years and an immortal son, on condition that he accept Zoroaster into his court, and, if he refuses to do so, to tell him that he will be immediately destroyed (through being devoured in midair by birds). Although Wishtāsp still declines, the threat is not carried out. Instead, Ohrmzd decides to cause him to see displayed for him in the spiritual world the future benefits he can realize by accepting Zoroaster:

... Also to visibly show Wishtāsp victory over Arjang and the Hyonians, his own higher place and imperishable dominion, health and glory, Ohrmzd the creator sent at the same time to the residence of Wishtāsp the divinity Nerōsang as a messenger to the Ameshaspand Ashawahisht [Avestan Aša- Vahiṣṭa - 'Best Truth'] to cause Wishtāsp to consume the illuminating nourishment which would give his soul eye vision over the spiritual (mēnōg) existence, by reason of which Wishtāsp saw great mystery and glory. As it says in the Avesta: "Ohrmzd the creator said to the divinity Nerōsang: 'Go, fly on, notable member of the community Nerōsang, to the residence of Wishtāsp, rich in cattle, of wide renown, and say this to Ashawahisht: 'Powerful Ashawahisht, take the excellent bowl, more excellent than the other bowls which are well made (that is, that cup so excellent should be made in lordliness) for conveying for our sake hōm and mang to Wishtāsp and cause the lofty ruler Kay Wishtāsp to drink it.'" Agreeing to these words, Ashawahisht took the excellent bowl and caused the lofty ruler Kay Wishtāsp to drink it and the lofty ruler Kay Wishtāsp lay down. When the lofty ruler Kay Wishtāsp came forth from (being) stard, he said to Hutōs [his wife and sister]: 'Let it be, Hutōs, that Zoroaster Spītāma come swiftly to me with zeal. (Let) Zoroaster Spītāma quickly expound to me the Religion (dēn) of Ohrmzd and Zoroaster.'" 6

Wizirgīrd-i Dēnīg 19 (as transcribed by Molé 1967: 132-135), it is the wine of the drōn ceremony which is given to Wishtāsp: "On the day Māraspand [<Avestan Mātra- Spanta- 'Sacred Mantra'] of the month Spandarmad [<Avestan Spenta- Armaiti- 'Sacred Obedience'] Zoroaster, with the help of the Lord Ohrmzd, spread barsom and performed the drōn rite. On [the occasion] of that drōn were placed things such as milk, a flower, wine, and pomegranate [abār ān drōn čiyōn sir ud gul ud bādag ud anār nihāl]. He gave the wine to Wishtāsp so that he slept and saw the Best Existence". This provides an additional example of the practice, seen in the Ardā Wirāz Nāmag, of administering sauma at the drōn ceremony (i.e. after the recital of Yasna 8.4), rather than after the recital of the Hōm Yasht as in the full Yasna (see below, §133).

6. [Dēnīg VII 4.84; Madan 1911:642f.] ... wēnaēbdāg i nimudan i ō Wištāsp pērōziḥ abar Arjāsp ud Hyōnān xwad-iš abardar gāh ud ašāsīnīg xwadayiḥ ud rāy ud xwarraḥ rāy frēstēd i andar ham zamān Dādār Ohrmzd Nerōsang yazad ō mān i Wištāsp pad aštāghī ō Ašawahişt Amahraspand xwarāndān ō i ō Wištāsp pad ō gyan časm pad abar wēnīnīh i ō mēnōgān axwān rōṣngar xwariṣn kē rāy-iš did Wištāsp waṣur in xwarraḥ ud rāz. 85. čiyōn ēd i dēn gōwēd ku u-š ō Nerōsang yazad guft ku kē dādār Ohrmzd ku be raw, waz, Nerōsang hanjamaniŋ abar ō mān i Wištāsp i abżār gōspan dūr frāz nāmīg ud ōn gōwē ō Ašawahişt ku Ašawahişt +pādīxšāy stānē tāst i nēk i abar nēktar az ōn hutaṣtāqan i kard (ku jām edōn nēk pad xwadayiḥ sāyēd kardan) abar hōm ud mang amāh rāy barē ō Wištāsp u-š pad ōn abar frāz xwārēn dahbed burzāwānd Kay Wištāsp i-š i ō gōwēn padrīft Ašawahişt i pādīxšāy u-š stān tāst i nēk u-š pad ūn frāz xwarānēd dahbed burzāwānd Kay Wištāsp ud nibast [Widengren
§29 In this account the drink causes Wîštâsp to see into mēnōg existence and to become stard (or stird). The parallel account in Pahlavi Rivāyat 140.6-10 relates: “When [Wîštâsp] drank, he became stard immediately, and they led his soul to paradise and showed him the value of accepting the Religion. When he emerged from stard-ness he called for Zoroaster . . .” (ka-s xward būd pad gyāg stard būd u-šān ruwān be o garōdmān nid u-šān arzmāndih i dēn padirīft ān be nimūd ka az stardih frāz būd a-s . . . wāng kard . . . Zarduxšt). Etymologically stard or stird means ‘spread out, sprawled’. It is used in Pahlavi to indicate the result of being stunned or dazed from a blow and, with few exceptions, is experienced by evil creatures; for example, demons become stard upon hearing Zoroaster recite the Ahuna Vairya prayer. Confirmation that the Yasna rite in which sauma was drunk was known to induce the stard condition is provided by a simile in Yōišt i Fryān 2, 7-8: “As soon as the sorcerer Axt heard these words, he became as stard as when a man who performs a Yasna becomes stard (ud Axt i jādūg ḋiyōn ka-s ūn az-īs āsnūd stard be būd ċand ka mard i yašt-ē be kunēd stard būd ėstēd [Haug and West 1892: 212]).

§30 Fundamental to ancient Iranian religion was a belief in two existences, the material, tangible, visible existence (Avestan gaētīyā-, Middle Persian gētīg or āstōmand) and the intangible, invisible, spirit existence (Avestan mainyava-, Middle Persian mēnōg), as was glimpsed by Wiráz and Wîštâsp by means of sauma. This “spiritual” existence (for which see especially Shaked 1971) differs from the conception of the spiritual realm in other Near Eastern religions in being neither morally superior nor necessarily more sacred than the material world. Ohrmazd created the material world to assist him in defeating the Evil One in the spiritual world. He does not, however, create material existence directly, but first creates it in spiritual form. All material things and creatures exist simultaneously in spirit form. These spirit forms include the double or frahwahr (Avestan fravasī) of each person, living, dead and unborn. The overall appearance of this intangible, mēnōg, world may in many respects resemble the material world but in addition to the forms of all past present and future creatures of Ohrmazd, it encompasses the pandemonium generated by the Evil Spirit. The creations of the Evil Spirit are not generally to be observed in the tangible world of ordinary experience but in essence have

1979: 348-350, following Nyberg 1974: 184b, in place of nibast, reads šast nasāi 'lay down, a corpse.' However, a corpse being a locus of evil according to Magian conventions, it is highly unlikely that Wîštâsp’s body would have been abandoned to that state so casually, for in the very next sentence he is indicated not to have died but only become stard. As Molé saw, the letters dyh which appear before dahibed are dittography.] dahibed burzāwend Kay Wištâsp ka +az stard frāz būd u-s ō hutōs ō guft ku bawēd hutōs ĕk spitēmān Zarduxšt tēz ō man be ēd rasaēd pad tuṣāgītī špitēmān Zarduxšt tēz ō man ē nigēzdēn dēn i Ohrmazd ud Zarduxšt.
only mënôg existence, although they may “borrow” material forms (such as reptiles and invertebrates, for all matter is the creation of Ohrmazd. Evil spirits pervade the intangible world (except of course within the confines of the “Best Existence” or heaven).7

§31 The consumption of sauma may have been the only means recognized in Iranian religion of seeing into mënôg existence before death; at all events, it is the only means acknowledged in Zoroastrian literature and, as we have seen, is the means used by Ohrmazd when he wishes to to make the mënôg existence visible to living persons. In ancient Iranian religion there is little evidence of concern with meditative practices which might foster development of alternative, nonpharmacological means to such vision. In Iran, vision into the spirit world was not thought to come about simply by divine grace nor as a reward for saintliness. From the apparent role of sauma in initiation rites (see Chapter 6), experience of the effects of sauma, which is to say vision of mënôg existence, must have at one time been required of all priests (or the shamans antecedent to them). Since sauma was the means by which Ohrmazd brought such vision to Zoroaster’s champion, Wishtâsp, there is no reason to doubt that sauma would also have been the means whereby Zoroaster (who as a zaotar consumed sauma in Yasna rites) also saw into mënôg existence and drew from it his knowledge of Ohrmazd and his revelation.

§32 The Pahlavi epitomes of the lost Avestan biography of Zoroaster include allusions to hôm (haoma) which suggest that that substance was of great importance in the Avestan account of his prophetic mission. For instance, Zoroaster is reported in Pahlavi books to have been created within a twig of hôm (see below, §54 n.13) and to have been born as a result of his parents’ consumption of an extract of that twig (Dênkird VII 2.25-31; see below, §93).8 Elsewhere (Zâtsparam 4.14-16), the frawahr ‘spirit form’ of Zoroaster is said to reside in hôm. In the Avestan Yasna liturgy Zoroaster is said to come to the drinker of haoma (Yasna 8.1) and Zoroaster is also said to have been granted as a son to Pourushâspa as a reward for the latter’s preparation of haoma (Yasna 9.13, see below, §92). The Pahlavi biographies say Zoroaster’s initial revelation occurred in connection with his entering a river for (or of) hôm water (Zâtsparam 21; Dênkird VII, 3.51), but do not further elaborate the means by which he came to see the other world. The Pahlavi texts, however, were completed only in the predominantly Muslim setting of ninth century Fars, and at that time, because of the vulnerability of the Zoroastrians to criticism by

---

7. Confusion could presumably result among such multitudinous forms, for instance, when Zoroaster first beheld the divine beings (Ameshaspands) he thought they were demons (Epistles of Manušehr I. 10.9; West 1882: 319; Kanga 1985).

8. According to the Dâdistân-i Dênig (48.14 [K35 165 v.15-17]) ‘Through haoma the world is occupied by creatures. By means of haoma Zoroaster was created’: hôm ân-iš gêhân dâmânômand hôm kë-s dahišn i Zarduxšt abar bûd.
Muslims and their tenuous status as a “People of the Book,” the Zoroastrian priests who wrote them may have deemed it imprudent for canonical works to explicitly stress intoxication by sauma as a source of religious belief. A similar defensiveness may be the reason for the entire absence from the Pahlavi sources of explicit acknowledgement that intoxication was ever involved in Zoroastrian ceremonies and that it was intoxication to which the ritual consumption of hōm referred, though it is also likely that by the ninth century few Zoroastrian priests themselves could still have been aware of the intoxicating property characterizing the Avestan haoma.

§33 One Pahlavi account, however, exists which describes how Zoroaster came to confer with Ohrmazd and indicates that in the original Avestan his revelation was indeed said to have occurred through haoma. The account is part of an introduction to the Zand i Wahman Yasht, a ninth-century apocalypse. This introduction seems to have been a secondary addition to the text because it describes Ohrmazd interpreting Zoroaster’s dream of a tree with branches of seven metals, a role which is rather uncharacteristic for Ohrmazd and has evidently been derived from the Biblical Book of Daniel.9 Before the episode of this dream, the introduction describes a situation (very similar to the events in the Ardā Wirāz Nāmag) in which Zoroaster, during a sleep of seven days brought about by Ohrmazd’s administration to him of “liquid omniscient wisdom,” sees the condition of the righteous and the unrighteous in the other world. Since, according to the Pahlavi summary of the lost Avestan Waršt-mānsr Nask, “omniscient wisdom was produced for Zoroaster through hōm,”10 the “liquid omniscient wisdom” here apparently refers to sauma. There seems to be no plausible explanation for the attachment of this introduction to the Zand i Wahman Yasht except as an attempt to give to that text the appearance of having come from an Avestan source. The formal feature adopted, namely, the sequence of having Ohrmazd administer sauma to Zoroaster, who then perceives the state of things in mēnōg existence, indicates that texts of Avestan origin must have existed at the time this introduction was created which

---

9. The “mixed iron” of the seventh branch of Zoroaster’s tree is parallel with the iron mixed with clay at the foot of the statue in Nebuchadnezzar’s dream, which, through Daniel, God interprets as representing the Ages to Come. As Jacques Duchesne-Guillemin (1982) has brought to light, “mixed iron” must have arrived in the Iranian text from Daniel 4, for the technique of casting large statues in second century B.C.E. Mesopotamia resulted in the mixing of iron and clay as a permanent part of the base of the statue, whereas from the perspective of the Iranian tradition there is no explanation for the presence of “mixed iron” in the prophecy at all (the parallel is not explained by Boyce’s [1984] suggestion that the mixed iron could have referred to iron ore, which, at all events, is without metallic properties).

10. Dēnkird IX.36 (Madan 1911: 851.1) u-š mad ān i hōm urwāhanīn nimāyišn ud sagrīh u-š mad xrad i harwisp āgāhīh ‘and to [Zoroaster] came the haoma joy-revelation and satiation of haoma and omniscient wisdom came to him’.
presented a similar origin for the revelation of Zoroaster. The passage in question (Zand i Wahman Yasht III, 6-22) reads:11

(6) Ohrmazd the Sacred [abzōnīg= Avestan spanta-] Spirit, creator of the righteous corporeal existence, took the hand of Zoroaster and put liquid omniscient wisdom into it, and said “drink it.” (7) And Zoroaster drank it and omniscient wisdom was mixed into Zoroaster. (8) Zoroaster was within the wisdom of Ohrmazd for seven days and nights. (9) Zoroaster saw in the seven earthly continents men and useful animals: how many individual hairs, one by one, which they had from the back to the head. (10) He saw shrubs and trees—how many were the roots of plants in Spandarmad the earth, that is, how many had grown, had become mixed (therein). (11) On the seventh day omniscient wisdom was taken back from Zoroaster. (12) Zoroaster reflected: “I saw (something) in the pleasant Ohrmazd-created dream; I have not yet recovered from the dream.” (13) He raised both hands and repeatedly rubbed his own form. “From the end of the time I slept I have not (yet) recovered from this pleasant Ohrmazd-created dream.” (14) Ohrmazd said to Zoroaster Spītāma: “What did you see in the pleasant Ohrmazd created-dream?” (15) Zoroaster said: “Sacred Spirit Ohrmazd, creator of the corporeal world, I have seen a wealthy (person) of much property who was notorious in body and of contemptible *soul-form* and he was in hell; (he) did not seem exalted to me. (16) I saw a poor (person) who, out of necessity, had not property but a fat soul in heaven; (he) seemed exalted to me. (17) I saw a childless, powerful person and he did not seem exalted to me. (18) I saw a humble (person) with many offspring; (he) seemed exalted to me. (19) I saw a tree with seven branches on it, one gold, one silver, one copper, one brass, one lead, one steel and one mixed iron”. (20) Ohrmazd said to Zoroaster Spītāma: “This is what I prophesy: (21) The archetypal tree which you saw is the material existence which I, Ohrmazd, created. (22) Those seven branches which you saw are the seven ages which have come.”

11. Zand i Wahman Yasht III, 6-22: u-š ān i Zarduštī dast frāz grīft u-š Ohrmazd mēnōg abzōnīd dādār i gēhān astōmandīh ahlaw u-š xrad i harwisp āgaḥīh pad ab kirb abar dast i Zarduštī kard (7) u-š frāz xward u-š xrad i harwisp āgaḥīh pad Zarduštī andar gumēxt. (8) rōz šābān Zarduštī andar Ohrmazd xradih būd. (9) u-š be dīd Zarduštī pad haft kišwar zāmīg mardōmān gospandān pad harw yak mōy ēndī pad pušt tāg tāg sar ō ku dārdē. (10) u-š be dīd ud dar ud draxt kē ēndī rešāg i urwarān pad Spandārmad zāmīg ku ēndī rust ēstēd ku gumēxt ēstēd. (11) u-š hafom rōz šābān xrad i harwisp āgaḥīh az Zarduštī abāz stad. (12) Zarduštī pad ēd dīd ku pad xawmī i xwaš i Ohrmazd dād dīd az xawmī nē winnard hōm. (13) u-š harw 2 dast burd ān i xweš kirb abāz mālid ku sar zamān xūf ēstēm nē winnard hōm az ēn xwāb i xwaš i Ohrmazd dād. (14) guft-āš Ohrmazd ŵ Špītāmān Zarduštī ku-t ēndī dīd pad xwāb i xwaš i Ohrmazd dād. (15) guft-āš Zarduštī ku Ohrmazd mēnōg i abzōnīd dādār i gēhān i astōmāndān did hom hangad i was xwāstag kē pad tan dušraw uard *ruwān-kirb* [in MS DH. *ki*r] in K20. *ki* for *ki*, cf. ruwān kirb at Madan 1911: 647.16] nizār ud pad dušxā būd a-m nē buzišnīg sahīst. (16) a-m dīd dīryōš i nēst xīr i āčarag uard ruwān frāhīb pad wahīst a-m buzišnīg sahīst. (17) a-m dīd tuwānīg nēt frazand a-m nē buzišnīg sahīst. (18) a-m dīd skōh i was frazand a-m buzišnīg sahīst. (19) a-m dīd draxt-i kē 7 azaš paddī būd yak zarrān yak ēmēx yak rōyēn uad yak brīnēn yāk arzīzēn yak pōlāwēn yāk ēhān ēndī gumīxt ēstēd. (20) guft-īs Ohrmazd ku Špītāmān Zarduštī ūn ān i 6 pēs goçuam. (21) draxt i bun i tō did ān ētīg ēstī man Ohrmazd dād. (22) ān 7 azaš i tō did ān 7 āwām ēstī rāsid.
§34 To summarize, the three Pahlavi accounts are consistent in showing that sauma brought about a condition outwardly resembling sleep (i.e., stard) in which targeted visions of what is believed to be a spirit existence were seen. Essentially consistent with these accounts is a passage found in two stone inscriptions written in Fars about 300 C.E. by Kirdir, the founder of the Sasanian Zoroastrian ecclesiastical establishment. In the analyses of Back (1978), Brunner (1974), Gignoux (1979; 1981; 1984), and Skjærvø (1985), Kirdir’s inscription asserts in this passage, as a basis of his claim to religious authority, that his spirit double visited the other world and was shown heaven and hell. The account thus parallels the Ardâ Wirâz Nâmâg in reaffirming the reliance placed on a vision of mênôg existence as the means to religious truth. Kirdir does not say how his vision came about, perhaps because it would have been unsuitable to the political purposes of his inscription, but the precedents we have examined point to the possibility that he would have resorted to the same means used by Zoroaster and Wishtâsp; that is, sauma.

HARMEL INTOXICATION

§35 As is well known to researchers, there are significant differences in the patterns of effects of psychotropic (“hallucinogenic”) drugs of different composition. The salient features of the ancient Iranian religio-metaphysical outlook which cannot clearly be attributed to the Indo-European background may be regarded as conditioned by the particular effects of sauma upon a tradition developed over many generations of Iranian priests in the greater Iranian area. The Pahlavi accounts show that sauma brought about a condition outwardly resembling sleep (i.e., stard) in which visions of what was believed to be a spirit existence were seen. They also show that the experience of sauma was the source of revelation in Iranian religion. In order to decide if sauma could have been harmel it is necessary to examine what evidence there is that the consumption of harmel could have led to the experiences reflected for sauma in the Iranian religious data.

§36 To directly compare the psychopharmacology of Peganum harmala with that of sauma, however, involves a methodological difficulty. Our data for the experience for which sauma was valued in Iran are extrapolated from Zoroastrian Middle Persian texts which, although only compiled in the ninth century C.E., reproduce demonstrably older material, much of it taken directly from lost Avestan sources. These texts reveal aspects of a cultural-religious matrix which gave shape and content to the subjective effects of sauma and took shape and content from those effects, and which prevailed when sauma was in actual use. This matrix seems to have altogether disintegrated with the Islamic conquest of Iran in the seventh century C.E. As a result of the collapse of this matrix, one cannot expect to find significant use of sauma as an intoxicant in Iran today, and indeed one does not find Peganum harmala, nor any
psychotropic plant, regarded as a source of authentic knowledge in Iran during Islamic times. The subjective experiences of modern Westerners who would consume the drugs of harmel can have but limited relevance, in lack of a traditional context giving form and meaning to the experience. Zoroastrians of today, far from the ancient mythological world of their ancestors, after centuries of influence of Islam, Christianity, and finally modernism, not at all associating their faith with intoxication, would hardly yield suitable testimony or be willing to undergo the frequently harrowing effects of drugs such as these.

§37 What is called for is evidence from another people, one whose culture has arisen, like that of archaic Iran, alongside the same psychoactive drug. Here would be sought parallels to what has been found for ancient Iran as regards the way the drug is used and the belief system it helped shape. Precisely such a situation exists in the upper Amazon and contiguous areas of northwestern South America, where native peoples extract the same psychoactive alkaloids as contained in *Peganum harmala*, the β-carbolines harmine, harmaline, and tetrahydroharmine, from *Banisteriopsis caapi*, a malpighiaceous vine found throughout this region.

§38 *Banisteriopsis caapi* is consumed by perhaps fifty tribes and groups (Friedberg 1965) under the name *yagé* (or *caapi, ayahuasca, natemá, xuma, jauma*, etc.).12 The *Banisteriopsis caapi* is usually not consumed alone but with the addition of other plants. Frequently these additives, which are said to intensify the *yagé*’s effects (Rivier and Lindgren 1972; Schultes 1957 and 1982; Pinkley 1969), are plants containing another alkaloid, N,N-dimethyltryptamine. The degree to which the presence of these and perhaps other additive plants alters the effect of *yagé* has not yet been established, but may be considerable (McKenna et al. 1984a and 1984b). Nevertheless, because *yagé* seems always to be based on an infusion of *Banisteriopsis caapi*, and in some cases apparently consists only of that species, it seems justifiable to regard the psychopharmacological data on *yagé* as chiefly reflecting the properties of the harmala alkaloids.

§39 Close relationship has also been reported by Dr. Claudio Naranjo between the effects of *yagé* on shamans in Amazonia and the effects of pure harmaline, which he administered to urban volunteers in Chile. The following are some of his observations on the subjective effects of *yagé* and of harmaline, drawn from notes which he has kindly made available to me.

---

12. *(Oni) xuma* in Amahuaca means ‘(visionary) extract’ (Lamb 1975 [who does not clarify the phonetic value of “x”]); *jauma* (pronounced “hauma”) designates the *Banisteriopsis* preparation among Guarani Indians of Amazonas medio (P. Naranjo 1983: 97; R. Karsten 1964:95). An etymological connection with Iranian *hauma*- is, of course, impossible. Luna (1986: 171-173) lists these and over 40 additional local names.
The "visions" are frequently called "dreams," and rightly so, for these do not constitute true hallucinations, but vivid imagery contemplated with closed eyes. Usually the "dreaming" individual lies still—so much that among the Jivaro, for instance, the special individual huts where the person who has taken yagé goes are called "sonaderos" 'dreaming places.' There are exceptions to the immobility of the "dreamer," however. The effect of yagé is that of making oneiric activity possible while awake, so that the person may choose to move or engage in specific actions and still contemplate his visions. The typical instance is that of the shaman, who may sing of his visions while still in contact with a reality other than that of wakeful consciousness.

Yagé is used chiefly by shamans, even in the case of tribes where it is also used by nonshamans, the individual's initiation to the drug is under a shaman's direction. Shamans are persons generally distinguished by exceptional capacity for experiencing the supernatural, which they do through yagé. The experiences for which the drug is valued are not, however, immediately available even to those who eventually become shamans. Shamans assert they must learn to use yagé and that initially their visions may be incoherent or of threatening monsters. During initiation as a shaman the novice may drink yagé for many consecutive days until he is able to learn from nature and the spirits and see the visions his guide considers necessary and meet and ally himself with at least one spirit guide. The power of shamans is dependent on such guides.

While the common man experiences terror, the shaman is at home with the beings yagé reveals to him. It may have taken him months or years to reach the depths of hell or the heights of heaven, but once he has done so, these doors are open to him, he will need only a short time now, with the help of yagé to travel from one world to another there to meet the spirits he must contact and summon to his aid. Fully initiated shamans continue to take yagé for healing, initiations, presiding over festivities, prophesying and making decisions and before hunting and battle. In the latter connection, yagé is taken for a function that transcends mere practicality: that of ascertaining that men are acting in accordance with cosmic laws, the will of the gods, or the balance of nature. In a situation as delicate as that of taking the life of other beings, it is quite understandable that men should seek supernatural confirmation for the rightness of their action.

A second use, in small quantities, seems to be that of a stimulant. Hunter and warrior alike may chew stems of Banisteriopsis on their way to the site of action in order to see better.

It has sometimes been reported that the drinking of yagé is immediately followed by a frenzy of aggressive behavior. Since, however, about half an hour is required for the absorption of the drug, the exhibition of frenzy may manifest the individuals summoning up a feeling that his tradition prescribes as the desirable attitude in which to place oneself before the onset of the drug's effect. This is an attitude of courage in confrontation with the demonic presences by which he may see himself surrounded. Beyond this there lurks in the experience of the drinker the confrontation of destiny as a psychological, rather than physical, reality. Sometimes death itself is personified. At others, the agents of death—the spirits of disease—threaten the initiate; still, at other times he may feel that he is about to be devoured by fierce animals. In all such instances he must not be afraid. If he can do this, he will be transformed by his experience. I have little
doubt that the confrontation of death, or an intensified awareness of mortality, is a salient trait of the typical yagé experience. If this is so, we should think of yagé as an ordeal in itself.

Among non-Indians to whom I have administered the Banisteriopsis alkaloids, the almost universal reaction is that of lying flat with eyes closed. Only a few subjects have felt enough energy to sit up or move, or have had enough interest in contacting their environment. Yet there appears to be a relationship between the individual’s physical well being, the amount of movement displayed, and the quality of his visionary experience. The same individuals who felt at ease in this reality—being able to walk, write or talk with comfort—were those who felt at ease in their visions, these not being nightmares but beautiful scenes. More specifically, the difference between the two lies not in the content of visions, but in the affective component in them, and the role played in them by the beings imagined. The individual who lies in a drowsy state and feels the most physical discomfort and nausea is the same one who visualizes the tiger as an attacker or the snake as a repulsive creature. The person who feels physical comfort and enjoys movement is generally the same one who visualizes the tiger as a friend or the snake as a guide.

I think that the most pervasive “harmaline themes” may be regarded as abstract emotion in the same sense that the content of music is. Specific images contribute different combinations of these abstract emotions or elemental experimental ingredients in the same manner that musical chords are formed by musical notes.

§40 Yagé seems generally to be taken in a formal ceremony, such as is described below by G. Reichel-Dolmatoff (1978:11-14), who has studied the use of Banisteriopsis caapi by the Tukano Indians of Colombia over a period of many years:

The amount and quality of light are said to influence the sensitiveness of the participants who occasionally should stare for a while into the red glow of the torch or of a hearth fire . . . . Finally, acoustical stimulation is said to be of importance. The sudden sounds . . . are said to release or to modify the luminous images that appear in the field of view after a few drinks of the narcotic potion. As a matter of fact, the entire ritual is orchestrated, so to say, in a very complex fashion, and no sounds, movements, or light effects are quite arbitrary occurrences, but obey an overall plan of well-defined and predetermined sensory signals.

Shamans and elders play an important part in these rituals, serving as guides and commentators once the participants begin to feel bewildered by the maze of disquieting visions. They explain and exhort, reciting fragments of myths or of songs, and thus constitute an ever present and most reassuring element of guidance and council in the midsts of, what can be celestial, or nightmarish, visions.

According to the Indians the drug experience can be divided into three stages. In the first stage, after some violent bodily reactions such as vomiting, diarrhea, and profuse perspiration, the person will feel like flying upward through the air toward the Milky Way, and will perceive, with half-closed or completely closed eyes, an increasing number of luminous sensations. After a series of brilliant yellow flashes dancing dots will appear, soon to be replaced by a multitude of small luminous images that
seem to float in space and now begin to change their shapes and colors in kaleidoscopic fashion.

The onset of the second stage is marked by the gradual disappearance of the symmetric light patterns and by the slow formation of larger images of irregular shapes. Now the ecstatic flight takes the person beyond the Milky Way and before him begin to unfold dimensions that offer visions of dreamlike scenes that overwhelm the beholder. Three-dimensional forms, like rolling clouds, begin to fill the visual field and slowly turn into multicolored, recognizable shapes of people, animals, and monsters. In visualizing these figures the explanations of the shamans or the old men are of importance because they constitute an element of imprinting which stabilizes similar visions on future occasions. The Indians see in these visions mythological scenes full of profound significance to the viewer who watches them with apprehension while becoming more and more emotionally involved in trying to interpret the changing images. People say that they can see the Sun-Father and his daughter, the Snake-Canoe of the Creation Myth, the Master of Animals, Thunder-Person, jaguar-spirits and other supernatural beings and that these appear to reenact the Creation. Thus the beholder is present at the construction of the first maloca [cult lodge], the execution of the first dance, or the introduction of the musical instruments. But there also appear monstrous animals and menacing shadows in weird shapes. The game animals crowd the scene and—speaking a language that can be understood by humans—clamor for justice and accuse the hunters of killing too many of them.

It is said that the individual "dies" when he drinks the potion and that now his spirit returns to the uterine regions of the Beyond, only to be reborn there and to return to his ordinary existence on this earth when the trance is over . . . . Once inside the womb and, as the Tukano say, "beyond the Milky Way," the person believes he is able to see all the preternatural entities of Creation, to hear their voices, see their brilliant regalia, and what is more, witness them act out the principal scenes of the Creation of the Universe. They will reenact the Creation, or, rather, the beholder will have returned in time to witness the original creation, and so he will be able to see the birth of plant and animal life, the beginning of the institution of the yarupari ritual, the establishment of the yagé trance, and any other event mentioned in myth and tradition.

But not all the visions are as rewarding as these; sometimes the images are blurred and the person perceives only huge shapeless masses of color moving vaguely in space. And sometimes these shapes will turn into terrifying monsters, into jaguars and serpents that approach and threaten to devour the person, who, terror stricken, will call out in anguish. The beatific vision of the beyond is not achieved by all, but those who have had a glimpse of its peaceful radiance, will tell of its wonders and will yearn to see it again and again. But others will be horrified by the dangers that seem to threaten them, and will be deeply disturbed by the visions.

There are many other occasions when a man might drink yagé for some personal reason and shamans are, of course, frequent consumers of narcotic drugs in various forms. The main objective of entering in a trance is, after all, the acquisition of knowledge, a knowledge that is expected to exist in the Otherworld and that people try to obtain from the supernatural beings.

This knowledge includes, according to Reichel-Dolmatoff (1975: 191-192), awareness of spirit beings who are:
in every aspect, the exact doubles of every man and woman . . . . The idea of the double is fundamental to many Tukano concepts . . . . There is . . . "another world" matching in detail our world of empirical reality, and between these two "worlds" there is thought to exist a thin shell, an invisible wall which can be penetrated only in a hallucinatory trance. Under the influence of viho or yagé people say they have visited this other dimension and have seen its inhabitants . . . behaving just like ordinary people in this world.

§41 The use of yagé among the more aggressive and individualistic Jivaro of eastern Peru is somewhat differently oriented in Harner's (1968) description:

The Jivaro Indians of the Ecuadorian Amazon believe that witchcraft is the cause of the vast majority of illness and nonviolent deaths. The normal waking life, for the Jivaro, is simply a "lie," or illusion, while the true forces that determine daily events are supernatural and can only be seen and manipulated with the aid of hallucinogenic drugs. A reality view of this kind creates a particularly strong demand for specialists who can cross over into the supernormal world at will to deal with the forces that influence and even determine the events of the waking life.

The specialists, called "shamans" by anthropologists, are recognized by the Jivaro as being of two types: bewitching shamans and curing shamans. Both kinds take a hallucinogenic drink, whose Jivaro name is natema, in order to enter the supernatural world . . . . When I first undertook research among the Jivaro in 1956-1957, I did not fully appreciate the psychological impact of the Banisteriopsis drink upon the native view of reality, but in 1961 I had occasion to drink the hallucinogen in the course of field work with another Upper Amazon Basin tribe. For several hours after drinking the brew, I found myself, although awake, in a world literally beyond my wildest dreams. I met bird-headed people, as well as dragon-like creatures who explained that they were the true gods of this world. I enlisted the services of other spirit helpers in attempting to fly through the far reaches of the Galaxy. Transported into a trance where the supernatural seemed natural, I realized that anthropologists, including myself, had profoundly underestimated the importance of the drug in affecting native ideology. Therefore, in 1964 I returned to the Jivaro to give particular attention to the drug's use by the Jivaro shaman . . . .

The use of the hallucinogenic [yagé] among the Jivaro makes it possible for almost anyone to achieve the trance state essential for the practice of shamanism. Given the presence of the drug and the felt need to contact the "real," or supernatural, world, it is not surprising that approximately one out of every four Jivaro men is a shaman.

§42 There are parallels in the intoxicant use of sauma in ancient Iran and of Banisteriopsis by the Amazonian Indians which show the alkaloids of Banisteriopsis/harmel to be suited to purposes similar to those for which sauma was used. In both cases the plant is consumed under the supervision of specialists (who are the shamans/priests) in ceremonies performed for initiations and in connection with the killing of animals for food, and characterized by the chanting of selected songs before a fire. There is also to be considered, however, the more unusual parallelism in beliefs about the spiritual world
with which the use of sauma and Banisteriopsis are associated. In both ancient Iran and among the Amazonians the plants consumed in their respective ceremonies are thought to reveal spiritual worlds containing mythological and historical events, heaven and hell, and the precise counterparts of past, present and future entities and events known in the empirical world. The conception of the spiritual world in ancient Iran seems to have been of a superior reality occupied by good and evil spirits and also by spirit forms of all material entities. These relatively unusual ideas are similar to Tukano Indian conceptions, although there is no possibility of a transmission of beliefs between Iran and the Colombian Amazon. These parallel constellations of views of the supernatural must therefore be independent developments, and explanation must be sought in some factor common to both societies. For the Tukano, these conceptions of the spiritual world can be regarded as an outcome of numerous generations of study and interpretation of experiences of the psychopharmacology of the harmala alkaloids, visions induced by which may have the quality of dreams experienced in the waking state (C. Naranjo 1967). Like the dreams of sleep, the visions are experienced as real, but when the eyes are opened, there is no distortion of ordinary vision and, though the visions are sometimes superimposed, there is little confusion between what is visionary and what is tangible reality. It is apparent from the description of the Tukano’s “going beyond the Milky Way” that the visions not only seem real, but that those seeing them believe that their content is witnessed by many people, thus giving consensual validity to their reality, while witnessing the simultaneous existence of forms identical to those encountered in ordinary reality inspires a concept of spirit doubles. Since these specific aspects of Tukano beliefs have their basis in the subjective effects of the harmala alkaloids, it follows that the development of parallel beliefs in ancient Iran could have resulted from consumption as sauma of these same alkaloids, obtained from Peganum harmala.
HISTORICAL AND GEOGRAPHICAL AVAILABILITY OF HARMEL

IRANIAN AWARENESS OF THE PROPERTIES OF HARMEL

§43 Since the ancient Iranians believed in the reality of a spirit world and the need to obtain information regarding it, the fact that harmaline offers a means to see such a world suggests that if they had been aware of the pharmacological potential of *Peganum harmala* they would have made use of it for that purpose. In this chapter we shall see that the availability and conspicuousness of *Peganum harmala* as a drug make it unlikely that it escaped the attention of the ancient Iranians. In Iranian folk medicine today harmel is recognized as having psychotropic properties; to swallow an infusion of the seeds is believed to produce madness.¹ The intoxicating properties of the plant are recognized in its vernacular names among neighboring peoples, such as Arabic *mogannana* (Ducros 1930) ‘that which makes mad’ and Turkish *mahmur çičeğil* (Bedeian 1936) ‘dreamy flower’. Evidence for what plants were anciently classed as intoxicants is not directly available because no pre-Islamic Iranian writings on pharmacognosy survive. Early Iranian ethnopharmacology was apparently well developed, however, and contributed much to Islamic knowledge of drugs. Intoxication is recognized as an effect of harmel by some of the earliest Islamic pharmacological writers, for example, Abū Jurayj (c. 900 C.E.) in Abū Bakr M. ibn Zakariyā’ al-Rāzī’s *Kitāb al-Ḥāwī fī al-ṭibb* (*Rhazes’ Liber Continens*) (Hyderabad 1967:20, 326), and authorities quoted by Ibn Bayṭār (see below) say *Peganum harmala* “intoxicates like wine” (cf. Avestan *maḏa*- used for the intoxication of both *haoma* and wine). This may reflect ancient Iranian views about the plant, since the power to intoxicate is not mentioned for harmel by Dioscurides (c. 78 C.E.) or Galen (c. 180 C.E.), the Greek authors whose works,

---

¹ An extract made by boiling harmel in vinegar is still used for toothache in central Iran. Dr. Mahmoud Omidsalar tells me that his great aunt related to him that once in her childhood she was administered this medication and accidentally swallowed it despite warnings that doing so would lead to madness. She recalled that she “saw everything moving in front of her and beheld wells in the earth.” Though she could understand, she was herself unable to speak during the entire day, most of which she spent asleep. Ivanov et al. (1965) report that dilute acetic acid extracted 98% of harmel seed alkaloids.
translated into Arabic about 850 C.E., provided the core of systematic Islamic pharmacology.

§44 The most extensive compendium of Islamic pharmacological knowledge is the Kitāb al-Jāmiʿ li-mufradāt al-adwiya wa al-aγdiya, written by Ibn Baytār in the mid-thirteenth century. The following is the entry on ḥarmal (with some rearrangement of subsections) from this work (ed. Cairo 1967; cf. Leclerc 1877-1883: I, 423; Sontheimer 1842: I, 217-219):

[A. The Ḥarmal Plant]

[The Arabic translation of] Dioscorides [states] “This plant grows in Cappadocia and Galatia in Asia and they name it muṣl; some call it wild rue (ṣaḥāb yayr bustānī). This is a shrub which has many stalks extending from one base. Its leaves are longer, softer and more strongly scented than the leaves of garden rue, and the flower is white and the head is a little larger than the head of garden rue and is triangular and contains the seeds, reddish in color, with three angles and of intense bitterness. The seeds are what is used. They ripen in autumn. Mixed with honey, wine, chicken gall, saffron and fennel juice it is useful for weak vision. Some call it ḥarmalā and the Syrians call it basāsā and the people of Cappadocia call it muṣl because it is similar in having a black root and white flowers. It grows on hills and in fertile places.

Abū Ḥanīfa al-Dinawarī [Arab philologist who wrote The Book of Plants (Kitāb al-Nabāt) about 895 C.E.]: “Ḥarmal is of two kinds. One is a kind with leaves like the Egyptian willow and flowers which in being white and fragrant are like jasmine flowers. Sesame oil and moringa seed oil become fragrant with this blossom. Its odor is not like the odor of olives. Its seed is in a capsule like the capsule of Cassia. The other kind is that which is called in Persian isfand. The capsule of this kind is round and that of the other is long. The capsule is the vessel containing the seeds.”

Ibn Samajūn [d. 1001 C.E.]: “There are two: a white and a red. The white is the Arabic ḥarmal, called in Greek muṣl, and the red is known as common ḥarmal and is called isfand in Persian.”

[B. Pharmacological Properties]

Galen: “It is warm and dry in the third degree. It loosens thick viscous humors and removes them through the urine.”

Masūd al-Dimashqī [c. 850 C.E.]: “The seed expels tapeworms from the intestines. It is used against colic, sciatica and coxalgia in a pubic compress. It purifies the chest and lungs of viscous mucus and dissipates visceral flatulence.”

‘Isā ibn Māṣṣa [9th century C.E.]: “We at the Marw hospital use the seed to expel black bile and various kinds of mucus by means of diarrhea. It is of the greatest use in treating epilepsy.”

Al-Rāzī [d. 925 C.E.]: “Ḥarmal obstructs and breaks up pain. It induces the flow of menstruation and urine. Some physicians say an infusion undoes the black bile, purifies the blood and softens the womb.”

2. The red and white ḥarmal are distinguished by the color of the seed capsules. Neither the color nor the roundness of the capsules appears to have genuine taxonomic significance, however, and in Islamic materia medica no practical distinction is made either between red and white ḥarmal or between “common” or “Arabic” ḥarmel.
Ibn Wāfid [d. 1074 C.E.]: “It is useful to those possessed by love (asbāb al-išq) because of inducing intoxication and sleep.”

‘Ali ibn Rizayn: “It is useful for colds of the brain or the body.”

Anonymous: “It clarifies the complexion. It inclines one to coitus. It fattens and stimulates menstruation and urination.”

Another: “One and a half mithqal of pulverized seed taken over 12 nights is effective against sciatica. When not available cardamum seed of equal amount may be used.”

[C. Preparation]

Hubaysh ibn al-Ḥasan [d. 880 C.E.]: “It causes vomiting and intoxicates like wine or nearly so. This is how to employ it as a vomitive: Wash five drachmas of seeds in gentle water several times and dry them, then pound them in a mortar with a wooden pestle and sift through a coarse linen weave. Pour four ounces of boiling water over [the pulverized seeds]. Pound in a wooden mortar and pass through a coarse linen weave and discard the residue. To this infusion add three ounces of honey and two ounces of sesame oil. It is then ready for use and induces strong vomiting.”

Išāq ibn ʿImran [d. 901 C.E.]: “One puts two parts of it into a vessel with 30 parts of wine and heats this until one quarter of it evaporates. Ten drachmas may then be successively administered daily to epileptics. It may also be administered for three consecutive days to a woman who has conceived at least once but is unable to conceive again. The proof that the medicine works is that it induces vomiting.”

§45 Since the constituents, harmaline and harmine, that are the chief cause of vomiting are also responsible for the intoxicating effects of harmel, the preparation of the drug as an emetic or as an intoxicant would be the same.3 The first of the two methods of preparation above includes the crushing in a mortar (and filtering) characteristic of the preparation of sauma. Crushing of harmel materials is essential for all their drug uses and can therefore be assumed to precede the boiling of Peganum harmala seed in wine as well.4 This process of crushing must have been important for the preparation of sauma because it is attested in the very name *sauma-/soma-/haoma* - ‘(plant) submitted to pressing [in mortar] or drink obtained from it’.5 It is unlikely that the drug would be named from its extraction by pressing if the equivalent results could be obtained by simply chewing the plant materials, as is the case with psychotropic mushrooms.

§46 Peganum harmala, shown in Figure 1, is a bushy shrub with numerous 1-2 foot stems extending radially from the apex of a woody tap root. The stems

---

3. Vomiting is a frequent but not an invariable effect of harmaline ingestion. C. Naranjo reported 18 out of 30 of his subjects responded to harmaline by vomiting (see his comments §39).

4. In R. N. Chopra et al. (1965: 221) one reads: “the seeds…in an elephant are said to bring about a condition of tremendous excitement whereby the animal loses control over himself, i.e. becomes ’mast.’” These animals are able to adequately crush the seeds with their teeth. Harmel seeds are also said to produce excitement in horses.

5. From a root *sau* ‘to extract’; the formation of Proto-Indo-Iranian *sauma-* is reexamined below, §§187-197.
are much branched and curve upwards towards their ends, bearing alternate multi-lobed leaves and white, five-petaled, half-inch terminal flowers. From these develop pea-sized, 3-lobed seed capsules, the color of which changes from green to reddish brown to dull white as they mature. Each compartment of these capsules contains 11-15 angular dark red-brown seeds.

§47 The total amount of the psychoactive constituents of *Peganum harmala*, harmaline and harmine, is greatest (2-7%) in the mature seeds (Kutlu and Amal 1967: 135; al-Shamma and Abdul-Ghany 1977) and in the roots (1.4 - 3.2%; *ibid.*), but the ratio of these two alkaloids as well as the total amount contained vary seasonally, geographically, and possibly with other factors.6 Harmaline and harmine are qualitatively similar pharmacologically but differ in potency. Similar subjective effects are reported after oral doses of 4mg./kg. harmaline or 8mg./kg. harmine (C. Naranjo 1967).7 Much larger doses in mammals (from 20 to 300 mg./kg. harmine [Gunn 1937]) bring tremor, lowering of blood pressure and of body temperature, and ultimately cardiovascular disturbances resulting in death. For a person of average size the characteristic subjective effects of these alkaloids is usually obtained by consuming 5-10 grams of seeds, 10-30 grams of root, or slightly larger quantities of entire fruiting stems of harmel. These are amounts which may easily be prepared for consumption in a hand mortar of moderate size.

§48 As well as these alkaloids, harmal seeds also contain an edible oil (14-17%); nevertheless, the commercial value of the plant has never been great. *Peganum harmala* is the source of a red dye which in early nineteenth-century Anatolia was used in dying the Turkish *fez*. The substance was obtained by a complex process involving the treatment of harmel seeds for six months with a mixture of saltpeter and sal ammoniac dissolved in brandy. This red dye, which is apparently an oxidation product of the alkaloids (Schutzengerger 1867: 2, 61-67), was later rapidly produced by treatment of seeds with alcohol and sulfuric acid (Goebel 1838). A yellow pigment (and also brown and greenish ones, see Kasumov 1983) can be obtained merely by water extraction of the seeds (Dollfus and Schlumberger 1842). Because of supplying this

---

6. The quantity of harmaline may be twice that of harmine in seeds collected in January, with the ratio between the two alkaloids reversed in June (Kamel *et al.* 1970). The total content of harmaline and harmine of roots is greatest in the thicker root parts (Safina *et al.* 1970: 230) and varies from 1.5 to over 3 percent. Root alkaloid content varies significantly seasonally; it is highest in winter and declines after the appearance of flowers and with the maturing of the seeds. From October to February roots reportedly averaged 0.4% harmaline and 1.8% harmine, whereas during August they contained 0.6% harmine and 0.8% harmaline (*ibid.*, see also Khashimov *et al.* 1971:382), but specimens collected in Iraq assayed by al-Shamma and Abdul-Ghany (1977) contained nearly twice these amounts.

7. Penne and Hoch (1959) report oral administration of up to 960 mg. harmine failed to produce hallucinatory effects in their subjects, who were, however, institutionalized schizophrenics.
yellow dye, harmel is sometimes referred to in India as a kind of henna (i.e. as *mhendi* or *goranti*, see Table 1). Investigation of the possible industrial value of these dyes indirectly lead to the isolation and identification of the alkaloids harmaline (Goebel 1841) and harmine (Fritzche 1847).

**Geographical Distribution of Harmel**

§49 One may expect that sauma was sufficiently abundant throughout Greater Iran for its use among the various Indo-Iranian groups there to have long continued. In the absence of any indication of the cultivation of sauma or, in the Iranian materials, of any suggestion of either scarcity or local advantages in its supply at any time, sauma should have been easily obtained as a wild plant within the Greater Iranian area. Among the few uncultivated indigenous plants known to contain psychoactive drugs, *Peganum harmala* is uniquely abundant over this territory.

§50 A possible limit to the geographical range of sauma is provided by the fact that no equivalent intoxicant plant seems to have been known to other Indo-European groups. Sauma could well have been unique to the Indo-Iranian peoples because the plant grew where they alone encountered it, and was not available to the kindred peoples occupying lands to the northwest until after the fixation of distinctly different religious practices.

§51 The historical distribution of *Peganum harmala* corresponds to the area which may thus be assumed *a priori* for sauma. In some late Greek writings, *Peganum harmala* is called περσάια βοτάνη ‘the Persian plant’ (Thomson 1955: texts D.11 and T.10), and the center of its distribution seems indeed to have been the Iranian area, where it occupies vast areas of the hinterland. The antiquity of *Peganum harmala* among the Iranian people is reflected by the fact that far-flung later Iranian languages have names for the plant which evolved independently from a single Proto-Iranian form (see below, §61), indicating that the Iranian peoples were acquainted with it from the earliest period. *Peganum harmala* was early known elsewhere in Western Asia; its Akkadian name was apparently šiburratu (Von Soden 1978:13,1226; Thompson 1949: 74), cf. Aramaic šabbārā (Mandaic *šambra*) ‘*Peganum harmala*’ (Löw 1881: 321). Its dispersal has been as a weed, thriving on the nitrogenous wastes accompanying human settlement and invading disturbed ground. West of Khorasan the plant is increasingly encountered only as a weed on overgrazed, abandoned fields (Thalen 1979: 301 seq.) and most typically beside roads. In Iraq, harmel is described as “the ruderal plant *par

---

excellence of the desert; it is invariably found along caravan routes, in the vicinity of wells, etc.” (Guest and al-Rawi 1966: 93).

§52 In the earliest description of *Peganum harmala*, which is that of the first century C.E. herbal of Dioscurides (III, 45-46; the Arabic translation of which was quoted in §44A), it is described as a variety of rue, namely πηγανον ἄγριον ‘wild rue’ (Wellmann 1907-1914:2, 57-60). From Dioscurides we learn that among the “Syrians” it had the names βησασά and αρμαλά (i.e. baakhirū and harmalā), among the “Africans” χωρμά in Egypt ἐννοιβοῦ (for these names see below, §§265-268), and in parts of Anatolia (Cappadocia and Galatia) μῶλυ.10 *Peganum harmala* does not appear to have become established in Greece, Italy, or elsewhere in Europe much before Dioscurides’ time, for Theophrastus (*Enquiry into Plants* 7.4.1; Hort 1916) was ignorant of it. It is now a circum-Mediterranean weed and is found in Eastern Europe as far north as Budapest (Löw 1924). Expansion of the plant into southern Europe seems largely to have occurred after the advent of Islam, for its European names are predominantly derived from the Arabic ʿḥarmal (e.g. Spanish garmarza, harmagra, alhargame, alfarma, armage, alharma, amargaza, etc. [Lokotsch 1927]).

9. The names χωρμά and ἐννοιβοῦ are absent from the Arabic version of Dioscurides (see Dubler and Teres 1952-1957).

10. Paul Anton de Lagarde (1866: 173 seq.) claimed the name “moly” (Greek μῶλυ) links *Peganum harmala* with haoma. Lagarde’s remarks concerned a passage in Plutarch’s *De Iside et Osiride* 46 on Persian religious practices in Cappadocia in the second century B.C.E. Here it is said that a herb ὅμωμι was pounded in a mortar and mixed with the blood of a wolf as an offering to the devil, Areimanos. This herb ὅμωμι must be ultimately connected in some way with Persian hauma- (although its use with wolf’s blood in offerings to Ahriman is hardly orthodox). Lagarde argued that ὅμωμι was a Greek reflex of Cappadocian μῶλυ and hence that *Peganum harmala* must have been used in Cappadocia as a substitute for haoma (why it would not itself have been haoma he does not explain clearly). As was shown by E. Benveniste (1929), Lagarde’s effort to derive phonologically ὅμωμι from μῶλυ is not possible. (Dünnner may have independently come to the same conclusion as did Lagarde, however, in emending ὅμωμι to μῶλυ in his 1867 edition of the Plutarch text [see further Griffiths 1970]). Despite Lagarde’s sound intuition into the botanical origins of haoma, his discussion of the matter has seemed obscure (e.g. even while professing to corroborate Lagarde’s arguments, Brunnhöfer [1910] misunderstood him to have identified haoma with *Ruta graveolens*). For the forms ὅμωμι and μῶλυ, see below, §§269-271.

*Moly* is the name of the magical plant which in *Odyssey* X, 304-306, Hermes provides to Odysseus as antidote to Circe’s potion (Rieu 1946:163). Whether Dioscurides’ report that moly was an Anatolian name for harmel establishes the botanical identity of Hermes’ moly is a matter of some controversy (for which see J. Stannard [1967], K. Raehner [1969], and J. Clay [1970]). That harmel was moly is made increasingly plausible by the data linking harmel with soma, for parallels between the mythology of soma and that of moly have been noted by J.-F. Cerquand (1873:55-58) and analyzed by him as having a common origin. There are also parallels to certain elements of soma rituals in the ingredients of the drug prepared by Circe (involving barley, cheese, honey, and Prunian wine and identical to mixtures attested elsewhere in Greek literature), which have been brought to light by C. Watkins (1978).
Peganum harmala has apparently been present longer in the southern parts of the European U.S.S.R., where it is known as a weed especially characterized by its association with sites of human occupation (for instance in cemeteries, reflected by its Russian name mogil'nik ‘tomb’ [see Osadca 1930; Ossadcha-Janata 1952]). In the east of the Iranian area Peganum harmala is gradually replaced by a second species, P. nigellastrum Bunge, which extends into Mongolia and north China.\textsuperscript{11}

§53 Harmel is universally associated with the cultivated garden rue, \textit{Ruta graveolens} L., and the two other Mediterranean \textit{Ruta} species, \textit{Ruta chalepensis} L. and \textit{Ruta montana} L. (see Figure 2). These \textit{Ruta} species are small evergreen herbs similar in size, leaf form and in the shape and size of seeds and seed capsules to harmel, which they resemble also in being strongly scented. The association of harmel with species of \textit{Ruta} is manifest in the frequent interchange of their vernacular names, as may be seen in Tables 1 and 2. Where harmel has been introduced into areas where \textit{Ruta} species are already known, it is described as a kind of \textit{Ruta} (thus many European names for harmel such as Syrian \textit{wild rue}, \textit{African rue}, \textit{rue sauvage}, Harmelraute, and so forth; exemplified by the botanical name \textit{Peganum} which is from the Greek πηγανων, the usual ancient Greek name for \textit{Ruta} species). Likewise where harmel is the older plant, \textit{Ruta} has been named from harmel (e.g. Coptic \textit{baštouis} ['\textit{Ruta}'] < Syrian \textit{baššūša} ['harmel']; Bengali \textit{ermal} ['\textit{Ruta}'] and Berber \textit{iurmi} ['\textit{Ruta}'] < Arabic \textit{ḥarmal} or ṣ\textit{ḥurma} [see below, §265]; Armenian ‘\textit{sbant} of Aleppo’, Bengali \textit{ispund} and Persian \textit{sepandān-i ganda} [all ‘\textit{Ruta}’] < Old Iranian ‘\textit{svanta}- ['harmel']). In many other cases, however, forms of the Greek name πηγανων or the Latin name \textit{Ruta} (also originally a Greek word [André 1956]), have been adopted for \textit{Ruta graveolens} at the same time as its cultivation. The most widespread name for \textit{Ruta graveolens} throughout the Muslim world, sudâb/sadâb (the etymology of which is discussed below, §§274-286) was probably also originally a name for harmel (still known locally as ‘wild-’ sadâb or ‘mountain-’ sadâb) which was transferred when the cultivation of \textit{Ruta graveolens} was introduced into Iran.\textsuperscript{12}

\textsuperscript{11} Whether species of \textit{Peganum}, or varieties of \textit{P. harmala} (of which Nabil el-Hadidi [1972] distinguishes three in Iran) differ significantly in their content of harmaline or other drugs awaits investigation. A third species, \textit{P. Mexicanum} Gray (\textit{P. Texicanum} [M. E. Jones 1933-1935: 47]) is indigenous to remote parts of Texas and northern Mexico. Around 1920 \textit{Peganum harmala} was introduced into the American Southwest (Dayton 1937; Cory 1949; Correll and Johnstone 1970) where it has swiftly colonized roadsides; it now flourishes along much of Interstate-10 between Pecos, Texas, and Phoenix, Arizona.

\textsuperscript{12} The close connection of \textit{Ruta graveolens} with \textit{Peganum harmala} (Arabic \textit{ḥarmal}) is evident in perhaps the earliest attestation in Arabic of the name \textit{sašāb} for \textit{Ruta graveolens}, found in the 'UYūn al-\textit{axbār} of Ibn Qutayba (c. 850 C.E.), where a popular belief is reported: “upon standing, the seeds of \textit{sašāb} become those of \textit{ḥarmal}” (Brockelmann 1908: 489.10).
Figure 1. *Peganum harmala* L.
Figure 2. Species of *Ruta*.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Language</th>
<th>Synonym</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A. harrmala</td>
<td>PORTUGUESE</td>
<td>harrmala (44)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. harrmala</td>
<td>SPANISH</td>
<td>harma (44), harmaga (44), alharmara (44), alharmara (44), armage (44), alhargama (44), amarga (44)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. harrmala</td>
<td>CATALAN</td>
<td>arma (44), ruda borda (50)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. harrmala</td>
<td>FRENCH</td>
<td>rue savauge (62), erimola (62)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. harrmala</td>
<td>GERMAN</td>
<td>Harmel (49), Harmelstaude (49), Harmelkraute (49), Harmelkraute (49), wilde Raute (49), Steppenraute (49)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. harrmala</td>
<td>UKRAINIAN</td>
<td>ruta-dyka (46), rebrik-sobač (46), rebryk (46), sobač-zillja (46), sobača-loboda (46), sobakarne (46), smerdioxa (46), vonyukča (46)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. harrmala</td>
<td>RUSSIAN</td>
<td>mogil'nik (63)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. harrmala</td>
<td>BULGARIAN</td>
<td>zarniš (32)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. harrmala</td>
<td>GRECO</td>
<td>Μεταξόνιορμάτος (28), εφνιο-πέγανο (v) (30), κολλίτα (30), ξίδεξις (30), ζενδόνα (16a), πεντάνο (30)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. harrmala</td>
<td>TURKISH</td>
<td>üzülik (15), ilezik (15), mahmur-çiçeği (65)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. harrmala</td>
<td>UZBEK</td>
<td>isiriiq (67a); Uc: idrīk (15); Azori: uzerriq (24a); Oguz: yidiğ (15); Kirghiz: adraspan (25), adaşma (25)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. harrmala</td>
<td>ARABIC</td>
<td>ḥarrmal (42), zarāt-al-harer (18), yaqla (36), šafrā (36), mogannāna (20), saṣāb-sāri (20), saṣāb-bari (20), yaqat-al-dīb (26), saṣāb-al-jibali (45), ṣağarat-al-xanīzir (57), xinīza (54), xanaize (17), xabīza (72), xāis (54), xva-is (17), xayyāsa (54), qays (54), ḥaramlan (69a), ḥarmelun (69), ḥurremlan (11), ḥaremlan (1), ḥuraymlan (3), nīgt (13), xaraj (11), xargul (64), harjāl (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. harrmala</td>
<td>PERSIAN</td>
<td>spend (38), spend (38), sipānd (68), sipānd (68), asbatān (68), istabān (68), ḥafsan (60), ṣefanj (60), ṣefanj (60), ṣīršādā (34), ṣaqrānā (34), ṣaʃārtalāšin (34), fāṣārisn (68), nīn (51), navand (16), navan (60), nī wand-maryam (56), Ḥazar-īsfand (16), ṣāndal-dānā* (16)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. harrmala</td>
<td>LARII</td>
<td>sandolos (23), sondoros (6); KERNII: svon (66), seben (66), espand (66), dašti (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. harrmala</td>
<td>SEMENII/SANGESARI</td>
<td>espang (67), esang (67), espand (67), esbond (67), esbund(i) (67)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. harrmala</td>
<td>TABARI</td>
<td>spend (66)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. harrmala</td>
<td>GIILAI</td>
<td>span-dāna* (56); SISTANI: dudni (75), dudnuk (43a), bidnīk (43a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. harrmala</td>
<td>KURDISH</td>
<td>aspand (37); LUR: di (40), espang (40), esvand (40), dēnīst (43)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. harrmala</td>
<td>BALUCHI</td>
<td>spand (74), span (74), hurmall (74), ispanthān (74), spandā (2), spunguli (2), spangulī (2), spanguli (2), espantān (4), spanayānān (plural) (4), gandāxī (53), gandhiyo (10), sadap-i-khāi (58a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. harrmala</td>
<td>PASHIOT</td>
<td>spilanai (52), spalanay (52), spandah (52), asdun-buta (73); Waziri: spilanai (55), spinda (55); WAKHI: spandr (33), spand (33), spandondān (33)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. harrmala</td>
<td>SHUGNI</td>
<td>ispandur (33); OROSHORI: sapān (21); ISHKASHMI: spondana (33); YAZGULAMI: spandān (22), s(a)pānt (22), s(a)pantāg (22)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. harrmala</td>
<td>BURUSHASKI</td>
<td>supandur (9); BALTI: isman (70); URDU: hurmur (48); PUNJABI: karnal (71), hurmul (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. harrmala</td>
<td>SINDI</td>
<td>spelani (74), hurmur (74); HINDI: fijal (34), harmul (74), isbund-lahouri (74), hurmul (74), kaladana (74), lahouri-hurmul (74)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. harrmala</td>
<td>GUJRATI</td>
<td>ispun (74), hurmaro (74); BENGAUL: ispand (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. harrmala</td>
<td>MARATHI</td>
<td>sarmala (74); TAMIL: siamai-arvandi-virati (74), simaai-zhavandi-virai-vittula (14), simaiyavardavi (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. harrmala</td>
<td>DECCAN</td>
<td>vilayati-isbnd (58), vilayati-mhendi &quot;foreign henna&quot; (58); KANARESE: sime-goranti (58); TELUGU: sima-goranti-vittula (58); CHINESE: huo tuo peng (11a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Country</td>
<td>Arabic Name</td>
<td>English Translation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Algeria</td>
<td>fidjel (12), fidjan (12), galec (12), galega (12), fiyal (13), fayyal (13), fayyan (13) saštā* (3), sidāb (18), šahrmał (17), sadāb (23), sašāb (23); Moroccan: sadāb* (37), fišīl (37), fišila* (37), issin* (37), bou-raines* (37), rūṭa (12), ārūta (13), rūṭa (13); Tlemcen: sadāb-al-jibali* (37), fjīela-al-jibali** (37), jell (39), zen (39), fīgeen (39), fījel (39), fīzol (38); Tunis: ḥāšī-al-jīn (20); Egypt: sandāb (27), sandāb* (35), sendāb (15), xuft (1); Arabic: sakab* (28), sazāb* (21a); Palestine: begām (23), sabād (23), sadābīe (23), ḥarmal* (1a); Yemen: xuft (11), xil (11), ṣadābah (6), sadāb* (35). BERBER: iwārmi (38), iurmi (22), iwrmi (22) awerma (34), awram (12), urrm (12). COPTIC: bašouš (10), kanon (7a). GALLA: dscharte (31). Tigrina: dhen (31). AMHARIC: taliaddam (31), tene-addam (31). GREEK: πηγάν (16), πηγαννία (16), πηγαν (16), πηγαννο (16), ἄπηγανς (16), πηγαννει (16). BULGARIAN: sedefche (17). HUNGARIAN: virmanc (4). ROUMANIAN: virmani (4). UKRAINIAN: zymozelen (25). ARMENIAN: halebi-sbant* (2), sadaf-khod (2), sadab (2), satsaz (2), garan (2), vahri-pegeman** (2), vahri-sazab (2). TURKISH: sedef (17), sadaf (29). PERSIAN: sudāb (23), saped (23), sadāb (23), payjan (40), payyan (40), sapandān-i-ganda (40). DAILAM: bim (19). KERMAN: sedōw (5). BALUCHI: zirag (26). SANSKRIT: brahmakanyaka (30), brāhmani (30), brāhmi (30), chrādvālari (30), guchhapatra (9), kapōtavegā (30), manḍūka (30), pitapuspa (9), sārasvatī (30), sarpadamśtra (9), saumyā (30), somalatā (9), somavallari (30), viṣap (9). PUNJABI: katmal (9). URDU: sudah (9). HINDI: pisamurum (9), sadab (9), satari (9), sātri (33), allooda (33), sānul (19), sātri (19). BENGALI: ermul (32), ermal (32), isband (32), ispond (9), tatli (19). KANARESE: hāvanjanu (9), nāgaldāli (9), sadābu (9), sudabugida (32). MALAYAM: somarayam (24), arūta (24), naagadhali (36), sādsā (1). TAMIL: aruvadam (9), arvada (9), pambuko (9), tirumutti-patchi (8), arroda (33), aruvadān (24), pāmbugollī (24), aruvadaam-chedi (36). TELUGU: aruda (9), sadapa (9), suddapo-akko (33), sudapaha (32). URIYA: marū (41).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
§54 In the Indian area *Peganum harmala* has also become established as a ruderal and, because it is generally known by forms of the Arabic *ḥarmal* or Persian *isfand*, is usually presumed to have been introduced by the Muslims (e.g. Burkill 1935), who import its seeds from the Iranian Plateau for medicinal and apotropaic purposes. It appears, however, already to have had an Indian name in the time of al-Bīrūnī (c. 1030 C.E.),\(^\text{13}\) which suggests (as do other factors discussed in §141) that it had reached India earlier.

13. In Abū Bakr ibn ‘Ali ibn ‘Uthmān al-Kāsānī’s Persian translation of the *Kitāb al-Šaydana fi ṭibb* made in 1228 C.E. (Sotoudeh and Afshar 1973: 225; British Library Or. 5849, f.56.16) that name is *dwpw*; in the Arabic text (Said and Elakie 1973: 155) it is given as *hmlw*. These names are discussed below, §272.

A link between *Peganum harmala* and the plant known in Islamic materia medica as *ḥawm al-majūs* is provided by al-Bīrūnī’s remark that some people apply the name *ḥarmal* to *buxūr maryam*, for *buxūr maryam* is identified as *ḥawm al-majūs* in some later Persian materia medica (e.g. the *Ṭuhfat al-Mumīnin* [c. 1669]). Al-Bīrūnī speculates that both plants might be called *ḥarmal* because, like *Peganum harmala*, “buxūr maryam” induces menstruation, but this property does not in fact seem to provide sufficient explanation for referring to *buxūr maryam* as “*ḥarmal*”. In Arabic *buxūr maryam* is usually *Cyclamen europaeum* L. (Primulaceae) (Schmucker 1969:105). This *Cyclamen* species is in no way associated with Zoroastrian rituals (although the intriguing name *Zoroastris* is given by Dioscorides as a name for it [Günther 1934:202; Kühn 1829:25,303]). The name *buxūr maryam* is, however, also sometimes applied to *Calendula officinalis* L. (Compositae) (Meyerhof and Sobhy 1932-1940:148). *Ḥawm al-majūs* would from its name ‘*haoma* of the Magi’ have reference to a plant used by the Zoroastrian priests. From all indications, the plants used by Zoroastrian priests (i.e. the Magi) to which *ḥawm al-majūs* could have referred (see below, §123) were pomegranate, tamarisk, *Ephedra*, *Ruta graveolens*, or *Peganum harmala*, and none of these much resembles either *Cyclamen europaeum* (“sow bread”) or *Calendula officinalis* (“marigold”). While sometimes Arabic *buxūr maryam* names *Calendula officinalis*, the usual Persian name for *Calendula officinalis* is *āftāb paras* ‘sun worshipper’, and this term is given by al-Bīrūnī himself as a synonym for *ḥawm al-majūs*. Thus, by way of al-Bīrūnī, Arabic *ḥarmal* (= *Peganum harmala* and *buxūr maryam*) is linked with Arabic *ḥawm al-majūs* (= *buxūr maryam = āftāb paras*). It is unclear, however, whether a real plant was intended by his entry *ḥawm al-majūs* (translated below); because there he does not record his own observations, but instead presents a partial version of the account, found in the Pahlavi *Dēnkird* VII (2.25-31 [Madan 1911: 605f.]), of how *haoma* brought about the birth of Zoroaster. Bīrūnī’s entry is found only in the Arabic text of the *Kitāb al-Šaydana* [Togan 1941: 141; Said and Elakie 1973; cf. Habib 1979: 462]; it is missing from Persia MSS of the work:

“*Ḥawm al-majūs* : In Sogdian (it is called) *xwɔm* and in Syriac *rxɔd mywɔyr* and in Persian *āftāb paras* and *hwɔywr* [?]. The Magi claim that it is a tree without branches (*laqq*) that grows where no one can reach it, in Azarbayjan. (There) snakes would eat the young of two birds, and an angel came with a twig (*γυσαν*) of *ḥawm* and threw it in their nest and the snakes stopped their attack and their mouths were closed and the twig hung in that tree and it remains there yet.”
§55 *Peganum harmala* is characterized by a strong, peculiar odor,\(^{14}\) which issues from the leaves when they are disturbed. The plant is made especially noticeable to herdsmen, such as the Indo-Iranians were, by the fact that grazing animals (camels, goats, and some donkeys excepted [Bailey and Danin 1981]) will not eat of its fresh stems and leaves even in the face of starvation (Black and Parker 1936: 12). Its foliage is not actually toxic to large animals, and when it is cut and allowed to sit a few days, the upper part of the plant may be used as fodder *(ibid.)*. The avoidance of the living herb by livestock may make it seem strangely protected (Vonderheyden 1937:457). It appears that the property of being shunned by animals may have been regarded in Iran as a mark of plants that were powerful drugs.\(^{15}\) But doubtless of greater importance in drawing attention to *Peganum harmala* is the fact that because of this avoidance by grazing animals, stands of the plant are left isolated as the surrounding vegetation is consumed. Thereby harmel becomes one of the most available materials for fires, for which purpose, despite its relatively poor quality, it must always have been exploited in the severe winters of interior Asia.\(^{16}\) When harmel is gathered in this season, the whitish seed capsules crowning the ends of branches, from which the leaves have largely disappeared, are mature and contain numerous small seeds. These seeds have an unusual tendency to snap dramatically when placed in contact with fire, and they then emit volumes of richly scented smoke, describable as having “a heavy, narcotic odor” (Dymock 1889:255). In Iran the scent of this smoke has traditionally been regarded as incense. The smoke contains appreciable amounts of volatilized harmine and harmaline, the psychoactive potential of which must be considered in evaluating the historical origins of the tradition of burning harmel seeds. The smoke is valued as an analgesic for toothache (Boulos 1973: 195) or headache (Venzlaff 1977:65)\(^ {17}\) and may be effective as an antiseptic for wounds (Ghafoor 1974) and as an insecticide (Volk 1955), but,

\(^{14}\) The odor is reflected in the Ukrainian name *vonyučka*, Baluchi *gandhiyo*, *gandāxo*, and perhaps also in Armenian *šan-p’in* ‘dog dung’ (Gabikean 1968; pointed out to me by Professor James Russell).

\(^{15}\) The aversion by animals may have been a characteristic traditionally imputed to sauma. Zakariyā' ibn M. al-Qazwini (d. 1283) (*Kitāb ʿAjā′īb al-makhlūqāt* ed. Saad 1973: 210) mentions a plant growing on Mt. Savalān in Azerbaijan, remarkable for being shunned by animals. From the context it is clear that Qazwini’s account derives from the very same legend as does al-Bīrūnī’s *hawm al-majīs* (see n.13 above) and that the plant referred to is the same *hōm* that conveyed Zoroaster to his father. It is of interest that Pseudo-Democritus (in Pliny, see below, §149) gives *hippopobas* ‘that which puts horses to flight’ as a synonym for *achaemenis* (=sauma?).

\(^{16}\) Abū Ḥanīfa al-Dinawari’s (d. 895 C.E.) *Kitāb al-Nabāt* (ed. Lewin 1953) notes the use of harmel as a fuel by Arabian bedouins. See Jackson (1911:118) for a photograph of bundles of harmel collected for fuel.

\(^{17}\) Harmine is the basis of a patented analgesic (*Chemical Abstracts* 61, 15942).
with respect to psychoactive properties, the amount of harmaline that might be absorbed by inhalation of this smoke would not ordinarily be significant, except perhaps in the case of young children.\textsuperscript{18} After having consumed a threshold dose of harmaline, however, the rapid absorption of additional quantities of the drug from inhaling this smoke could have immediate and marked subjective effects. If this pharmacological potential of the smoke has indeed contributed to the importance in Iran of burning harmel seeds (examined in the next chapter), then originally the plant must have been consumed as well as burned.

\textsection{56} Given that the Proto-Indo-Iranians were sufficiently interested in the intoxicating properties of plants to evolve a ritual based on the consumption of sauma, it is difficult to believe that they would have remained unaware that an extract of the seeds of \textit{Peganum harmala} prepared in the same way as sauma produces the very effects for which sauma was valued.

\textsuperscript{18} An exception would be the case of a Moroccan exorcism reported by Vonderheyden (1937: 459) to consist of remaining in a tent of harmel vapor until demons are heard to cry out and depart. According to Ossadcha-Janata (1952: 7), "village fools" ("douvans") in Bukhara used to inhale the smoke of harmel seeds.
ETHNOBOTANIC CONTINUITY OF SAUMA IN IRAN

THE IRANIAN NAMES FOR HARMEL IDENTIFY IT AS SAUMA

§57 The texts of the ceremonial tradition refer to sauma by terms such as haoma, pertaining to its ritual preparation as a drug, and not by its common name as a plant. However, the ceremonial imitation of consuming sauma, which seems to be of Proto-Indo-Iranian origin, could have been efficacious only if there was wide general understanding of what was being imitated. This implies that the intoxicating power of sauma was originally well known; however, use of the common name of the plant in the texts recited in the ceremony would have ultimately resulted in acknowledgement that some performances only imitated the act of drinking the drug. It was thus necessary for the plant to be so designated in the liturgy as to make it possible for other plants to be used as ceremonial equivalents.

§58 Reference to the plant as haoma ‘extract’ was well suited to this situation. This seeming obscurantism should not be taken to mean that the identity of the intoxicating plant was secret; on the contrary, the institution of the ceremony must have depended on the reputation of that plant. What would appear to have been secret was whether the plant used on a given occasion was actually sauma (see below, §153). The ambiguity of the term haoma has served to permit the continuation of the ceremonies using only nonintoxicating plants. As we shall next consider, there appears to be only one instance in surviving Avestan texts where haoma is linked with the real name of an intoxicating plant, and that plant is Peganum harmala.

§59 The usual names for Peganum harmala in Iranian languages are forms such as isfand, sepand, sven, etc. (see Table 1) deriving from Proto-Iranian *svanta- (Avestan spanta-) which meant in effect ‘possessing productive numinous power’ (see Bailey 1934; Gonda 1949); it may be conveniently translated ‘sacred’. This fact provides two arguments for the identity of harmel with sauma.

§60 First, at the time when Avestan was a commonly understood (if not commonly spoken) language, spanta- and its cognates already named Peganum harmala. This is shown by the fact that the precise forms of the name in
modern Iranian languages\(^1\) could not phonologically have resulted from borrowing from one modern language into another.

§61 Second, \textit{spanta}- occurs in the Avesta (\textit{Visperad} 9.3) as an epithet of \textit{haoma} in the phrase \textit{haoma sūra spanta} ‘the \textit{haomas}, powerful, sacred’, and is the only adjective associating sauma with the name of any Iranian plant.\(^2\) Moreover, the apposition of \textit{spanta} to \textit{haoma} in this phrase could have been understood in Old Iranian as an allusion to \textit{Peganum harmala}.

§62 The connection of \textit{Peganum harmala} with sauma through the name *\textit{svanta}-, \textit{spanta}- and the like, to which Paul Lagarde (1866:173; see §55 n.10 above) pointed over a century ago, is unassailable. The only objections to a simple and straightforward conclusion from the name arise from W. B. Henning’s (1965: 39) remarks:

The proper place of wild rue \textit{Peganum harmala} is in witchcraft, which the Zoroastrian church ever combated; its seeds are thrown into the fire to excite fat black smoke—a truly Ahrimanian practice. That a seal of approval was set on this sorcerer’s favorite in the Avesta itself by the attribution of semi-divine origin, should not be assumed so readily.

That is not to say that we need reject the common derivation of \textit{sipand} “wild rue” from \textit{spanta}-, for which “sacred” is a broad equivalent; for to a \textit{daēvayasnā} or devil-worshipper the plant was indeed “sacred”.

§63 It is impossible to accept the implication that throughout the various Iranian languages so common a plant as \textit{Peganum harmala} could owe its name, ‘sacred’, to a predominant influence of the jargon of devil-worshippers. Henning implicitly affirms by his argument that the use of \textit{spanta}- as a name for \textit{Peganum harmala} existed while the word still meant ‘sacred’. Moreover, the plant most \textit{daēvayasnās} considered sacred was surely sauma. Even if Henning’s effort to relegate the use of harmel exclusively to devil-worshippers were supported by the evidence, the connection of its Iranian names with \textit{spanta}- would still be best explained by identifying harmel with sauma.

§64 It is less likely that in nonritual contexts sauma would be usually known by a term such as \textit{haoma} referring to \textit{how} the plant was prepared for a ceremony than by a name reflecting some inherent property related to \textit{why} the plant was significant in ceremonies and elsewhere. The use of the term \textit{haoma} in the Avesta is explicable because of the relevance of the preparation of the plant to that textual tradition, but “(plant) pressed out with mortar” seems to be a means of referring to a plant without naming it rather than to be itself a phytonym. Nothing is more certain about sauma than that it had the property

---

1. For the independent derivation of the modern forms, as well as for other aspects of the history of the term, see below, §§259-264.

2. By contrast, the possibility of deriving a name for rhubarb in Khowar, Kati and Prasun from an unimportant Vedic epithet of \textit{soma}, \textit{svātra}- ‘strengthening, invigoration’, is the only objective argument adduced by G. Morgenstierne (1954) for his proposed identification of rhubarb as sauma. The situation of \textit{haoma} as a name for \textit{Ephedra} is discussed below, §106.
of possessing numinous supernatural power, that is, what in Old Iranian was *spanta*. More relevant, unambiguous, and conclusive linguistic evidence than the fact that the Old Iranian name of haramel, *spanta* etc., is the single most descriptive Old Iranian word for what distinguished sauma from other plants in ancient Iran, can scarcely be imagined.  

**CORRESPONDENCE OF HARMEL TO SAUMA IN APOTROPAIC FUNCTION**

§65 Throughout the history of Islamic Iran to the present day, *isfand*, that is, *Peganum harmala*, has been esteemed chiefly for its apotropaic power and has been the chief plant regarded as having such power. Allusions to it in the very earliest New Persian literature show this is a continuation of pre-Islamic belief.

§66 In particular, the burning of the seeds of *Peganum harmala* is mentioned frequently in Classical Persian poetry and is found in the works of Nāṣir-i Khusraw, Ḍāṭār, Khāqānī, Sa'dī, Jāmī, and many less famous writers. In modern ethnographic and geographical literature it is regularly recorded as a practice still encountered throughout the Iranian area. The purpose of burning these seeds is not witchcraft, as Henning thought: the seeds are thrown onto braziers not primarily to elicit smoke, fat, black, or otherwise (a purpose for which other oil-rich seeds will do at least as well), but for the snapping sound and the pungent fumes released, results intended not to invoke demons but, on the contrary, to be rid of them. The seeds are burned apotropaically on all occasions where there are special dangers of malign influences: at marriages, births, sicknesses, and circumcisions, as well as when one feels vigorous and joyful, and whenever there is suspicion of the evil eye. Haramel seeds figure also as the critical elements in numerous amulets and the capsules containing the seeds are strung together to make the *panja* (see Figure 3) frequently displayed in conservative Iranian households (cf. Watson 1979: 248).

---

3. Another epithet of *haoma* may be reflected by the Persian term *naivand/nivand*, etc., 'swift', used only of horses and (in Fars) of *Peganum harmala*, and thus parallel to Avestan *aurvan/-aurvant-*, also meaning 'swift' and used in the Avesta precisely of horses and of *haoma* (Yasna 10.10; 11.2). The Iranian association of *Peganum harmala* with swiftness is also indicated by the Persian expression *sipand-âsâ* 'like haramel, quick'. *Naivand/nivand* is given as a name for *Peganum harmala* in lexicons (where a verse of Sanā'ī is usually cited [but the attribution of this verse is questioned by R. Āfīt 1972, s.v.]) and is actually attested as *nivand* *Peganum harmala* in the Fars dialect of Jahrom (Parsa 1960: 68).


5. Cf. hatred ironically expressed as "the love of the jinn for haramel" in the North African Arabic data of Vonderheyden (1937: 360). The latter also reports (without citing his apparent source: Legey 1926:14, 93) that women of Tlemcen throw haramel on their doorsteps and over their shoulders saying: "The haramel is sacred, O Prophet of God, protect (us) from male jinn and female jinn" ("L'haramel harma, la rasoul Allah, Tahdina men djenn ou djenia"). This assertion that *Peganum harmala* is sacred expresses the same notion as the Old Iranian name *svanta* (which indeed underlies the Arabic name *harmal*, as Schwartz shows below, §265) and suggests that the importance of the plant in Islamic North African folk-religion (for which see, e.g. Westermarck [1926]; Vries [1985]) may ultimately be of Iranian origin.
Figure 3. Panja, consisting of harmel capsules strung from a cloth square.
§67 Since the apotropaic use of *Peganum harmala* in Iran antedates Islam, we may ask what the earlier significance of the practice of burning the seeds may have been. From the usual Islamic viewpoint, as a consequence of the strict monotheism which was absent from earlier Iranian culture, the capacity to ward off demons, customarily imputed to *Peganum harmala* in Iran, would lack any inherent relevance to religious concerns. In the dualistic conceptual world of Islamic Iran as expressed in Zoroastrianism, the power to repel evil appears to be the very essence of religion. It is difficult to believe that any long-standing practice credited with accomplishing this end would not have been made use of within Zoroastrianism. As the purpose of the customary use of harmel is identical with the apotropaic aim of the Zoroastrian religion itself, the burning of the seeds of harmel would have been regarded as a religious activity in pre-Islamic Iran.

§68 The present-day apotropaic burning of harmel is accompanied by the recitation of formulaic verses, whose content reveals the essentially religious attitude shown toward the plant. These verses assert that the use of harmel is sanctioned by the most revered sources of religious authority in Islamic Iran.

*Esfand* and *sopand*:
Our Prophet selected it,
'Ali planted it, Fāṭima collected it
For Ḥusayn and Ḥasan.
All who are born on Saturday,
On Sunday, or on Monday,
On Tuesday, or on Wednesday,
On Thursday, or on Friday;
Underground, on the ground;
Black-eyed, blue-eyed, crow-eyed, ewe-eyed;
All who have looked, all who have not;
Neighbor on left, neighbor on right;
Before the face, behind the back;
—May the eye of the envious and of envy crack.6

*Esfand* and *esfand* seed, *esfand* of thirty-three seeds,
For relatives and friends and strangers,
All who go out by the door, all who come in by the door,
May the eye of the envious and of envy be blind!
Saturday-born, Sunday-born, Monday-born, Tuesday-born,
Wednesday-born, Thursday-born, Friday-born.
For whom do they make it smoke? For the Imam Ḥasan and the Imam Ḥusayn.
By the grace of the King of Men, turn away misfortune and pain.7

---

6. Alluding to the bursting of the seeds as they are thrown onto the fire of a brazier. The rendering into English rhyme of the translation of this first text is by M. Schwartz.

§69 Similar verses are addressed to the harmel plant itself. An apt example of these are the following Azari Turkish verses addressed to Üzerlik (the chief Turkish name for the plant):

Thou art Üzerlik, thou art the air [scented with üzerlik].
Thou art the remedy for a thousand diseases.
Wherever thou art found the evil eye and illness will disappear.
Üzerlik, seed by seed, may it be poured to save the body,
Whether a relative or a stranger, may his eye be burnt in the fire.
Golden-colored Üzerlik, thy clothing is white, Üzerlik.

§70 How is the unique importance of Peganum harmala in Iranian folk religion to be explained? On the basis of the argument that Peganum harmala was sauma, its folk uses may be seen as the direct and unbroken continuation of ancient sauma practices. The place of sauma in popular beliefs and customs in pre-Islamic Iran, as against its role in the established religion, has hitherto been little investigated. To show the parallelism with the present-day role of

(1) From Lenjân-e Tāt, 300 km. southeast of Isfahan: esmand-o seband si o se düne esmand / peyambar-i mā ferestāde bar sahr-i yaman / hamsaye-ye das-i rās, hamsaye-ye das-i čap / hamsaye-ye rūberū, hamsaye-ye pošt-i sar / betereked čašm-i hasūd o hasad. "Esmand and seband, three and thirty seeds of esmand, / Our Prophet sent (you) for the sake of the land of Yemen. / Neighbor to the right, neighbor to the left, / Neighbor in front, neighbor behind. / [At this point seeds are put in the fire.] May the eye of the envious and of envy burst." [The burned seeds and ashes are then moistened with spit and rubbed on the palm of the right hand of the child for whom the verses have been recited. Additional ashes are rubbed on the sole of his left foot and from the eyebrows down to the point of his nose.]

(2) From Fīrūz, near Abāde: esland-e düne düne / ye düne sad düne / čašm-e hasud betareke. "Esfand, seed by seed, / One seed, a hundred seeds, / May the eye of envy be burst."

(3) From Najafābād-e Tāt: expand o expand-duñe / expand si o se düne / be haqq-i xodā-i yeğūne / Mohammad kāstes, All ċides / Fāteme barā Hasan o Hoseyn-eş dūd kardes / nām-i xodā, nām-i rasīl / betereked čašm-i hasūd o hasad. "Expand and expand seed, / Thirty and three expand seeds, / By the grace of the One God, / Muhammad planted it, / 'Ali collected it. / Fāṭima made it smoke for the sake of Hasan and Ḥusayn. / In the name of God, in the name of the Prophet / May the eye of the envious and of envy burst!"

(4) From the area of Bushehr: esband o esband düne / esband si o se düne / čašme xiş o bigûne / harke esmet bedûne / harke esmet nāde / betareke čašme hasud o hasad. "Esband and esband seed, / Thirty and three seeds, / The eye of a relative or of a stranger. Whoever knows your name, / Whoever doesn't know your name. / May the eye of the envious and of envy burst!"

(5) From the area of Isfahan: esband o namak / şas o şiş düneye band / Mostafer şuxe kard bahr-i Yaman / betereked čašm-i hasud o hasad. "Esband and salt / Sixty and six seeds bound [together on a string] / Muhammad burned (them) for the sake of Yemen. / May the eye of the envious and of envy burst." [With the recital of the last verse, one seed, together with salt, is put in the fire for each person suspected of casting the evil eye.] (M. Schwartz reconstructs the beginning of this verse to have originally been esband o namak / namak o esband, / with rhyme / şas o şiş düneye band.)

8. Huseyin Katmir Kadri 1927: 383-384, where it is stated that the verses first appeared in the journal Mullā Nasrūddin (published in Baku from 1906 to 1911). Professor Hasan Javadi has kindly provided the translation.
Peganum harmala we must briefly consider the place of sauma in ancient Iranian society as evidenced by Zoroastrian literature.

§71 In Zoroastrian literature sauma is presented as if it existed in Iranian culture only as an adjunct to Zoroastrianism, but such a view is actually contradicted by the texts themselves. The very presence of haoma in these texts testifies to the enduring importance of sauma in Iranian beliefs since long before the time of Zarathushtra. The purpose of including these texts in the Zoroastrian canon has not been to promote haoma, which is irrelevant to any essential Zoroastrian doctrine, but to promote these doctrines—or rather the authority of the Zoroastrian institutions to decide them—by invoking already recognized sources of legitimacy. The traditional reverence for sauma was appropriated by Zoroastrianism, for example, in the connection with haoma of Zarathushtra’s birth (see §93). Since this reverence for haoma was prevalent in Iran earlier and the hegemony of Zoroastrianism would not have diminished it, it may be expected to have continued independently during and after the ascendance of that religion.9

§72 It is an accepted fact that popular beliefs and attitudes towards sauma were a strong and persistent element in the Iranian tradition, strong enough, indeed, for some scholars to suppose that haoma achieved its important place in Zoroastrian ritual despite the Prophet Zarathushtra himself having condemned and prohibited the use of sauma, as these scholars believe he did (against this view, see below, §§158-160).

§73 The Avesta itself indicates in one place that sauma had folk uses which differed markedly from the ritual drinking of its extract with which the scriptures are chiefly concerned. This is Yasht 14.57, a verse apparently referring to its protective value as an amulet:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{vəraṭrayəm ahurəšätem} & \quad \text{We worship the Ahura-created Vṛthraghna} \\
\text{yəzamaide} & \quad \text{(Victory).} \\
\text{haoməm baire} & \quad \text{I carry on me haoma.} \\
*\text{sairi.baoṣəm haoməm} & \quad \text{I carry on me the head-saving,} \\
\text{vəraṭrəjəm baire} & \quad \text{victorious haoma.} \\
\text{nipətəm vohu baire} & \quad \text{I carry on me the protector (as) the good thing.} \\
\text{pətərəm tanuyə baire} & \quad \text{I carry on me the protector for the body.} \\
\text{haoməm yim nivizaxt}^{10} & \quad \text{When one attaches haoma,} \\
\text{nivandət apayēt} & \quad \text{he escapes from the grasp} \\
\text{dušmainyaət pəšana hačə} & \quad \text{of the enemy in battle.}
\end{align*}
\]

§74 Such a use of sauma would not have required the approbation of priests and would have persisted whether or not sauma was recognized in the

9. An analogous situation exists regarding the Iranian celebration of the New Year, which one might conclude from Zoroastrian texts alone to have been a purely Zoroastrian observance but which in reality both preceded Zoroastrianism and has continued in Islamic Iran, albeit redefined as a secular event (see Moghadam 1938).

10. For nivizaxt see below, §250 n.8.
prevailing religion. Although nonritual uses of sauma itself, unextracted and not drunk as an intoxicant, were presumably widespread, we can hardly expect the ceremonially oriented Zoroastrian literature to give extensive recognition to such practices.

§75 Just as sauma was important before and during the establishment of Zoroastrianism, the harmel plant continued to be important in Iranian folk religion during and after the Islamization of Iran in the seventh century. It may therefore be of interest to consider what parallels may exist between the relationship of *Peganum harmala* to Islam and that of sauma in the pre-Islamic period to Zoroastrianism.

§76 In the folk verses quoted above, the apotropaic use of *Peganum harmala* is said to have originated with the primary figures of Shi'a Islam, namely, with the Prophet, 'Ali, Fāṭima, Ḥusayn, and Ḥasan. The association of the plant with these personages appears to represent an accommodation of ancient folk beliefs to the official religion, in this case not as a result of concessions by the formulators of Muslim doctrine, but as a spontaneous development within folk religion itself. The ascription of prevailing folk attitudes toward harmel to the founders of Islam is also manifest in more official literature of Shi'a Islam, for example in the following *hadīth* series, which is found in the *Ḥulyat al-muttaqīn* of Muḥammad Bāqir Majlisī (d. 1699),

"probably the most eminent theologian of Iranian Shi'ism. On his authority we must conclude, against Henning, that the place of *island* in the Iranian tradition is not to be assigned to mere witchcraft."

It is related from the Prophet that over each leaf and seed of the *island* plant an angel is appointed so that through its bark and roots and branches grief and sorcery are set aside. In its seeds is the cure of seventy-two diseases. Therefore, make medical treatment with *island* and frankincense [*kundur*].

From the [Shi'a] saint Ja'far al-Ṣādiq it is related that the Devil is made distant seventy houses from a house where there is *island*. It is a remedy for seventy illnesses, of which the easiest is *xūra* [black leprosy?].

And in another account it is related that the Prophet complained to Allah that his people were cowardly. A revelation came down to him to command his people to ingest *island* so that by means of it they might become brave. He ordained that it be the incense [*kundur*] chosen by the Prophet. No smoke rises more quickly to heaven than does its smoke, which expels devils and averts misfortunes.


12. Sunni sources appear also to record this *hadīth*: see L. Leclerc (1874: 137n.), M. Vonderheyden (1937: 460), and L. Trabut (1935: 186).

13. This *hadīth* is transparently Persian rather than Arabic in origin. It seems to be a "Magian" explanation for the success of Arab armies in the seventh century conquest of Sasanian Iran to claim that "Muḥammad's people" were cowards until provided with sauma. A sense of bravery is often associated with harmine intoxication resulting from the consumption of *yage*.
The evidence for *Peganum harmala* in its Islamic contexts, furnished by the three texts we have examined above—the Iranian folk verses, the Azari invocation of *Üzerlik*, and the *ḥadīths* collected by Muḥammad Bāqir Majlisī—may now be compared with *haoma* in the Avesta:

**Peganum Harmala in Texts of Islamic Iran**

1. Use is instituted by four persons of the lineage of the founder of the religion:

   The institution of *island* (including planting, collecting and burning) is attributed to Muḥammad (and/or ʿAlī), and Fāṭima, Muḥammad’s daughter, for the sake of her sons Ḥusayn and Ḥasan.

   Four persons, Yima, Athwya, Thrita and Zarathushtra’s father Pourushāspa, are listed as Zarathushtra’s predecessors in instituting the use of *Haoma* (*Yasna* 9.3-14; see below, §§91-92).

2. Is directly endorsed by God:

   Allah commands Muḥammad to use *island*.

   Ahura Mazda created *Haoma* (*Yasna* 10.17; 11.8).

   Ahura Mazda invested *Haoma* with the Zoroastrian religion (*Yasna* 9.26).

3. Brings apotropaeic benefits to the house where it is kept:

   The Devil is made seventy houses distant from a house where there is *island*.

   *Haoma* should be present in an Ahurian house so that demons flee from it (*Yasna* 10.1).

   “Let contamination, as soon as it is manifested, vanish from that house, as soon as one brings forth . . . *Haoma*” (*Yasna* 10.7).

4. Instills courage:

   Muḥammad’s people are made courageous by *island*.

   “*Haoma* gives courage” (*Yasna* 9.22).

   “(*Haoma*) I invoke thee for courage and for victory for my body and for strength that brings salvation to many” (*Yasna* 9.27).

5. Expels a thousand demons/diseases:

   “Üzerlik, thou art the remedy for a thousand diseases.”

   The least extraction, praise, or ingestion of *Haoma* smites a thousand demons (*Y. 10.6*).

6. Bears the epithet ‘golden/yellow’:

   “Golden-colored [altun] Üzerlik.”

   “Yellowish [zāiri-] Haoma” (*Yasna* 9.16, etc.).

---

14. In order to preserve the textual ambiguity of *haoma* in Avestan texts, the word may be capitalized whether or not it obviously refers to a personification.

15. Golden/yellow is the color of harmel during most of the dry season in the Middle East, as noted by Viktorov (1973): “Growths of *Peganum harmala* L. are especially well marked from the air: dark green in summer, having a characteristically golden orange color in autumn”. For the meaning of Avestan *zāiri*- see §260 below.
CORRESPONDENCE IN ATTRIBUTES AND INVOCATIONS

§78 Haoma is mentioned frequently throughout the Avestan books in connection with the worship of the ancient Iranian deities. Usually this consists of nothing more than naming haoma as something consecrated to the gods. Haoma is also associated with the roles of deities in contexts which do not contribute to our understanding of sauma (see Gray 1929; Boyce 1970), but with few exceptions the only material in the Avesta which refers to haoma as a plant is found in the Hōm Yasht, the part of the Avesta devoted to the worship or invocation of Haoma. This text, consisting of about 1,700 words, is today included in the liturgy of the Yasna ceremony (as chapters 9-11.15) and is recited immediately before and during the consumption of haoma in that ritual.

§79 Perhaps the closest parallel to the Hōm Yasht outside of Zoroastrian literature is a text of the Mandaeans, who dwell in southern Iran and Iraq, and whose ancient gnostic baptist religion was strongly influenced by Iranian ritual and lore. This Mandean text is entitled Šaffa ġ Šamba (“The Scroll of [Wild] Rue”), and was intended for recitation when Peganum harmala (Mandeian šamba), pounded in a mortar and “mixed with water, wine, šakir,” or the urine of a red bull” was administered as a drug. A noteworthy difference

16. škr was translated 'syrup' by E. S. Drower (1934), but later as 'liqour (or syrup)' in the Dictionary of E. S. Drower and R. Macuch (1963: 441). Aramaic škr, indicating an indeterminate alcoholic drink other than wine, may correspond to Avestan hurā, Middle Persian hur, for which ŠKL (i.e.*,škr) is the Pahlavi logogram. Because hurā- and wine were drunk at the recital of the Gathas (according to Nērangistān 29-30), which presumably means in the Yasna ceremony, it may be inferred that both of these alcoholic drinks sometimes accompanied the taking of sauma. The drinking of alcohol together with harmala alkaloids is frequently reported for yagē ceremonies.

17. These ingredients recall more the Zoroastrian preparation called nērang, than the haoma of the Yasna. It is indeed possible that the Mandaeans would have been most familiar with sauma as an ingredient of nērang, since the Yasna could not be witnessed by non-Zoroastrians and the drinking of haoma is one of the less conspicuous Zoroastrian practices (e.g. it seems never to have been recorded in any Islamic source on the “Magian religion”; the hawm al-majūs known to Muslims was not a plant consumed but only held by Zoroastrian priests). Nērang is not only drunk in the initiation rites of nō-šwā and nōzādi (formerly undergone by all Zoroastrians in Iran) but is also consumed in the daily ritual of kusti bastan ‘tying the sacred cord’ (Soroushian 1956: 166), which must have been often witnessed by the Mandaeans during the centuries when they were under Persian administration. One form of nērang is prepared from hōm, bovine urine, fruit juice, and wine (ibid. 166). A. Houtum-Schindler (1885: 83) describes nērang as made from “hōm” mixed with cow urine. He claims the mixture was given to the new-born and the dead, taken daily during [the nine days of] barešnum, and was also used as a remedy against sickness. I am informed by Mary Boyce (letter of October 7, 1978), however, that hōm is not an ingredient of nērang in any orthodox usage.

The drinking of bull urine is not originally a Mandaean but an ancient Iranian practice. The Iranian inspiration for the Mandaeen text and associated harmel practices is especially marked by the mention of bull urine as an additive to the extract of the plant, for the Mandaeen term used for bull urine, gumiza, is clearly borrowed from Iranian ritual (cf. Middle Persian gōmēz).
between the two texts is the insertion of the name of the person for whom the invocation is recited at various points in the Mandeane text; this practice is alien to the recitation of the Hôm Yasht. Furthermore, while the Hôm Yasht is recited by the priest who is about to drink haoma, the Šafta d Šambra is recited by the person who administers the extract (who, however, must often have been a Mandeane priest).

§80 Although Mandeac is a language used only by those adhering to the Mandeane religion, and almost all literature written in it consists of religious works, the Šafta d Šambra is not a part of Mandeane canonical literature. The text is of a decidedly magical character, and the gods are called forth wholly for the purpose of furthering the effectiveness of the spirit of harmel in a specific situation, that of purging someone of sickness, that is to say, of demons. Wisdom or knowledge is not among the benefits sought, nor is intoxication mentioned in the Mandeane text, even though this effect may well have been experienced as an outcome of drinking preparations of that plant.

§81 An unusual feature shared by both texts is the use of the names haoma and Šambra respectively, at once for the plant, the drink prepared from it, and the personification of the plant. The association of the plant with other divine and semi-divine beings is parallel in both texts and, since the personification of Šambra as a deity is unknown elsewhere in Mandeane writings, its appearance in the Šafta d Šambra may represent a borrowing from a non-Mandeane source and possibly the influence, if not directly of the Avestan Hôm Yasht, then of a similar early Iranian invocation of sauma. The highly formulaic character of the Šafta d Šambra indicates that it was composed orally and transmitted perhaps for many centuries before it was written down, although existing manuscripts are no older than the early nineteenth century (Drower 1934). Considering the antiquity of most Mandeane texts, the work could easily date from before the Islamic period; that is, from the millennium when the areas inhabited by the Mandeaneans were under Iranian political domination. The Mandeaneans during that time adopted many religious and magical practices from their Iranian neighbors, and it would seem natural for them then to have given attention also to the most important single element in Iranian ritual, haoma, and therefore to the traditional Iranian attribution of supernatural power to sauma. There may be a reflection of the Iranian haoma in Mandeane ritual practice, but reference to haoma by name is absent from Mandeane literature. The textual correspondences we shall now examine suggest that the Šambra in the Šafta d Šambra may be a Mandeane adaptation of the sauma of Iranian tradition.

18. According to E. S. Drower (1956:210 n.1), the preparation of the Mandeane miša ("oil of unction"), consisting of date-pulp pounded in a mortar with sesame oil and strained through a white cloth, possibly reflects the preparation of Iranian haoma. For the use of sesame oil in preparing Peganum harmala as a drug see §44C and cf. also §137.
§82 Comparison of habitats of Mandaean Šafta d Šamba and Avestan Haoma

Mandaean Šafta d Šamba
(Translated by E.S. Drower, 1934)¹⁹

(O) good plant (son of) the god of the mountains, son of the lord of mountains, son of the lord of the high mountains, son of deep ravines and son of peaceful valleys (337.1).

Further I abjure thee, glorious medicine, by the male gods and female astartes by Shamish (the sun) that shineth on thee: by Sin (the moon) that traveleth over thee; by wind, fire and water: by the mountains which bore thee: by the gorges and craggy heights that reared thee: and by the waterways in them (343.6).

I abjure thee by the mountains that bore thee, by the uplands that reared thee, by the north wind that breathed over thee (344.16).

[O] Šamba, go below like water

Avestan Hōm Yasht
(Translated by M. Schwartz)

Good is Haoma, created by Mazdah.
I praise all the Haomas,²⁰ be they those on the heights of the mountains, be they those in the depths of the valleys, cut for the bundles bound by women²¹ (Yasna 10.17).

Thou (Haoma) hast been upon the mountain heights throughout all ages (Yasna 9.26).

I praise the cloud and the rain which make thy body grow on the heights of the mountains. I praise the high mountains where, Haoma, thou growest. I praise the wide, broad, energetic, blessed earth, thy bearer. I praise the field of thine earth by which thou growest fragrant and swift, and the good growth of Mazdah. Haoma, mayst thou grow on the mountains and mayst thou prosper;

¹⁹. Occasional words in Drower’s translation have been replaced by the original Mandaean, e.g. ‘rue’ by Šamba, etc.

²⁰. This plurality of haomas may be compared with Reichel-Dolmatoff’s (1972:97-98) account of the various yagēs distinguished by Tukano shamans in Colombia:

“From each yagé plant the Indians choose branches or pieces of different colors . . . . These colors do not refer solely to the external appearance of the vine but above all to the predominant color of the hallucinations experienced throughout its use. A yagé taken by the Desana produces visions of ‘jumping feather crowns’, or snakes shaped like necklaces that coil themselves around the houseposts. Another kind of yagé is said to produce hallucinations of ‘snakes that jump’ . . . . it is possible that at the base of this classificatory system there lies traditional knowledge that certain parts of the vine . . . . contain different concentrations of the hallucinogenic component and therefore cause different visions. As a matter of fact, one of the chief concerns in the preparation of the drink is precisely the knowledge of how to combine portions of different vines.

“The effect is therefore highly unpredictable, and the consumer of yagé runs the risk of having some extremely unsettling experiences. This fact worries the Indians, who, apart from the combination of components used, attempt to influence the effects magically to eliminate the more unpleasant aspects. To this end there is a long series of spells and songs to be recited while the drink is being prepared”.

The problem of determining the exact strength and constitution of sauma extracts may have similarly influenced the development of Indo-Iranian rituals.

²¹. Peganum harmala is frequently collected in bundles by women. A. Gabriel (1970: 141) compares the bundles of Zoroastrian barsom with bundles of harmel: “Das Bündel geweihter Zweige erinnert an die noch jetzt bisweilen auch bei Muslimen übliche Verwendung der syrischen Raute (Peganum harmala) zur Segnung von Gästen” (see below, §124 n.10).
which gusheth from the peak of a high mountain (344.15).

The Lady of Gods and Men took thee and carried thee off to the male gods and the female astarites and she gave favorable testimony concerning thee. And they sent (it) to everyone that was ill, working a cure, and healing was found in it (344.30).

Thou didst spring forth of thine own strength, and didst come forth and camest into being (342.8).

truly thou art the Fountain of Righteousness (Yasna 10.3-5).

The beneficent god has placed thee upon High Haraiti. From there the learned spanta-[] birds carried thee in all directions, to the peak above the eagles, to the Hindu Kush, to the star-topped peaks ... to the white-colored mountains. There on those mountains thou growest, Haoma, who art of many sorts, rich in sap, verdant. Thy healings are connected with the joys of Good Thinking (Yasna 10.10-12).

Haoma, who through thine own power art thine own master (Yasna 9.25).

§83 Much mention is made in the Mandaean text of the mountains as the home of Peganum harmala. Throughout the Middle East, harmel is generally regarded as a mountain plant; this is seen not only from names identifying harmel as “mountain rue” (e.g. Arabic sahab al-jabal; Persian sudab-i kuh), but from Persian folk verses, for example, the following from Lorimer (1977: 65; pointed out to me by Dr. Mahmoud Omidsalar):

\begin{align*}
esfand-i\; sar-i-kuh & \quad \text{O Esfand of the mountain top.} \\
esfand-i\; kamar-i-kuh & \quad \text{O Esfand of the mountain waist.} \\
esfand-i\; bun-i-kuh & \quad \text{O Esfand of the mountain base.} \\
esfand\; tu\; ke\; midini & \quad \text{O Esfand, you who know,} \\
behaq-q\; suleymun-i\; peyyambar & \quad \text{By the grace of Solomon the Prophet} \\
tishzaxm-ra\; bigardini & \quad \text{Turn away the evil eye.} \\
\end{align*}

Although harmel is abundant in the mountains of Iran, it is hardly less so in the lowlands north of the Persian Gulf where the Mandaeans live (see A. Patzak 1964: 401). The emphasis given in the text to the lofty and remote origins of a plant that is in fact a common weed available from the nearest rubbish heap would seem then to have been intended not to describe its habitat, but, rather, to counter its banal provenance. This same consideration may be applied to the Avestan descriptions of haoma as growing in the mountains. There are thus no grounds for concluding from the Avesta that sauma grew exclusively on mountains.\footnote{22}

22. On the other hand, if the Mandaean text is modeled on an Iranian original, the mountainous provenance ascribed to the plant may simply repeat the Indo-Iranian conception of sauma as originating in mountains. In Anatolia, it should be noted, harmel seems to be exclusively confined to the interior highlands (K. O. Müller 1932).
§84 Comparison of gracious attributes of Šamburg and Haoma.

Mandaean Ṣalta ǧ Šamburg

And there will be healing, victory, sealing, armed-readiness, gladness, and medicine, and joy to him that drinketh it (335.8).

... that drinketh thee, either in wine, or in ʃakir, or in water, or in the urine of a red bull (337.17).

And the medicine (bringeth?) joy and healing to the drinker and riches to him who administereth it. Thou (O) sprig, givest salvation and not perdition, for thou make them strong (and art) a healer, thou workest healing and yieldest not (344.1).

Cure, my cure! Victorious Medicine, my victorious healer! (344.8).

Protection, son of Protection art thou, lofty is thy throne. “Protection son of Protection” they call me (335.15).

I am Šamburg, the good neighbour, king of all drugs (335.17).

Avestan Hōm Yasht

I ask of thee, O golden (one), intoxication, power, victory, health, healing, success, increase, strength of the whole body (Yasna 9.17).

Thou (Haoma) maketh rich in men, more ʃpanita-, and more insightful whomever apportions thee combined with ʃav- ['flesh/cattle-product'] (Yasna 10.13).

Thee I invoke for courage and for victory for my body and for strength that brings salvation to many (Yasna 9.27).

(O) Haoma, give me of thy healing by which thou art a healer, (O) Haoma, give me of thy victoriousness, by which thou art a victor (Yasna 10.9).

From other Zoroastrian texts

I carry on me the ... victorious Haoma. I carry on me the Protector (as) the good thing, I carry on me the Protector of the body (Yash 14.57).

(Haoma) is the chief of medicinal herbs (Bundahišn 17.20).

§85 Comparison of punitive attributes of Šamburg and Haoma.

Mandaean Ṣalta ǧ Šamburg

Thou hold back ... those evil spirits ... like lightning that is sent and loosed against that evil serpent, driving it out and turning it aside by its force from that house (334.22).

Turn away that evil serpent that makes for him: scare it off, thou Medicine, frighten it away by thy potency. And receive from me these spells and conjurations ... harass, drive away and make impotent those who hate him and all his enemies, and šids, demons (daiwia), incubi, hobgoblins, malign spirits,

Avestan Hōm Yasht

O golden Haoma, loose thy weapon for protecting the body of the righteous against the yellow loathsome poison-emitting serpent, against the evil-doing, bloody, injurious murderous one, against the lying mortal šasts ... against the Truth-mocker ... against the sorcerer's witch (Yasna 9.30-33).

I ask this, that I may overcome all the enmity of the enemies, demons (daeva-) and men, of yātu spirits, of pairika spirits, of sāthras, of kavis and karapans, of two-legged scoundrels, of
amulet spirits, evil apparations, spectres and fearsome shades of darkness, evil enchantments, wicked machinations (343.15).

Healing Medicine that cureth spirits and souls, before whom šids tremble and evil spirits quaking are driven (337.5).

In the name of him who is a Healer that healeth ... thou shatterest, drivest away and renderest impotent ... gods and male idols and all evil beings male and female that slay embryos in the womb of their mothers and ... vows, curses and provocations (imprecations?) of gods and men (324.9).

two legged Truth-mockers, of four-legged wolves, and of hosts having a broad front, roaring, scampering (Yasna 9.18).

(O Haoma) throw aside the plot of that one who curses me, throw aside the various plots of him who stands as my curser (Yasna 10.12).

Even the smallest Haoma-preparation, the smallest Haoma-laudation, the smallest Haoma-potion, serves to smite a thousand demons. Let the contamination vanish from that house as soon as it is created, as soon as, indeed, one brings it forth ... and praises the excellent healing of him who confers healing, Haoma (Yasna 10.6-7).

§86 The effects actually experienced from a preparation of harmel were well known in Middle Eastern lore: as reported in early Islamic materia medica, they are chiefly vomiting, sleep, intoxication, and an inclination toward coitus (see §44). There is no reason to think the Mandaeans were unfamiliar with these characteristics of the drug, or that they would not have been anticipated by those for whom this invocation was recited. It is doubtless the very predictability of these effects that made useful the invocation of the plant in the hope of ameliorating them. If this were not the situation, it is hardly likely that persons suffering illness would have been subjected to a 2,500-word conjuration of the medicine before consuming it, nor is it probable that the Šafta d Šambra, which is not a text of religious value to the Mandaeans, would have been preserved at all.

§87 The Mandaean Šafta d Šambra has implications not only for determining the plant referred to in the Avestan Hōm Yasht but also for understanding the content of that text and the purposes underlying its recital in sauma rites. The very recitation of the šambra invocation appears to be intended to compel a preparation of Peganum harmala to yield certain results. The Šafta d Šambra explicitly declares that the text itself contains spells and conjurations and that the recited words “will be a cure that will free” the subject (336.9). Similar statements appear in the Hōm Yasht, the words of which “bring health and victory against enemies” (Yasna 10.18). Whether or not the words were believed to compel haoma after the manner of magical conjurations or to exert more gentle influence upon haoma to do what was asked, the motivation for reciting the Hōm Yasht should not be overlooked: “(Haoma) understands the many truly spoken sayings. ... Haoma ... does not question ... the truly spoken word” (Yasna 9.25). The practical purpose of the Hōm Yasht does not
seem to be to communicate observations about the properties of sauma, but to
influence the outcome of drinking it. In general, it may be assumed that the
effects attributed to sauma in the Hōm Yasht are only the desirable ones the
recital of the text was believed to further.
§88  The aspect of sauma most extolled in the Hōm Yasht is the quality of its
intoxication, but one cannot assume that the characteristics sought were those
actually expected. The focus upon the benign effects may be taken as reflecting
an actual concern that the effects may be unpleasant.

**Attribution of generative powers**

§89  We may next turn to another property shared by harmel and sauma. The
very end of the Šafta d Šambra recommends the preparation of *Peganum harmala* for a purpose quite different from the apotropaic healing with which
the invocation is otherwise concerned:

Read it over them and administer the potion to a woman that desires to bring forth (a
child) and for one that desires to have children (346.20).

The same virtue is claimed in the Hōm Yasht:

*Haoma* gives pregnant women the birth of an excellent son and righteous progeny
(Yasna 9.22).

§90  The Hōm Yasht also alludes to the power of *Haoma* punitively not to
assist certain women to have desirable offspring.

\begin{verbatim}
avanharazāmi janyaoš ūnam
mairoyād švitō xarašayā
yā mainyeinti davayeinti
ādravānamča haomamča
hā yā dapta apansyeinti
yā taṭ yat haomae draonō
nīgāṇhanti nīshādaiti
\end{verbatim}

I renounce the vulva/burrow
of the filthy roguish wench\(^{23}\)
who plots to deceive
the priest and *Haoma*.
She herself, deceived, fails,
sitting down to consume
the *draonah*\(^{24}\) of *Haoma*:

---

23. For this reading see below, §180.

24. Where the *draonah* ('portion', especially 'portion allotted as payment to a priest') of
*haoma* is mentioned again in the Hōm Yasht (Yasna 11. 4-7), it refers to the organs of sight and
of speech of the *haoma*-drinking priest (who surrenders his body [=gāuš of Yasna 11.7] to
*haoma*; see below §150 n.3). *Haoma*, being a drug, would most likely work its effects on
someone who drinks *haoma*, i.e. in the context of the Hōm Yasht, on the Yasna priest; yet
here the "he" who could make a "filthy roguish wench" the mother of priests must be the
priest and not *haoma* directly. The verse apparently alludes to sexual/reproductive aspects of
the drug, although to whom or what the wench or her empty place may refer is completely
obscure.
§91 **By contrast, the birth of illustrious sons is the only benefit which the beginning of the Hōm Yasht claims to have been realized by the first four mortals who extracted haoma.**

(Yasna 9.1) At the mortar time [the first period of the day], Haoma came upon Zarathushtra, purifying the fire and intoning the Gathas. Zarathushtra asked him: (2) "Who, man, art thou, whom I see as the most beautiful in all the material world, luminous with thine own life?" Then the righteous dūraoša Haoma answered: "I am, O Zarathushtra, the righteous dūraoša Haoma. Take me, Spitāma, extract me that I may be drunk, praise me with might, as the other saošyants [saviors] have praised me." (3) Thus spake Zarathushtra: "Praise be to Haoma! Which mortal in the material world first extracted thee? What reward was granted him? What benefit came to him?"

§92 **Haoma responds to Zarathushtra’s questions about the first four mortals who extracted him, saying that the benefit they received was the birth of sons,**

25. A preparation which probably contained sauma is described by Pliny from the Chirocerma (Naturalis historia XXIV:166; see below, §151): "Democritus [Bulus of Mendes] gives the name hermesias to a means of procreating children who shall be handsome and good. It is not a plant, but a compound of ground kernels of pine nuts with honey, myrrh, saffron, and palm wine, with the later addition of theombrotion and milk. He prescribes a draught of it to those who are about to become parents, after conception, and to nursing mothers. This, he says, results in children exceeding fair in mind and body, as well as good. Of all these plants he adds also the magical [or Magian?] names". Theombrotion (‘food for the gods, divine food’) which the Chirocerma describes as a finely scented plant growing thirty schoeni (i.e. about 200 km.) from the Choaspes (Karkha) River and like a peacock in its colorings, may be identified with sauma. For "peacock" see below, §§172-177. Pseudo-Democritus also says of theombrotion: "The kings of Persia take it in drink for all bodily disorders and for instability of intellect and of the sense of justice [meaning perhaps as a test for these instabilities, since a king would hardly have confessed himself to be in need of treatment for them] and that it is also called semnion from the majesty of its power". Greek-Latin semnion is from Greek σεμνός ‘awesome, sacred’, and may be a translation of Avestan spanta- as the name of the plant.

26. Because plants do not speak, the human appearance of Haoma more probably reflects a characteristic of the subjective experience of the drug than the morphology of a plant species. Hence we cannot conclude from these words of Zarathushtra that a given specimen of the haoma plant, or of the roots of the plant, actually had the appearance of a luminous and beautiful man. Gernot Windfuhr (1986), however, makes this passage the basis for arguing that haoma was the (geographically remote and psychopharmacologically irrelevant) ginseng plant because (the most highly valued) ginseng roots have a homunculus shape (with one eye). To Windfuhr’s discussion may suitably be added reference to the identical ideas for identifying ginseng with soma of P. Andreas Eckard (1928: 226-230).

Kloppin’s (1980) proposal that haoma was Mandragora turkomania seems inspired by associating with the reputed man-like shape of mandrake roots a similarly concrete interpretation of Zarathushtra’s salutation of Haoma. Encounters with human incarnations of plants are often reported by yagé users; indeed, the skills of the yagé healers studied by Luna (1986 and 1987) are only learned by means of encounters after drinking yagé with a human incarnation of the Banisteriopsis plant.
whose merits he then briefly describes. For example, Haoma says (Yasna 9. 13-15) the fourth to have extracted him was Pourushāpa, with this result:

To him were you born, you, righteous Zarathushtra, in the house of Pourushāpa, opposed to the daēvas, following the law of the ahuras. (14) Famed in Aryana Vaējah, you were the first to sing out the Ahuna Vairya prayer; four times, each (time) sung out louder. (15) You who made all the demons disappear beneath the earth, those who had earlier rushed against this earth in the form of men. You who are the strongest, who are the bravest, who are the most active, who are the swiftest, who are the most victorious of the creatures of the Two Spirits.

§93 How Haoma was able to cause the birth of sons to these men is not stated, but one explanation, perhaps the only one for how a drug could have such results in the material world, is that it was thought to act as a sexual stimulant. This, indeed, is a property clearly indicated for sauma in the account of the birth of Zoroaster, epitomized from lost Avestan texts in Dēnkird VII (2.26-35): Zoroaster’s father, Porushāsp, had his wife prepare a decoction of the hōm plant mixed with milk, which they both then drank (apparently without reciting the Yasna liturgy ordinarily accompanying the drinking of haoma). In consequence they lay together for the first time and, despite repeated interruptions by the demons, in the fourth attempt accomplished the conception of Zoroaster.27 In this account, the only effect of sauma upon Porushāsp or his wife seems to have been sexual stimulation. As has already been noted, this is one of the effects of drinking a preparation of harmel reported in traditional Near Eastern pharmacopoeias.

SIMULTANEOSLY BOTH INCENSE AND INTOXICANT

§94 So far the correspondence of the role of Peganum harmala in Iranian folk religion with that of haoma in the Avesta has been supported by evidence that Peganum harmala is: (1) invoked or described by terms similar to, or identical with, those used of haoma; (2) characterized by the same epithets; (3) assigned

27. According to Abū al-Mutarrif ‘Abd al-Raḥmān ibn Wāfīd (c. 1050) in Ibn Baṭṭār (see above §44C): “By means of causing intoxication and sleep, it is useful to persons given up to passionate love.” An anonymous authority is also quoted by Ibn Baṭṭār as saying: “it clears the complexion and stimulates coition.” For the sexual aspects of harmaline intoxication, see C. Naranjo (1975:140-144). The report of clinical studies by C. Caller Ibérico (1941) in which small doses of harmaline were found to have pronounced effects directly on sexual organs, cited by R. S. De Ropp (1951:267), should be mentioned, though such results are not usual. C. Naranjo recorded an aphrodisiac effect of harmaline upon subjects only at dosages less than those required for hallucinations.

A curious account that the Turkish Sultan Süleyman administered the seeds of Peganum harmala to excite women in his harem is given by O. R. Alander in his dissertation “Inebriantia” (1763: apparently the earliest published attempt to inventory the world’s intoxicating plants); it seems, however, to have had as its basis only Alander’s fantastic misunderstanding of a remark published by Pierre Belon (1555:207) speculating that the notorious drunkard Sultan Selim may have made use of harmel seeds to intoxicate himself! Nevertheless, the reputation of harmel as an aphrodisiac was well known to the Turks and, as Schwartz (§278) suggests, could explain its Turkish name (y)üzerlik.
similar properties; (4) associated in a similar manner with sources of religious authority; and (5) used for apotropaic purposes, for healing, and to promote procreation. However, there remains one important aspect of the use of harmel which does not at first seem to accord with the use of sauma, namely the burning of the seeds of *Peganum harmala* in folk religion, in contrast with the Avestan extraction and drinking of *haoma*. How can this disparity be resolved? §95 While burning is the usual use reported for harmel in modern Iran, there is evidence in folk religion that an extract was also drunk; Mandaean materials recommend the drinking of a preparation of harmel for healing and procreation, as we have seen. However, the Mandaean texts also recommend ingestion of the plant for wholly apotropaic ends, as in the following passage where the plant is called by its Persian name, *isfand/isfand*:

Solomon then asks, "O demon, what is the charm that exorcises thee?" . . . The demon replies giving a recipe and a magical formula, the latter usually being Arabic in Mandaic script. The recipes are various, for instance: "black *isfand* in the milk of a red cow: boil it over the fire and eat it" (Drower 1943: 156).

§96 According to the Shi'a *hadith* quoted earlier (§59), Muḥammad was commanded by God to have his people ingest *isfand* for bravery. This *hadith* is interesting in the present connection because it is followed by the recommendation not that *isfand* be ingested, but that it be burned. The *hadith* concludes: "He ordained that it [*isfand*] be the incense chosen by the Prophet. No smoke rises more quickly to heaven than its smoke, which expels devils and averts misfortunes." Since the *hadith* is prescriptive, the consumption of *isfand* by Muḥammad's followers seems to be mentioned in order to encourage the burning of the plant. Another of the *hadiths* quoted states that "an angel is appointed over every leaf and seed of *isfand*," but in this case also, the moral drawn is that one should burn *isfand*. How the relationship of the simultaneously recommended ingesting and burning *isfand* was meant to be understood by those who heard these *hadiths* is not immediately obvious. What is important for us is that they reflect Iranian traditions in which ingestion and burning were held to have the same effect.

§97 While there is evidence connecting the burning of *Peganum harmala* with its ingestion, it is insufficient to explain the fact that burning has been the chief mode of using *Peganum harmala* throughout the Islamic period in Iran, as presumably it was in Iran earlier. The question which must then be asked is whether sauma was indeed burned in pre-Islamic Iran. Although the fact has gone largely unnoticed, there is evidence for the burning of sauma both in Zoroastrian rituals and in the Avesta, indeed in the very earliest Iranian sources, the Gathas.

§98 In *Yasna* 32.14, Zarathushtra speaks of certain miscreants who "set their thoughts on helping the wicked one, whereby the bovine is ordered to be slain, (the wicked one) who burns the *dūraoša*- for help." Here sauma is referred to as
dūraoša-, which is known in the Avesta only as a fixed epithet of haoma. This passage, which has much importance for the identification of sauma and for its history in Iran, is further discussed below (§§136 and 159-160); here we need 28. For discussion of the meaning of Avestan dūraoša- see §§226-227 below. Bailey has reported (1964) that Khotanese “seems to have preserved the most ancient and famous word for the intoxicant, the dūraoša- of the Avesta.” The passage (in P2925, Bailey 1969: II, 101.34) is translated by Bailey (1979: 161-162): “he here draws to me as one draws an exhilarant draught (durausā’ ttraha).” If Bailey is correct, this would be the only Iranian attestation of the word dūraoša- outside of the Avesta and this passage would be the most explicit reference to sauma drinking in Iranian literature that is not part of the Zoroastrian tradition. Bailey’s reading of the passage is, however, questioned in the following note on Khotanese durausā’, graciously contributed (October 6, 1983) by Professor Ronald Emmerick: “durausā’ occurs only in P 2925.33 KT 3.101. According to Bailey (1979:161 s.v.), it means ‘elated, exalted, exhilarant’ and is an ‘epithet of a beverage’. See also Bailey 1982: 51. Bailey appears first to have compared Khotanese durausā’ with Avestan dūraoša in 1964: 4. He did not mention the Khotanese word in his discussions of dūraoša- in 1936: 95-97; 1953: 22; 1957a: 30-32; or 1957b: 53-58. There is a formal difficulty involved in Bailey’s comparison. He tries to deal with it by deriving Khotanese durausā’ from a hypothetical *durausā-yā but does not account for the -ya-suffix. He offers no proof that *ṣy could result in Late Khotanese ʂ, since his only parallel, Khotanese khanauṣa’, which he derives from *kanausyā-, is equally uncertain: the related forms have neither *ṣya nor *ya.

“Bailey’s explanation of durausā’ involves a still more serious difficulty of a semantic nature. He describes durausā’ as an ‘epithet of a beverage’ but the only evidence he offers in support of the idea that a beverage is involved is an etymology. According to Bailey durausā’ ttraha means ‘an exhilarant draught’, but ttraha is nowhere attested in the meaning ‘draught’. The etymology he offers for ttraha is not without its own difficulties. It is based on a root tar- attested only in the modern Iranian languages Ormuri and Parāči and poses the question why *tr- did not become dr- as in drāa ‘three’, cf. Avestian drāiō, Old Indic trāyāḥ.

“There is a well-attested Khotanese word ttraha meaning ‘radish’: see Bailey 1979: 143, s.v. ttraha-. Its meaning is guaranteed by several bilingual passages in which it corresponds to Sanskrit uṣālaka and Tibetan la-phug. The soundest method of procedure would seem to be to see whether ttraha in the passage in question could not bear its normal meaning. In fact the use of the verb thatm- with ttraha would suggest that it may well do so. Here ttraha thaja may mean ‘one pulls out a radish’ rather than ‘one draws an exhilarant draught’. For this use of thatm- one may compare in Old Khotanese kho ju ye viyuṣu thaṃjāte khārja ‘as one pulls a lotus out of the mud’ (Emmerick 1968: 5.90). This parallel is particularly apt. In Emmerick 1968: 5.90 the comparison is between pulling a lotus out of the mud and rescuing someone from the ocean of birth. Now Bailey describes the context of ttraha thaja as ‘an amorous context’ but the immediately preceding lines 31-2 refer to vauma vi i parausādā ‘of those drowning in the ocean’ and to satsaira ‘the cycle of existence’. The context is thus clearly similar to that of Emmerick 1968: 5.90.

“On this analysis durausā’ may be expected to be the locative of the source of motion like khārja in Emmerick 1968: 5.90. Formally it has the appearance of the locative from a noun *durausyā-. In view of the use of Khotanese dūra- ‘hard’ in connection with uṣmā- ‘soil’ as in uṣmāni puṇḍai dūrā ‘a hard clod of soil’ Ch 00268.170 Bailey 1951: 67 [Dešanā 22], one is tempted to regard regard durausā’ as miswritten for *durausma- ‘in hard soil’. The locative form would be like rrāṣma from rraysmā- ‘battle-rank’ (Emmerick 1968a p. 277). The omission of the lower portion of a complex aḵṣara is a not uncommon kind of scribal error. However, one cannot be absolutely certain that durausā’ is not an adjective qualifying ttraha ‘radish’.

“As a tentative rendering of ʂa’ ma vathajai khū durausma’ ttraha thaja I would suggest ‘he pulls me out as one pulls a radish out of hard soil’. For confirmation it will be necessary to scan Buddhist literature for such a comparison.”
note only that it clearly shows that sauma was something in the Avesta which was burned.

§99 It is important to point out now that sauma is represented as being burned in the Yasna rite itself. During the recital of the hymn to Fire in Yasna 62, the residue of the plants from which the haoma extract has been obtained is placed in the fire.29 The burning of haoma is also represented where the plant used as the chief ingrediant of the haoma drunk in the Yasna and commonly called hōm in Iran today, Ephedra, is burned as fuel incense which Boyce (1970: 64-65) reports takes place on almost all occasions when an animal is slaughtered for food among the Iranian Zoroastrians (see §§115 and 131).30

§100 Where we find reference to the burning of sauma in the Avesta, the plant is called dūraoṣa-, not haoma. This is probably best explained by the fact that the literal meaning of haoma, ‘extract’, refers to an aqueous state which will not burn. To speak of burning an extract would seem especially inappropriate in view of the Avestan prohibition of mixing fire and water, which excluded even the use of moist wood as fuel for ordinary household fires.

§101 The placing of incense on fires is a dominant motif in ancient Iranian iconography and was of great importance in Iranian rites, focused as these rites were on fire, for which fragrant fuel (Avestan aēśma- baoḍi-) was required. The above noted ritual uses guarantee that sauma was a suitable offering to the fire. Since sauma was the most sacred of plants, it should have been a preferred offering. Frankincense and sandalwood, the incense favored by Zoroastrians (and other Iranians) today, are foreign products that were not readily available in ancient Iran and were probably unknown to the early Iranian pastoralists. Because there are few plants indigenous to the Iranian area useful for incense, sauma must have met this need whenever it was available.31 Of the few native

29. “When [the solid remains of the twigs out of which the liquid has been well squeezed by the fingers in the strainer are] thoroughly dry, they are put into the fire at the time of Atash Nyayish” (Haug 1884: 402 n.1). This must refer to Yasna 62.9, after which ritual instructions are for the raspi to place hōm and urwarām upon the fire (“hōm ud urwarām kustag ō ātakš dahišn”, Darmesteter 1892-1893: 1, 389 n.28). The burning of the residue of haoma is also reported by A. Khodadadian (1975: 228-229), F. M. Kotwal (in Boyce 1975b:167 n.134 and 323) and F. M. Kotwal and J. W. Boyd (1977:31).

30. The hōm is burned together with frankincense during the recital of Yasna 7 and 8 in a drōn ceremony (Boyce 1970: 64-65). The older practice still survives at the festival of Mihragān, however, when under otherwise identical circumstances, it is not the plant called hōm but Peganum harmala which is burned, see §115.

31. While the names of other incense plants (such as vohu,gaona- or vohu,karati-, see §238) are obscure in the Avesta, the burning of juniper (Avestan haparasi-) is linked there with the otherwise unknown “Vyāṃbura” daēva-worshippers. Burning juniper could not have been a practice limited to daēva-worshippers, however, because juniper is abundant and valued as a fragrant fuel over much of eastern Iran and the Indo-Iranian borderlands. Juniper is burned apotropically together with harmel in the Shina and Hunza areas (Jettmar 1975: 217 n.134, 258, 270, 421), and in Wakhan (Grunberg and Steblin-Kamenskij 1976:249-250). The burning of juniper together with a fragment of “hōm” (Ephedra) in modern Khorasan
substances used as incense, the seeds of *Peganum harmala* seem consistently preferred in Iran during Islamic times, and there is every reason to believe that they were also preferred in Avestan times, in full accord with the identity of harmel as sauma.

(itchison 1889:434) is presumably a reflection of the same practice but, again, with the replacement of harmel by *Ephedra*.

32. The seeds of *Peganum harmala* are regularly burned in offerings to open fires by the Zoroastrians of Iran today (see J. S. Soroushian 1956, *s.v. bütt sven*, and *čaryū*). W. Eilers and M. Mayrhofer (1962:68n.) report that in Yazd the Zoroastrians burned as incense *kundur* (apparently locally designating pine resin), sandalwood, *senjed* (oleaster), and *isfand* (*Peganum harmala*). In the nineteenth century, the seeds of *Peganum harmala* were exported by the Zoroastrians of Iran to those in India for use as incense; see J. E. Polak (1874: 703). The fact that the modern burning of *Peganum harmala* is not for aesthetic but for apotropaic ends is consistent with what Zoroastrian tradition indicates must have been the case with sauma: "The burning by the Parsees of sandalwood incense on the holy fire during the performance of all religious ceremonies and prayers . . . is intended not so much to propitiate the good spirit of the holy fire, as to scare off the evil spirits by the fumes of the materials burnt" (Ruttonshaw Kershaspji Dadachanji [1911: 341]).
THE EVIDENCE OF ZOROASTRIAN RITUALS

§102 This chapter will examine the use of plants to represent sauma not only among the Zoroastrians in India, the Parsees, but in greater detail among the small groups of Zoroastrians in and around the cities of Kerman and Yazd in central Iran, who have maintained a tradition of rituals and religious customs apparently unbroken since pre-Islamic times. We shall consider how under varying circumstances both of the two plants extracted for Zoroastrian Yasna rituals, Ephedra and pomegranate, and a third plant, rue (Ruta graveolens), are ritually used to represent sauma and how the role of each of them provides evidence that sauma was harmel.

§103 The most explicit Iranian representation of the consumption of sauma is found in the Yasna ritual, which lasts about two hours and is performed several times each morning by priests in Zoroastrian fire temples. During the Yasna a priest in the role of zôt (Avestan zaotar) executes the following three major ritual actions: (1) after reciting Yasna 8.4 he consumes some of the dhrän bread (which appears to be a vestige of sauma, as is discussed separately §133); (2) during the recital of Yasna 11.10 he consumes a haoma extract; and finally, (3) while he recites Yasna 22-27 he prepares a second haoma extract, differing from the haoma he has drunk only in that it contains milk. This second haoma extract (the āb-zöhr, see §131) is poured down a well after the ceremony has concluded.

§104 The haoma extract consumed by the zaotar is not prepared during the Yasna, but before it, by the other priest participating in the ritual, the raspi. To prepare it the raspi sits alone within the consecrated area and pounds in a mortar, with water, three twigs of a species of Ephedra, referred to as hōm, and a piece sliced lengthwise from a twig of the pomegranate tree (Kotwal and Boyd 1977). From these crushed plant materials he squeezes out the liquid and passes it through a plate with nine holes, and then through a metal ring wound with three hairs from a bull, and into the haoma cup from which the zaotar will later drink. The residue from this extraction is thrown on the floor and is eventually burned (see §99 n.28). Only after the raspi’s preparation of the extract is complete does the zaotar join the raspi in the ceremonial area and begin recital of the seventy-two chapters of the Yasna liturgy. Thus, when,
about a quarter of an hour after the rite begins, the zaotar is handed the "haoma" to drink, it consists of an extract which has been pressed out from two plants. One of these plants presumably represents sauma while the other represents a secondary constituent, or additive, to the primary drug.

§105 The Indian soma rites do not attest a parallel to this use of two plants, but, as will be seen (§114), this situation cannot be the basis of an argument against two plants being part of the original ceremony. The extraction of two plants is indicated in the text of the Avestan Yasna liturgy as well as being represented in the ritual actions accompanying its recital and, since Iranian ceremonies have been consistently simplified (see Pavry 1918), not embel-
lished, it is a priori unlikely that the second plant would be an innovation. We shall now consider the relationship to sauma of each of these two constituent plants, Ephedra and pomegranate.

Ephedra

(a) The relationship of Ephedra to sauma

§106 For centuries the Zoroastrians of central Iran have collected the leafless, much branched, jointed twigs of small shrubs of the genus Ephedra (locally known as hōm) in the mountains and have used them as haoma.¹ In areas of eastern Iran where these Ephedras are particularly abundant (and where Zoroastrian influence has long been absent) they have such vernacular names as hōm, hum-i bandak, xuma, um, uma, őm, oman, yūmana, amojak, uroman, hub, narŏmb, nārom, and so forth (see Table 3), all of which names derive from Old Iranian *hauma*. This establishes that Ephedras were well known by the name haoma in Avestan times and even earlier. What is more, still farther east in areas where Dardic and Indic languages are spoken, these species of Ephedra bear such names as soma, som, sumanai, asmania, amsania, asmina-
buti and somalatā, indicating that in Old Indic they were called soma. A point which is of obvious importance to determining the botanical identity of sauma but which seems not noted previously, is that the naming of Ephedra from hauma in Iran, and from soma in Indic, indicates that Ephedra was called *sauma* already in the common ancestral Indo-Iranian language.

1. The Ephedra plants used ritually are one to two-foot high shrubs having many thin, yellow-green branches emerging from a somewhat woody base. They are characterized by leafless, jointed stems, the ends of which (in female plants) sometimes bear globular 1/4-inch fruits. They therefore have a gross similarity in appearance to harmel plants in winter, although confusion between Ephedra and harmel is hardly likely. Botanical differentiation of species of the genus Ephedra is often difficult. Presumably several of the ten species occurring in Iran (Riedl 1963) could serve as haoma in ritual. Boyce's (1970: 62) samples were E. pachyclada Boiss. (see Figure 4) or E. intermedia Schrenk & Mey., var. Persica Stapf. Bornmüller (1893: 43) reported "E. distachya" to be the plant used as hōm in Yazd, but no species of this name is included in the Flora Iranica. Pictures of Ephedra plants used as haoma appear in J. Darmesteter, (1892-1893: I, lix); A. V. W. Jackson (1906: 387), and J. R. Hinnells (1973: 127; photograph by Mary Boyce).
Moreover, the use of *Ephedras* in present day Iranian *haoma* rituals was probably paralleled by the use of *Ephedras* in the *soma* rites of the north Indian Vedic schools, which endured until the tenth century Islamic invasions of north India. Today *soma* rites are rare and are found only in south India, where schools of Vedic priests were to some extent reestablished by refugees from these invasions. The plant which reports uniformly indicate to be used as *soma* in these south Indian rites is an asclepiadaceous, leafless climber, *Sarcostemma brevistigma* Wight & Arn.\textsuperscript{2} The twigs of this plant contain a milky sap, but when dry they may be difficult to distinguish from *Ephedra* stems.\textsuperscript{3}

*Sarcostemmas* are tropical species and could not have been available for use as *soma* in Vedic times because they are absent from the flora of north India, and must therefore have been adopted only when, long after the Vedic period, Brahman priests emigrated to south India. These priests must have then selected *Sarcostemma* to substitute for the plant traditionally used as *soma* in north India. *Ephedra* species do not seem to occur in south India, nor in fact near the ritual centers on the northern plains themselves, so, to have been used there during the many centuries of Vedic practices, they would have to have been imported from adjacent uplands to the north and northwest.\textsuperscript{4} The greater distance and political barriers would, however, have precluded importation of *Ephedra* to the *soma* rituals once the sites of these rituals had shifted to south India.

That it was *Ephedra* which *Sarcostemma* replaced as *soma* is evidenced by the fact that in Nepal today *Ephedra* is called by the Sanskrit name *somalatā* ‘*soma* creeper’ (Singh 1979; Shrestha 1979; Manandhur 1980). The Islamic invasions resulted in the flight of Hindu refugees both to south India and to Nepal. Although these refugees do not appear to have established Vedic rites in Nepal, they introduced the Sanskrit language there. Sanskrit names for plants in Nepal date from the arrival of these refugees (J. F. Staal). The designation of

\textsuperscript{2} Synonyms for *Sarcostemma brevistigma* Wight & Arn include *Asclepias acida* Roxb., *Sarcostemma acidum* Voigt., and *Sarcostemma viminale* Wall. ex Decne. A. C. Burnell (1878: viii n.), states that, while *Sarcostemma* was used for *soma* on the east coast of India, on the west coast two species of *Ceropegia*, “*C. Decaisneana*” and “*C. Elegans*” were used, but he does not say how he knew of the ritual use of these species. The two *Ceropegias* are also asclepiadaceous vines and probably merely substitute for *Sarcostemma brevistigma* in local rites.

\textsuperscript{3} The twigs of *Sarcostemma brevistigma* which J. F. Staal (1979: 156) observed in ritual use were, in fact, mistaken for *Ephedra* stems by the first botanist he consulted.

\textsuperscript{4} The importation of *soma* plants is reflected in the ritualized enactment of the purchase of a cart of *soma* plants described in *Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa* 3.3.1.1f (see Hillebrandt 1980: 160-167; Dandekar 1973: II, 112-144; Kashikar 1964: 270-277; and Staal 1979).
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>EPHEDRA GERARDIANA</strong> Wall.</th>
<th><strong>EPHEDRA CILIATA</strong> F. &amp; M.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amsanial</td>
<td>andho-khimp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>asmani-booiti</td>
<td>bandak-māu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>asmánía</td>
<td>bandukai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>būdūr/būtsūr</td>
<td>brata/bratta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>budagur</td>
<td>drāksa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>čewa</td>
<td>hib</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ehewa</td>
<td>hum-i-bandak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khanda</td>
<td>kucan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khanda-phog</td>
<td>kūrkan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khanna</td>
<td>lana</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oman</td>
<td>lastūk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phok</td>
<td>nangarwal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>raci</td>
<td>nikki</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sang-kaba</td>
<td>phog/phōk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>soma</td>
<td>sou-phogaro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>somalata</td>
<td>tandala</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>somlata</td>
<td>um/umbar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thayon</td>
<td><strong>EPHEDRA</strong> (species not specified)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tootagantha</td>
<td>acʿilg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trano</td>
<td>amojaq</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tsapatt(-tsem)</td>
<td>asmania</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tse</td>
<td>bandak-e-kōhi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tutgantha</td>
<td>budṣur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uman / umohan</td>
<td>buzak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>EPHEDRA INTERMEDIA</strong> Schr. &amp; Mey.</td>
<td><strong>EPHEDRA INTERMEDIA</strong> Schr. &amp; Mey.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hōm</td>
<td>central Persia (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hum/huma</td>
<td>Baluchistan (23)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imom/imik</td>
<td>Wakhān (30)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khanna</td>
<td>Kunawar (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maha/mawa</td>
<td>Khyber/Hindu Kush (24)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>marizad</td>
<td>Baluchistan (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oman</td>
<td>Pashto (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>porgaz</td>
<td>Bahaui (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rogagaz</td>
<td>Baluchistan (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suman</td>
<td>Chitral (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>um/uma</td>
<td>Baluchistan (23)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>EPHEDRA NEBRODENSIS</strong> Tineo.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gewitham</td>
<td>Baluchistan (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>omah/umah</td>
<td>Baluchistan (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>EPHEDRA PACHYCLADA</strong> Boiss.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amsina-buti</td>
<td>Gilgit (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hum/huma</td>
<td>Afghanistan (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>köreš</td>
<td>Qayen (Khorasan) (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maha/mawa</td>
<td>Khyber/Hindu Kush (24)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mao</td>
<td>Khyber (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>som</td>
<td>Gilget (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oman</td>
<td>Pashto (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>soma</td>
<td>Kafiristan/Nuristan (24)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>um</td>
<td>Afghanistan (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uma</td>
<td>Afghanistan (2), Baluchi(24)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yehma</td>
<td>Afghanistan (4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yũmena</td>
<td>Yidgā (30)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Ephedra pachyclada** Boiss.
Small gregarious shrubs.
Internodes at 2.5 - 6 cm. intervals.
Stem diameter 5 - 7 mm.
(After Chakerian in Moybayesi 1980)

---

**Ephedra Gerardiana** Wall.
Rigid, erect shrubs.
Generally with numerous stems from a woody, creeping rootstock.
Up to 0.7 meter high.
Internodes at 2.5 cm. intervals.
Stem diameter up to 4 mm.
(From Nikitin 1957)

---

**Ephedra intermedia** Schr. & Mey.
Small, erect shrubs.
Internodes at 3 - 6 cm. intervals.
Stem diameter 4 - 6 mm.
(From Nikitin 1957)

---

**Ephedra ciliata** F. & M.
= **Ephedra foliata** Boiss. ex C.A. Mey.
Tall and scandent with slender branches. Internodes at 2.5 to 10 cm. intervals.
Stem diameter up to 8 cm.
(From Nikitin 1957)

Figure 4. *Ephedra* species of the East Iranian–North India area.
Ephedra in Nepal by the Sanskrit term somalatā can only mean that when the Brahmans reached Nepal they found Ephedra growing there and they recognized it as the same plant they had known in north India as somalatā when it was being imported for soma rituals.

§110 This ceremonial use of Ephedra for millennia in both Iran and India must reflect some unique intrinsic property of the plant. The only characteristic of Ephedra markedly distinguishing it from the numerous xerophytes of similar appearance among which it grows is a pharmacological one, and this certainly must underlie its ceremonial role, that is, consumption as a drug. Some of the Ephedra species known by names reflecting haoma/soma contain, in quantities conditioned by rainfall and season, ephedrine, a sympathomimetic alkaloid somewhat similar in physiological action to adrenaline. The claims of several modern authors (e.g. Qazilbash 1960; Mahdihassan 1963, 1974, 1985; Falk 1987) notwithstanding, the pharmacological action of ephedrine as a stimulant is of insufficient intensity and too inconsistent in character with what is indicated for sauma by the Iranian evidence to allow identification of Ephedra itself as sauma, but it must nevertheless be its pharmacological action which underlies the specificity of Ephedra use in sauma ceremonies and consequently the common names of these plants. The cultural history of Ephedra also shows that it was not sauma. It is unknown in traditional Indic or Iranian folk medicine,5 while in China, where it has been recog-
nized for many centuries as a medicine, it is not regarded as intoxicating and its consumption lacks ceremonial or religious associations.\(^6\)

§111 The clearest demonstration that *Ephedra* cannot have been sauma exists in the very fact that *Ephedra* extracts are today drunk as *haoma* by Zoroastrian priests who do not become intoxicated from them and whose predecessors, moreover, apparently consumed *Ephedra* extracts for centuries without so much as knowing that *haoma* is said in the Avesta to be intoxicating (see §22). It is also clear that, whatever pharmacological effects Zoroastrian priests may experience from drinking *Ephedra* extracts, it is not for the purpose of experiencing those effects that the extracts are drunk, whereas the object of drinking sauma preparations was precisely for their effects. What then will explain the identification of *Ephedras* as *soma* and *haoma*, both by priests and throughout numerous Iranian and Indic dialects since near the time when sauma ceremonies first began?

§112 It has sometimes been supposed that *Ephedra* was symbolically substituted for the original intoxicant, but there are many reasons to doubt this. First, it would be strange that a merely symbolic substitute should itself have unique pharmacological properties. Furthermore, sauma must have been commonly known in ancient Iranian society as an intoxicating plant in order for the credibility of the sauma ceremonies, and the authority Iranian priests claimed from them, to have been maintained. Despite being commonly designated *haoma* (and the like), *Ephedra* is without suitable psychoactive potential in fact (and is not regarded in traditional ethnobotany as having any psychoactive properties at all) and, therefore, it cannot have been believed to be the means to an experience from which priests could claim religious authority or widely believed to be the essential ingredient of an *intoxicating* extract. Nor is it likely that *Ephedra* would be uniquely designated by vernacular names like *haoma* if it had been introduced into the ceremonies as a symbolic substitute for sauma, for this purpose could have been served equally well by many other plants without prejudice to the outcome of the ceremony. Moreover, for a single, arbitrarily chosen substitute for sauma to be so universally adopted would have required an implausibly uniform Indo-Iranian society (and priesthood); once such a choice were made, there would have been no means to communicate or enforce it. Even if that had been possible with respect to the conduct of ceremonies, it would remain to explain how the adoption of such a

---

6. Alison Bailey Kennedy has determined that the supposed references to *Ephedra* in early Chinese sources may actually pertain to species of *Equisetum*. She reports that at Kew Gardens in 1984 she examined the plant specimens recovered by Sir Auriel Stein from graves near Turfan and described by him (1931) as *Ephedra* twigs, and discovered them to be in fact *Equisetum* also. She has promised to present arguments that a similar confusion of *Ephedra* with *Equisetum* may underly the association of *Ephedra* with *sauma.*
convention among priests could result in the popular designation as *soma/huoma* of Ephedra species.\(^7\)

§113 It is therefore neither likely that *Ephedra* was a substitute for sauma nor that it was sauma itself, yet, according to both Iranian and Indian traditions, *Ephedra* was essentially linked with the extract drunk during the ceremonies. The only way of reconciling this fact with the considerations of the preceding paragraphs is to view *Ephedra* as an archaic additive to the extract. Thus, *Ephedra* too would have been a *soma-/haoma*- ‘pressed out (plant)’, though not the only (or fundamental) one. The Avesta clearly indicates there was more than a single *haoma*. *Haoma* is *pouru.saraśa*- ‘of many kinds’ (*Yasna* 10.12) and the word *haoma*- frequently appears in the Avesta as a plural, particularly in that part of the *Yasna* and its supplement, the *Visperad*, recited while preparing the *haoma* drink. Also both *haoma*- and *para.haoma*- ‘subsidiary *haoma*’ are named at those points in the *Yasna* liturgy where there occur a list of the items to be consumed by the *zaotar* (i.e. at *Yasna* 3.2; 4.1; 7.26; and 8.1).\(^8\)

§114 The pre-Islamic use of *Ephedra* as *soma* in Indian rituals casts light on its function as a constituent of the ritual extract. In the Indic tradition, after sauma came to be omitted from the ceremonies (which appears to have been a necessary precondition for their continuation; see §155), *Ephedra* continued to be pressed out as *soma*. No additional plant was introduced as a replacement for sauma. On the other hand, *Ephedra* itself could not have been a substitute for sauma because of the rationale of the *soma* rituals: *soma* was an offering to the gods, and it was in order to receive *soma* that gods made themselves present. It is hardly possible that rituals would be undertaken to summon the gods to

7. The cognate Indic and Iranian names for *Ephedra* may aid in locating where the Indo-Iranians came from, for there are almost no other plants bearing cognate names in Indian and Iranian languages. The vernacular survival of the Indo-Iranian name for *Ephedra* implies continuous association with the plant by both Indo-Aryan and Iranian groups. While ephedrine containing species of *Ephedra* occur in alpine areas of Europe and China as well as in the Hindu Kush-Pamir-Himalaya highlands they are discontinuously distributed in Eurasia. In areas where they are not abundant, as in western Iran, *Ephedras* have ceased to be known by *haomaphoric* names. An alternative to the widely held view that the differentiation of Iranian and Indic languages occurred in the course of two waves of eastward migration from southeastern Europe, is the hypothesis that this differentiation took place in the Helmand valley in eastern Iran. This would be consistent with the distribution of these *Ephedra* species as well as with the fact that Indo-Iranian culture developed around the herding of cattle. G. Gnoli (1980) has argued attractively that this area was the site of the ancient Iranian society reflected in the Avesta. Its unique regional suitability for a cattle rearing economy is also relevant to locating Proto-Indo-Iranian origins.

8. In Pahlavi *parāhōm* denotes the liquid extract as against the plant, nevertheless, the earlier Avestan term *para.haoma*- did not specify the liquid extract as against the plant and may never have been used for the extract at all. The term *haoma*- must primarily have referred to the drink and in the Avesta it is not *para.haoma*- but *haoma*- which occurs as the object of the verb ‘to swallow’ (*xar*-, *Yasna* 9.16).
partake of specious soma. Presumably the gods might be expected to supply a missing ingredient in the soma offered them, but would not have been expected to be taken in by a false offering. The fact that Ephedra is used alone in the later Indic rituals is a further argument that it was an original constituent and not a substitute plant and thus confirms the Iranian evidence that at least two plants were originally present in the ritual extract.

The ritual use of Ephedra as evidence that sauma was harmel

§115 Ephedra seems to have been used in Iranian rituals almost exclusively as an additive to the haoma mixture of the Yasna. Since Ephedra was identified with haoma in rituals, however, it would be remarkable if it were not also occasionally used to symbolically represent sauma. This is undoubtedly the case when Ephedra is burned, for Ephedra is not an incense plant. The burning of hōm (i.e. Ephedra) together with frankincense occurs in the ordinary Iranian rites sanctifying the slaughter of meat animals (see §101). This ritual burning of Ephedra must be a reflection of the earlier practice of burning Peganum harmala (together with frankincense [i.e. Persian kundur; cf. §§76 and 99]) which is still carried out (with precisely identical ritual procedures) in connection with the most important annual sacrifice, that of the Mihragān festival, by the Zoroastrian priests of the city of Yazd.9 Thus, where Ephedra is used alone, it is manifestly as substitute for Peganum harmala, another indication that harmel was sauma.

§116 If Ephedra was an original constituent of the ritual extract, its pharmacological properties must have been consonant with or complementary to those of sauma. It has been noted (§110) that ephedrine is a sympathomimetic drug, stimulating the sympathetic nervous system and thus interfering with sleep. The physiological effects of harmaline are in some respects the very opposite of those of ephedrine, for harmaline lowers blood pressure and may induce sleep (as was recognized as an effect of harmel in Islamic materia medica [§44]). It is not possible to precisely predict the pharmacological action of a combination of ephedrine and harmaline, but it is reasonable to expect that the action of ephedrine would diminish the tendency of harmaline to induce sleep and could thus facilitate the experience of visions. Indeed, no plant available in the Iranian environment seems better suited to be consumed as a means of averting sleep than Ephedra. In general, there is reason to believe that harmel used for the purpose of visions would probably have regularly been in the form of mixtures with other plant drugs, since, as has been noted (§38), the harmaline

---

9. Compare Boyce's detailed description of the burning of hōm and frankincense in the village of Sharīfabad, cited in §99 n.28, with her (1975a: 112) account of burning Peganum harmala and frankincense by the more conservative priests of Yazd in the identical ritual procedure.
containing preparations of *Banisteriopsis* consumed in South America for visions typically involve the admixture of other plants. Likewise, when clinically administering harmaline orally in order to induce visions, Claudio Naranjo found that harmaline most effectively induced visions when it was combined with other psychoactive substances. Apparently over many generations the shamans of South America have discovered how to induce a wide range of experiences by varying the additives to the *Banisteriopsis* drug and a parallel body of empirical lore may have developed around the preparation of harmel as a drug. Not only do the properties of *Ephedra* seem specifically suited for use with harmaline, but the mere datum that sauma was prepared in mixtures is particularly consistent with its identification as harmel, for the effects of most plant drugs are not to such a degree modified by other drugs consumed with them.

**Pomegranate**

(a) Pomegranate and the identification of sauma with *hašānaępātā*

§117 If it is allowed that *Ephedra* may have originally been an additive to sauma, then, of the two plants compounded for the modern *Yasna* ritual, it should be pomegranate rather than *Ephedra* whose original purpose was to symbolize sauma. The prevailing view, however, has been just the reverse: that pomegranate was an additive plant. The Avestan term *hašānaępātā*, which is named in the *Yasna* liturgy as a plant consumed together with *haoma* and to which the ritual use of pomegranate corresponds, is widely supposed to mean ‘pomegranate’. This is first because in places where the Avestan *Yasna* liturgy calls for the presence of *hašānaępātā*, the modern Zoroastrian ritual employs pomegranate twig, root, or leaf. Secondly, the identification of *hašānaępātā* as ‘pomegranate’ is due to etymological assumptions. These etymological issues are discussed in §§231-251; here it need merely be said that the fact that the element *hašāna*—‘having seeds, seedy’ is the basis of words for ‘pomegranate’ in some later Iranian languages does not prove that the entire compound *hašānaępātā* also means ‘pomegranate’. Moreover, the data, when examined closely, actually preclude the meaning ‘pomegranate’ for *hašānaępātā* in the Avesta.

§118 In the Avesta *hašānaępātā* is specified for two uses: as an ingredient of the intoxicating extract and as incense; yet for neither of these uses is pomegranate in any way suitable, nor should any feature of the pomegranate earn it the prominence of the *hašānaępātā* plant. The pomegranate’s fecundity symbolism, which accounts for its role in certain other religious contexts, is irrelevant here. It is the fruit which lends itself to this symbolism, but the fruit is not used in preparing the *Yasna* drink, nor could the *hašānaępātā* collected as loads of fuel incense (*Vidēvdād* 14.5; 18.71) refer to the fruit. The Avestan *hašānaępātā* is in fact never interpreted as pomegranate in the Pahlavi textual
tradition, where the Avestan word is simply transcribed and left undefined. What is even more decisive, however, is that Avestan hađānaēpātā, in addition to being described as a fragrant plant substance, is clearly classified as a soft (varādvā-) as against a hard (xraoždvā-) wood (Videvdād 14.2-3), whereas pomegranate wood is exceptionally close grained and slow burning, and is burnt in Zoroastrian sacred fires for these very qualities (Boyce 1977: 75).

§119 The term hađānaēpātā, no cognates of which survive in any later language, was probably not common (if used at all) in ordinary speech, but belonged rather to priestly usage (like other Avestan terms for ritual substances, see further §237), and may have been one of the terms which designated sauma. The ambiguity of haoma as a term for sauma existed already in Avestan (and indeed far earlier as proven by the Indian use of names connected with soma for Ephedra); in the context of the ceremony, “haoma” implied the intoxicant but was commonly used to name the nonintoxicating Ephedra which was also, and more regularly, present. Whereas ordinary “haoma-containing” Yasnas might or might not actually include sauma, Avestan may be expected (especially in light of the ordeal functions of the Yasna discussed in Chapter 6) to have had a means of more emphatically asserting the presence of sauma in the extracts prepared for the Yasna. The characterization of zaoθras (see §129) as containing both haoma and hađānaēpātā (in Yasna 22, 24, 66, etc.) may indeed have been intended to assert that they really did contain sauma, although in the course of time a nonintoxicating plant was substituted in most and eventually in all yasna performances. The identity of hađānaēpātā and sauma is further indicated by the coincidence that the two uses which the Avesta assigns to hađānaēpātā, namely, as incense and intoxicant, are precisely the uses of sauma. It is unlikely that this unusual combination of functions would characterize both sauma and yet another Avestan plant. Pomegranate, by reason of representing hađānaēpātā in the modern Yasna, may therefore be regarded as the substitute for the sauma plant.

§120 This appears also to be the function of pomegranate elsewhere in Zoroastrian rituals. For example, Modi, in his account of The Religious Ceremonies and Customs of the Parsees (1937: 52), reports that “instead of the juice of the haoma plant, if [it is] not available at hand, the juice of a few grains of pomegranate . . . is dropped into the mouth of the dying person.” In the older initiations described in texts, and in the modern initiations of priests, drinking haoma is required. Although according to Pahlavi Yasna 9.26 “one has not accepted the Religion until he drinks hōm”, it is by no means sure that all persons espousing Zoroastrianism were required to consume sauma. However, as all members of this faith must today pass through an initiation modeled in part on the initiation of priests, it seems likely that sauma is reflected by the infusion of crushed pomegranate leaves and twigs which is administered to the novice at the beginning of these rites. Moreover,
pomegranate seeds (Modi 1937: 338; Drower 1944: 87) or twigs (Haug 1884: 407) appear to represent sauma when—as is the usual practice among Zoroastrian priests in India—they are placed on the drôn bread to replace the sadāb called for by the Pahlavi scholia to the Nērangistān (see below, §132 with n. 24).

§121 The choice of pomegranate to represent sauma may result in large part from the availability of the pomegranate, its being evergreen, and the importance of its fruit in other Zoroastrian observances, as well as its partial association by name with haḍānaēpātā. But pomegranate is also characterized by a resemblance to Peganum harmala; in particular, by the likeness of its wild fruits to harmel seed capsules. This similarity is reflected in Arabic by the use of *ḥuraymla (or *ḥurmaylā), a derivative of ḥarmal, and ‘umm ḥarmal ‘mother of harmel’ as names for pomegranate.10

§122 The present-day substitution of pomegranate for harmel in Zoroastrian ritual has a long history, as is shown by accounts (written in Islamic times) of practices observed at the ancient festival of Isfandagān. This festival occurs on the day Isfandarmūd (< Middle Persian Spandarmat < Avestan Spanta- Armaiti- ) (the fifth day) of the month Isfandarmūd (the twelfth month), 30 days before the New Year. Accounts of a parallel Iranian festival occurring one month earlier, that of Bahmanjana, observed on the day Bahman (the second day) of the month Bahman (the eleventh month), say that that festival featured the consumption of the plant bahman.11 If any plant was analogously consumed at

---

10. "Imḩarmal: small black fruits of a variety of pomegranate which are not edible but are used to make a local medicine" (Guest 1933: 48, 79). "Imḩarmal" is a pomegranate According to Henry Field (in D. Hooper 1937:160, 226). According to Abū Ḥanifa al-Dīnawarī (d. 895) (Lewin 1953:104.8): "the hrymlh (vocalized hurraymla حَرْمَلْ) by Ibn Manzur [c. 1300], Līsān al-ʿArab [1966: 13, 195] is like the small pomegranate." M. Vonderheyden (1937: 456 n.1) says "Le diminutif حَرْمَلْ designe une plant toute différente, une sorte de petit grenadier."

11. The analogy is particularly evident in a Zoroastrian text written in Yazd in 1719 in which sapand (=isfand=Peganum harmala) is stated to be the plant consumed at the festival of Bahmanjana: "In the matter of the Behemanjeh [sic] Jashan: This Jashan is solemnized on the day Behman of the month Behman. Some say that the Parsis on that day used to partake of vinegar mixed with sapand [i.e. Peganum harmala], while others say that they used to swallow sapand mixed with fresh milk, so that Behman Amashafand might sharpen the memory and perfect wisdom and intelligence" (translated by M. R. Unvala, from an unpublished text [1908: 208; cf. MS. no. 100[283] in Dhabhar 1923: 63]). This account was apparently derived from descriptions of this festival by Islamic writers of the tenth century (e.g. al-Birūnī [al-Qānūn al-Masʿūdī, see Sachau 1879: 424; Kitāb al-Ṭaḥḥīm li-awārīl šīnāʾat al-tanjīm, ed. Wright 1934: 181-182], Asadi Ṭūsī [ed. Dabīr Siyāqi 1957: 158]; Minūṭīhrī [ed. Dabīr Siyāqi 1959: 86]; cf. also the thirteenth-century account by al-Qazwīnī [ed. Wüstefeld 1849: 2, 83]). The plant consumed at Bahmanjana in these Islamic accounts is not referred to as isfand or the like, but as the roots and petals of the (white/yellow and/or red) bahman plant. Although substances continue to be sold in bazaars as bahman, there is perplexity about its identity throughout Islamic pharmacognostic literature (see Meyerhoff and Sobhy 1932-1940: 294-298; Renaud and Colin 1934:71; Stewart 1869:161). The plants usually identified by modern writers as red and white bahman, namely Staticex limonium
Isfandagān, it should be isfand, as indeed, according to an informant of Anjavī Shīrāzī (1973:1, 53), isfand (presumably in quite small quantities), mixed with milk, was still consumed in Kerman at Isfandagān during the early years of the present century. A sixteenth-century account of Isfandagān, written in central Iran by Zoroastrian priests (see below §131 n.17), states that the festival was marked by preparing and burning a mixture containing (among five ingredients) raisins and isfand. This account also provides the detail that at the same time an exorcism against the poison of noxious creatures was written on saffron paper or deer skin and fastened outside the house. Al-Birūnī, in his tenth-century Chronology (ed. Sachau 1878:220), reports that the festival of Isfandagān was famous as the occasion for writing (between dawn and sunrise) an exorcism (essentially identical to the one described by the Zoroastrian priests) accompanied, rather than by the burning of isfand, by pulverizing together raisins and pomegranate seeds and eating these to nullify the poison of scorpions. Pomegranate seeds were not traditionally regarded as an antidote, but the seeds of harmel were (see, e.g. al-Birūnī quoted by Togan 1941:117). Originally the festival must have featured the consumption of

(Plumbaginaceae) and Centaurea behen (Compositaceae), respectively, are Mediterranean species unknown in the Iranian area, while the variety of straw for which the name bahman is used locally in southwestern Iran (Eghtedārī 1955: 50-51; Soroushian 1956: 23) seems wholly incongruous with accounts of the bahman plants in the materia medica. Incongruous also is the mention of “white bahman” as a superior compote in the late Sasanian text Xusrav ud Rēdag 45 (J. M. Unvala 1921: 23).

The term bahman, rather than referring to yet another plant, may have been, like haoma, dūraoša- and hašanaepātā-, etc., a name for sauma in a particular context of its use. The form bahman goes back, via Middle Persian Wahman, to Old Iranian *Vahu- Manah-, Avestan Vohu-Manah- ‘Good Thinking’, the Amesa Spanta (hypostatic aspect of the divinity) most associated with sauma (see Boyce 1970: n.85). In the Dēnkird VII 3.52 (Madan 1911: 624.6) account of Zoroaster’s initial revelation, it is said that he saw Good Thinking (i.e. Vohu Manah = Bahman) as a giant man carrying a white twig (arūs tāg, regarding which see §260). This white “plant of Bahman” seems to be the precedent for the white bahman plant of the Bahmanjana festival. It may be conjectured that the reports of the consumption of bahman at Bahmanjana were based on the precedent of the consumption of isfand at Isfandagān.

While the Yazdi account of isfand at Bahmanjana is probably taken ultimately from the tenth century Islamic sources, it is relevant for what it reveals of the attitude of Zoroastrian priests in the eighteenth century toward harmel. The fact that the bahman of the earlier accounts has been emended to sapand in the Zoroastrian version shows that harmel was believed by Iranian priests to have at one time been consumed to achieve psychoactive results (such as perfecting wisdom and intelligence), results which are otherwise attributed in the literature of Zoroastrianism only to haoma. It also discloses that there was an enduring awareness of Peganum harmala in the role of sauma among priests. The preparation of Peganum harmala with milk in both the account of sapand at this jashan and in the account of the more recent consumption of isfand at the Isfandagān festival in Kerman should be compared with the mixing of haoma with milk (discussed below, §138). Regarding the alternative preparation of isfand with vinegar above, cf. §43 n.1 and the preparation of sīr-o-sedōw (§137).
Peganum harmala (i.e. isfand) in order for the sauma effects to be experienced. In popular survivals of the festival later on, when most participants were no longer prepared for such effects as visions that drinking sauma might bring, the isfand was merely burnt, or else it was replaced by a nonintoxicating plant. Al-Birūnī’s report shows that the substitute plant was pomegranate.

(b) Pomegranate and the identification of sauma with barsom

§123 Pomegranate appears to have a further substitute function in Zoroastrian ritual when it is used as the Zoroastrian barsom (Avestan barasman-). The Middle and New Persian term barsom designates certain twigs which, during various rituals and, with special importance, while preparing haoma before and again during the Yasna, are held in the left hand of the haoma-preparing priest, whose right hand grips the haoma pestle. In the Avesta, barasman- is more often characterized as strewn than as held in the hand. Existing Avestan and Pahlavi texts say nothing about the source of barasman-/barsom except that it is a plant substance, nor about the connection of holding it in the hand with stewing it. Zoroastrian works in New Persian state that barsom should be cut from either the pomegranate or the tamarisk (Rivāyat of Kauš Kamdīn and Rivāyat of Kamdīn Shapur: M. R. Unvala 1922:I, 484; II, 32-33; Dhabhar 1932:418), or else that barsom should consist of hōm (presumably Ephedra) or tamarisk, or, if neither of these is available, pomegranate (Shea and Troyer 1901:158; Dehkhudā 1947-1973: B 893). Since, except for tamarisk (whose presence is probably an intrusion of non-Iranian origin, see §126), the plants named (i.e. Ephedra and pomegranate) are the very two plants which are pressed out and drunk ritually as haoma, their use as barsom suggests that barsom/barasman- may originally have been the same plant as sauma. The mutual identity of barsom and haoma may also be indicated by the accounts of the plant called in Arabic ēhīm al-majūs ‘the haoma/hōm of the Magi’. Islamic pharmacological texts (from as early as the 10th century C.E.) furnish only vague and conflicting botanical information about ēhīm al-majūs (see above, §54 n.11), but it is significant that they do not report that the Magi extracted and consumed ēhīm al-majūs in their rituals (i.e. as haoma), but rather they say that the Magi, while reciting prayers, held ēhīm al-majūs (and thus that the plant corresponded with barsom). We then have attestation of the very same plants which are ritually prepared and drunk as haoma/hōm (i.e. Ephedra and pomegranate) being used as barsom, and complementarily, haoma/hōm described as if it were barsom.

§124 In addition to the use of pomegranate twigs both to represent sauma in haoma extracts and to serve as barsom, a further fact should be noted. At the very time a piece of pomegranate twig, apparently symbolically representing sauma, is being pounded in the mortar with the right hand, barsom is held in the priest’s other hand (Kotwal and Boyd 1977). This suggests not only that
Extraction of harmel seeds in autumn and winter

Extraction of harmel roots in spring and summer

Figure 5. The manipulation of harmel plants for extraction.
barsom and sauma were identical, but also that sauma stems, rather than being cut into short lengths to fit into the mortar (as are the Ephedra and pomegranate pieces now used), were originally grasped together as barsom while their ends were being crushed in the mortar (see Figure 5). The active drugs of harmel are concentrated not along the stems but, depending on the season, in either the roots or the seed capsules at either end of the stems (see above, §47). From the beginning of the year until the ripening of the seeds, the roots are the part of the plant richest in the harmala alkaloids. Because harmel typically grows in hard ground, only by grasping together the stems at their base and pulling off the upper few inches of root can roots of the plant be easily harvested. To extract a drug from roots thus obtained, the uprooted end of the stems could be held firmly over a mortar with one hand while operating a pestle with the other. Similarly, during the later part of the year when harmaline and harmine are concentrated in the seeds, these drugs might be most efficiently obtained by holding with one hand bundles of stems cut off at the base while pulling away and crushing numerous seed capsules into a mortar with the other hand. The Yasna ceremonies of ancient Iran took place out of doors in areas defined by furrows, and in most parts of Iran these furrows could have been drawn to enclose an area containing live harmel plants. From the plants within the ritual area itself the drug could then be freshly prepared by holding together successive handfuls of stems and crushing in a mortar whichever end was appropriate for the season of the year, then discarding the stems. Wherever this process had been carried out, the numerous stems remaining from it would constitute a very visible (and perhaps also highly pungent) indicator of the site of sauma ceremonies. Thereby the act of preparing sauma might become associated with the strew of these stems. If it is to these strewed stems that Avestan barsman- referred, then the act of strewing

12. An important part of some Zoroastrian rituals is the tying of the barsom twigs into a bundle. This procedure may be a reflection of binding together the stems of mature Peganum harmala plants in order to efficiently crush the terminal seed capsules in a mortar (cf. §82 n.21). The shape of the harmel plant (see Figure 5) is particularly consistent with the uniquely descriptive reference (Nêrangistân 98 [l.179.10-15]) to the source of barsman- as +hämõ.varšajîm paouru.fraväxšam ‘having many [glossed in Pahlavi “30”] stems from the same root’.

13. Sauma ceremonies developed among a nomadic population and must have taken place in open country. The Iranians had no temples at all until Achaemenian times (Boyce 1975c) and seem to have performed Yasnás out of doors, perhaps until the Islamic conquest. Since Yasnás may not be witnessed by outsiders, they are now conducted in fire temples, but in earlier times security must have been achieved by locating them at relatively remote sites. “All that was needed for solemnizing the high rituals was a clear, flat piece of ground which could be marked off by a ritually drawn furrow” (ibid. 455). Living plants are preferred in Zoroastrian ceremonies, and since harmel plants are found in proximity to virtually all human activities in Iran, the extract would have been prepared from plants obtained within the ceremonial area itself.
barasman- would betoken the performance of the Yasna; which is to say, the act of consuming sauma, hence “strew barasman-” would in effect amount to an idiom for “consume sauma”. The chief means of serving the gods in the Avesta is the performance of Yasnas, and in the Avesta there is no indication of any way in which gods would be served by the strewling of plants except in connection with the performance of the Yasna. This would account for the frequent mentions in the Yasna liturgy of serving the gods with strewn barasman-.

§125 This explanation of barsom contrasts with the widely accepted view (see Paul Thieme 1957) that in origin Avestan barsman- is essentially identical with Indic barhis-, which in the Vedas is also frequently said to be strewn (ṣṭp), and in Indian ritual consists of grass spread as a cushion for the gods (devas), upon which they would sit and receive offerings of soma. While the Avesta preserves an exact cognate of Indic barhis-, Avestan baraziš- (> Persian bāliš) meaning simply ‘cushion’, it is not mentioned in connection with ceremonies and need never have had anything to do with a ritual cushion for gods. In Iran the deities of Zoroastrianism seem to have been regarded as incapable of making use of a tangible cushion, so that if the spreading of grass as a seat for the gods was ever a custom inherited by the Iranians, it would early on have been discontinued. Whereas etymologically Avestan barsman- has a common origin with the words for ‘cushion’, Avestan baraziš-, Indic barhis- (see below, §§252-258), there is no justification for concluding that barsman- meant ‘cushion’, still less that it referred to a cushion of grass to be sat upon by the gods. It is possible that the tender foliage upon which the sacrificial victim was laid in Magian rites, as described by Herodotus (I. 152), is a reflection of the ancient ritual usage, and a cushion was still known in connection with animal sacrifice by the Sasanian commentators on the Nārangistān,14 but this cushion is nowhere associated with the terms barsman-/barsom in Iranian texts.15 There is in fact no trace of a strew of grass for use by the gods, for sacrifices, or for any

14. Nārangistān f.128v (concerning killing a sheep): “[Placing] the rump toward the zōt, breast to the fire, dig a hole, put down a cushion without recitation (nērang). If no hole is dug the cushion will be damaged” (bē ka may nē kand bāliš ŗēs bawēd).
15. Boyce (1970:69 n.1) renders a passage at Nārangistān f.85v.11 as a reference to killing an animal “on” barsom, but such a translation is precluded by the context: ka Sṛōš dṛōn xward barsom ne pad nigērīn a-pādyāb be bawēd a-š be šōyišn u-š be rāyēnišn u-š gūmānīg wizard bawēd ka gōspand pad yast a-š o kušišn ka yast pad zōhr a-š zōhr o dahišn Afarg gūt had pad barsom i a-pādyāb gospand nē kunišn u-š zōhr o nē *dahēd. ‘When the Sṛōš dṛōn is consumed (and) barsom inadvertently becomes impure it should be washed and put right; the recitation becomes doubtful. When an animal is in the worship it should be killed. If the worship includes zōhr, the zōhr should be offered. (However,) Afarg spoke thus: “With impure barsom no animal should be killed nor should zōhr be *offered.”’ The barsom to which Afarg refers here is that present in the Sṛōš dṛōn ceremony, which consists of hand-held twigs of barsom. This passage makes it clear that it was necessary also to hold these twigs when animals were sacrificed, and says nothing about where the animal was to die.
other purpose in the Yasna or in any existing Iranian ceremony, yet during the performance of the Yasna the Avestan liturgy frequently proclaims the strewing of barsman- as a part of the ceremony. Rather than suppose that ritual representation of this apparently important act of strewing barsman- has simply disappeared without a trace from the ceremonies, one could more convincingly maintain that the strewing of barsman- never referred to the preparation of a sacrificial cushion but referred instead to the act of extracting and consuming sauma (or later, the symbolic enactment thereof). In this figurative sense the gods have continued to be worshipped by “strewing barsom”, although in concrete terms, in the Yasna today the barsom is held rather than being strewn during the pounding of “haoma” (and at other prescribed moments) and then laid aside in an orderly fashion on a special stand.

§126 Stems of Peganum harmala are insubstantial and, like grasses, wilt rapidly (cf. Avestan namy-qsu- ‘[haoma] having a soft stem’, Yasna 9.12, see §182). Whether one believes barsom to have originally been grass or sauma stems, he must explain why it is that barsom has historically consisted of woody twigs. The practice of holding twigs as the Iranian priestly insignia was undoubtably adopted from earlier Near Eastern traditions of holding tamarisk branches, as Peter Calmeyer (1975) has shown. In order for the Iranian priests to have adapted barsman-/barsom to serve the ritual and emblematic functions of the hand-held twigs, it would have been necessary for them to have replaced the original barsom plants by stouter ones, such as twigs of the pomegranate or of Ephedra, or else by the anciently used tamarisk branches. The identification of these emblematic twigs with barsom indicates that barsom was in some essential way connected with the distinctive office of the Iranian priesthood. Since the priesthood was ultimately defined by the performance of sauma rites, it seems again highly probable that it was to these rites that barsom referred and, indeed, that the plant represented by the barsom twigs would have been sauma, the plant whose use must have actually been emblematic of the priesthood.

**Ruta Graveolens**

(a) *Ruta graveolens* in rituals represents harmel

§127 *Ruta graveolens* L., the garden rue, called in Persian sudāb or sadāb, is essential to the rituals of the Iranian Zoroastrians, who grow it in the precincts of each of their fire temples (Boyce 1966b: 54). Although the word sudāb/sadāb is likely Iranian (and seems itself to link *Peganum harmala* with sauma, see

---

16. The *Nērangistān* commentary *Grīftan i Drōn* (see below §132 n.24) mentions cutting (or not cutting) grass to prepare a cushion “not for the comfort of the priest but for the ritual power (nērang) of the drōn (ceremony),” but, possibly because the drōn ceremony is now only performed inside fire temples, this is no longer done.
The Evidence of Zoroastrian Rituals

The plant it now names, *Ruta graveolens*, is not Iranian at all. Except in the coastal districts of Anatolia, Syria and Palestine and parts of central and southern Arabia, species of the genus *Ruta* (i.e. *Ruta graveolens*, *Ruta chalepensis* or *Ruta montana*) have not been reported as wild plants in Asia.\(^{17}\) Rue seems to have first been cultivated in (or near) Greece, where wild species of *Ruta* occur.\(^{18}\) The plant cannot have been known to the early Iranians and, therefore, *Ruta graveolens* itself cannot have been the plant originally used, unless the rituals wherein it figures (which we shall presently consider) are late innovations (and given the antiquity and pronounced conservatism of the Zoroastrian tradition, this hardly seems likely). In other words, there can be no doubt that in Iranian ritual *Ruta graveolens* is a substitute; the only question is, what is the plant for which it substitutes? The unique, intimate relationship of *Ruta* to *Peganum harmala* (see §53), the fact that in the Middle East, names for *Ruta graveolens* are frequently derived from names for *Peganum harmala*, and the direct evidence from the Zoroastrian rituals themselves, show that *Ruta graveolens* must be the ritual replacement of *Peganum harmala*. I shall next present evidence to establish that in these rituals *Ruta graveolens* has the role of sauma, indicating further that sauma was *Peganum harmala*.

---

17. The species classed as *Ruta* in some Asiatic floras (e.g. *R. tuburculata*, *R. abiflora*, etc.) are apparently all species of the related genus *Haplophyllum* A. Juss. (see Townsend 1966a and 1966b).

18. Further confirmation that the cultivation of *Ruta* spread from a single location is the consistency of magical and supernatural powers assigned to *Ruta graveolens* and particularly the universal attribution to it of the ability to ward off and counteract the poison of noxious creatures. These powers are not ones which can be rediscovered by simple observation and represent beliefs which must have been borrowed along with the cultivation of the plant. (For a survey of the powers attributed to rue in European folklore see H. Marzel in Bächtol-Stäubli [1927-1942:7, 542-548], Branky [1901], and Gunther [1905]). The ascription of these powers to *Ruta graveolens* is probably not historically independent of their assignment to *Peganum harmala*. Since *Peganum harmala* has borne names meaning 'sacred' since Proto-Iranian times, it is likely its ethnobotanical importance as a source of supernatural powers is far older, and that Greeks exposed to Iranian beliefs about harmel (in Anatolia) transferred them to *Ruta graveolens* in Greece, providing an impetus for its cultivation, which eventually had a role in the spread of the plant to other Mediterranean lands and, in Roman times, throughout Europe. A major claim for the value of "rue" (Greek πηγγανον) in the Classical World was its being a chief ingredient of the antidote of Mithridates Eupator (d. 64 B.C.E.), the last Iranian ruler of Pontus, but is likely that the "rue" traditionally used by an Iranian prince as an antidote would have been *Peganum harmala* (Greek πηγγανον ἄγριον, "wild rue"). The success of *Ruta* as the successor to harmel even where harmel is a native plant must be largely due to the ease with which *Ruta graveolens* can be propagated from cuttings (as against the difficulty of cultivating harmel, despite its proliferation as a weed), and also to the fact that *Ruta graveolens* is evergreen, a factor of particular symbolic importance in its replacement of harmel in Zoroastrian rituals. For the history of rue as a spice in Rome (but not so used in Greece), see A. Andrews (1948).
§128 Among the Zoroastrians in Iran *Ruta graveolens* is reportedly tasted on all religious occasions (see Sheriyar 1914: 311-312). This constant presence of *Ruta graveolens* is best explained by the precedent of sauma. This is confirmed by the representation of sauma by *Ruta graveolens* in three concrete situations: (a) as the chief plant used in the preparation of offerings (*zaobja* or *jaostras*) to Water and to Fire; (b) as the plant to be consumed in the drön rite; and (c) as the plant corresponding to Avestan dūraoša, a designation for sauma, at Gāhāmbār festivals.

(b) The use of *Ruta graveolens* in *zaobja* represents sauma

§129 In Avestan, *zaobja* means ‘that which is poured’, hence, ‘liquid offering’. The term usually seems to refer to the extracted sauma, drunk by a priest in the worship of a divinity. In two cases, however, *zaobja* are prepared which are not drunk: when offered to Fire and Water they are poured into the material manifestations of these elements.

§130 The *zaobja* to the Waters, called āb-zōhr in Middle Persian, survives in two forms. When the āb-zōhr is offered after a *Yasna* it consists of the mixture of the extract of pomegranate and *Ephedra*, together with milk, which the *zaotar* prepares during the *Yasna* (see §104). This shows that the āb-zōhr originally contained sauma. At other times, when the pomegranate-*Ephedra*-milk mixture made during a *Yasna* is not freshly available, Zoroastrian priests in Iran make the āb-zōhr offering with a mixture consisting of grains, fruits, garlic, milk and *Ruta graveolens*;19 this mixture then seems to serve in the place of the pomegranate-*Ephedra* mixture in representing sauma.

§131 Analogous to the Water offering is the Fire offering, the ātas-zōhr. The essential part of the ātas-zōhr is the fat of a sacrificial animal (Boyce 1966a), although a paring of its horn or even some hair may also be used, together with a plant constituent which, in parallel with all other *zaobja*, should be sauma. Two occasions when the ātas-zōhr was still made were observed in 1964 by Mary Boyce among Zoroastrian communities in Iran: one at the jašn-i Mihrizad (ancient Mihragān), when an animal was sacrificed and its fat offered to the fire accompanied by the burning of *Peganum harmala* (see §115); the

---

19. This information, like most of the details on Iranian ritual, comes from Mary Boyce, who made a unique study of the practices in Zoroastrian villages in 1964. The modern libation (*öwzūr*), which she identifies with a form of the ancient āb-zōhr, as prepared by a priest, was from “five things, namely, milk, garlic, rue, rice, oleaster- [misprinted oleander-] fruits, and bread” (1966a:112 n.1). The essential place of sauma as an ingredient in the offering to Water is substantiated by Boyce (ibid. 113), citing Nērangistān *f*.140.16 to the effect that *parahōm* (meaning here the pomegranate-*Ephedra*-milk mixture, see above, §113 n.6) and āb-zōhr are identical. She further observes: “In the Pahlavi texts the āb-zōhr is sometimes referred to as the pouring of hōm into the waters. This is readily understandable, since *haoma* regularly stands first among the ingredients of the libation and gives its name to it as the *para haoma, parahōm*” (1966a:117). This provides so much more reason to believe that the modern āb-zōhr/*öwzūr* she describes contains a representation of sauma.
other at čahārom, the ceremony of the fourth day after death. Boyce (ibid. 107) reports that the ātaš-zōhr at čahārom consists of some fat, a paring from the horn of, and a scrap of wool from, the sheep sacrificed at the last Mihragān, pounded up with the root of an aromatic plant (būd-i nākūš), garlic, and Ruta graveolens. The five ingredients of this ātaš-zōhr parallel the composition burned on the festival day of Isfandagān (§122), which also included a paring of the horn of a sheep sacrificed at Mihragān and garlic, but contained raisins and Peganum harmala instead of Ruta graveolens.20

(c) Use of Ruta graveolens in the drōn ceremony represents sauma

§132 Apart from the classification of sadāb (i.e. Ruta graveolens) as a herb (i.e. as a tarrag: Bundahišn 117.28: B. T. Ankesaria 1956:149), the earliest Iranian mention of sadāb is in the Nērangistān, or ‘ritual code’.21 This text consists of brief passages in Avestan with interlinear Pahlavi translation interspersed with Pahlavi commentaries. The longest of these commentaries gives views of various Sasanian authorities (much in the style of the Mishnah) on the conduct of the abbreviated form of the Yasna ritual known as the drōn rite.22 In this commentary (Nērangistān 28) drōn refers to small cakes of ritual bread, together with which alcoholic drinks or drugs may also have once been consumed (though this is no longer the case).23 and in this text sadāb is specified as the plant to be placed on the bread cake consumed as drōn by priests.24

---

20. According to the description provided by H. Anquetil du Perron (1771: 2, 577) from the "vieux Ravaelt" f.252, a fifth ingredient of the mixture burned at Isfandagān was cotton seed. Variations of the constituents (always five in number and always including isfand) are given (from the Rivayat of Kamdin Shapur) in M. R. Unvala (1922:1, 526-527; Dhabhar 1932: 341-342) and in S. D. Bharucha (1906: I, xiv).

21. Still earlier, in the latter part of the Syriac Book of Medicines of the sixth century C.E. (ed. W. Budge 1913: 675), sdb occurs (without definition as either Ruta or harmel) in recipes apparently copied from some non-Greek (Iranian?) source.

22. This commentary precedes the part of the Avestan text dealing with the failure to sing the Gathas due to intoxication during ceremonies. In particular, the Avestan (Nērangistān 29-30) discusses intoxication from consuming a draonah- ‘portion payed to priests’ consisting of wine or kumiss.

23. “When one desires to take a drug, when a drug is among the edibles assembled and set out with the drōn, he should taste the drug before (tasting the drōn)" ka dārūg ê ō kāmēd xwardan ud ka dārūg az ān i pad xwarīšn mehmānīh pad drōn frāz nihīšn u-š čāsnīg pēš ēn az dārūg kunīšn (Nērangistān f.46.5; equivalent to Pahlavi Rivāyat 182.4). The Middle Persian word dārūg seems to have been of similar meaning to, and may be the etymological antecedent of, English drug, French drogue, etc. (but for alternative views see E. Sluszkiewicz 1977). Because of the relative position of this passage within the text, Middle Persian dārūg cannot here refer to wine or an alcoholic drink. Wine and hur (or perhaps the mysterious beer “waṣag” [see Henning 1953]; Nērangistān has wš’k’) are subjects of a separate discussion in Nērangistān f.40.16 (corresponding to Pahlavi Rivāyat 175.7).

24. Nērangistān f. 40.11; Pahlavi Rivāyat 175.4. The whole of the commentary of which this is a part comprises a distinct Pahlavi treatise having the title Griffin i Drōn, “The Conduct of the Drōn Ceremony.” I shall present elsewhere a collocation of the two versions of this text.
§133 The Avestan liturgy of the *Yasna* ceremony is a compilation of texts of differing origins. It does not seem to have been recognized previously that, by reason of its relationship to the liturgy, the consumption of the *drōn* bread must represent the act of consuming sauma as practiced before the insertion of the three chapters which comprise the *Hōm Yasht* (*Yasna* 9-11.15) into the text of the *Yasna* liturgy. The *Hōm Yasht* differs in content and form of expression from most of the text now surrounding it in the *Yasna* (see Schlerath 1968: xi) and must itself have originated as the liturgy of a separate and independent sauma ceremony (Boyle 1975b:266). The proposition that the consumption of the *drōn* bread represents consumption of sauma follows from these four considerations: (1) The parallel consumption of *soma* in the Indic *Yajña* shows that the *Yasna* originally included the act of drinking sauma. (2) If the three chapters which comprise the *Hōm Yasht* were deleted from the present *Yasna* liturgy, the *drōn* bread would be consumed at precisely that point in the recital of the liturgy where the drinking of *haoma* now occurs. (3) For the *Hōm Yasht* to have been inserted in its present position in the *Yasna*, sauma must have been drunk at that very point of insertion. (4) The only substance whose consumption is presupposed by the *Yasna* rite is sauma; there is no other Avestan substance to which the *drōn* bread can be likened. Thus the consumption of the *drōn* bread in *Yasna* 8 is historically equivalent to the consumption of the *haoma* in *Yasna* 11 as a representation of drinking sauma, and the specification of *sadāb* as the unique plant eaten with the *drōn* bread assigns it to the place of sauma.

(d) The Upside of *Ruta graveolens* to represent Avestan *dūraoša*

§134 The use of *Ruta graveolens* in place of sauma is again manifest in the legend of the origin of the obligatory holy days of the Zoroastrians, the *Gāhāmbārs*. These are six feast days, distributed over the seasons, on which is performed an extended form of the *Yasna*, the *Visperad* (‘all the judges’, see §150), the nature of which makes it especially likely that these festivals were characterized by the use of sauma. The *Gāhāmbārs* are quite ancient. They were reportedly celebrated before the time of Zoroaster, who appears from one account (see *Ẓātsparam* 21) to have had his initial vision in connection with one

and also an examination of the *Čim i Drōn* which accompanies it in the *Pahlavi Rivāyat* (pp. 166-169). It accords with the hypothesis that pomegranate and rue both represent sauma, that on the one hand the *Nerangistān* specifies *sadāb* as placed upon the *drōn* bread, and that, on the other hand, it is pomegranate which is placed upon the *drōn* bread in actual practice. Although *Ruta graveolens* resembles harmel more distinctly than does pomegranate, ingestion of an extract of *Ruta graveolens* causes gastroenteritis. Hence for the *Yasna*, where the drinking of an entire cup of *haoma* extract is required, pomegranate has been particularly preferred. The same consideration may have lead to abandoning the consumption of *Ruta graveolens* in the *drōn* rite, although in general the representation of sauma by pomegranate is the more ancient practice, since pomegranate is a native plant.
of them. The legendary origin of these six holy days is recounted in a letter sent from the priests of central Iran to Zoroastrians in India in 1628 in response to the discovery that Ruta graveolens was not being used in the rituals of the Indian congregations. Some Ruta graveolens plants were apparently sent with the letter, and the recipients were especially advised to use them at Gāhāmbār and in the ceremonies performed to assure the safe passage of the soul on the third day after death.

§135 According to the legend related in that letter, the Gāhāmbār originated under King Jamshid (the Avestan Yima), who during his reign of universal weal and prosperity was visited by a demon of greed disguised as a needy stranger. As hospitality required, the visitor was offered his fill of whatever the king could provide, whereupon he proceeded to devour the vast herds and everything edible that this richest of all monarchs possessed. King Jamshid prayed earnestly for help from Ohrmazd, who in response sent Bahman (Avestan Vohu Manah ‘Good Thinking’) to King Jamshid with the following message:25

“Go and capture a yellow bovine and in the name of Ohrmazd kill it and command that it be cooked in old vinegar, and put garlic and sudāb into the caldron and place it before the demon so that he eats it.”

This was done, and when the demon ate the first mouthful, he withdrew and became non-existent.

Then, from that day on, they instituted the Gāhāmbār, and whenever famine and want arise a bovine should be slain and garlic and sudāb should be cooked and eaten so that famine and want disappear. For Gāhāmbār it is absolutely necessary that sudāb compounded with garlic be burned in the Gāhāmbār fire and (also necessary) that it be tasted.

§136 This legend must have had its origin in an interpretation of the section of the Gathas which includes the passage referring to the burning of sauma by its distinctive epithet dūraoša (see §98). The Pahlavi translation of the relevant Gothic verses, which occur in the thirty-second chapter of the Yasna liturgy, states that a demon, who overhears Yima/Jamshid announce his intention to provide the people with meat, greedily sets about to slaughter the cattle himself. The Pahlavi recommends burning dūrōš (i.e. dūraoša) for assistance in

25. Translation based on the text in M. R. Unvala (1922: II, 162-163, with parts also in I, 159.11 and 428.9) and (from another MS. of the same rivāyat) in J. J. Modi (1921). The same tale also occurs as the latter part of Chapter 94 of the metrical version of the Sad Dar, a Latin translation of which is given by Thomas Hyde (1700: 485-486) and a paraphrase from this by A. Christensen (1934: 645). The metrical Sad Dar was composed in Kerman in 1495 C.E., 132 years earlier than the letter quoted above, but its account differs only in the detail that a red, rather than a yellow, bovine was to be killed. For the later use of sadāb at the Gāhāmbār of Zoroastrians in India, see J. K. Katrak (1941: 215-216).
counteracting this demon.\textsuperscript{26} Equating, as we must, the burning of dūrāoša (i.e. of sauma) with the burning of Ruta graveolens, we see that the latter is a substitute for sauma.

\textbf{§137} The form in which Ruta graveolens is now present at Gāhāmbārs and at other religious occasions is in a mixture known as sīr-u-sedōw ‘garlic and rue.’ The following is a first-hand description by Mary Boyce (letter of February 19, 1970; cf. Boyce 1977:42) of its preparation among the Yazdi Zoroastrians:

The sedōw (rue) is used either fresh or dried. It is crushed in a mortar with the sīr (garlic), and there is added chopped coriander leaves and turmeric, cumin seed, pepper, and salt. Fat (which must be the rendered fat of a sacrificial animal) is melted or oil (necessarily sesame seed oil) is heated in an iron pan. When this is very hot, the mixture is poured in from the mortar; and when it is heated right through, vinegar is added and then pure water. Occasionally a beaten egg is also added at this point. The hot mixture is then poured into a ritually pure utensil, usually a silver-plated bowl, containing chopped dried mint. A few bits of bread are added, and the bowl is carried at once to where the priest is officiating.

In sīr-u-sedōw the yellow bovine of the legend is represented only by fat from a sacrificial animal, and to the rue and garlic\textsuperscript{27} are added spices (perhaps to rationalize the concoction as merely culinary),\textsuperscript{28} but this mixture clearly has a common origin with that called for in the Gāhāmbār legend.

\textbf{§138} The yellow Gāhāmbār cow and the fat representing it in sīr-u-sedōw have a correspondent in Zoroastrian eschatology that further establishes sauma as the plant to be consumed with them. At the end of the world a final Yasna will be performed in which the bull Haďayaš will be slaughtered and its fat mixed with the “white haoma” to provide the draught of immortality for the

\textsuperscript{26} Translations of the relevant parts of Pahlavi Yasna 32 may be found in M. Molé (1963: 230), and E. W. West (1904: 189). Both of these scholars (as also H. Humbach [1974]) observed that the legend quoted above must have originated as an interpretation of Pahlavi Yasna 32.8-14.

\textsuperscript{27} Garlic is an ingredient of the Peganum harmala mixture prepared on Islandagān (§§119 and 133), with which the sīr-u-sedōw mixture probably shares a common origin. Garlic may owe its presence here to its having been esteemed in its own right as an apotropaic in ancient Iran. There appears to have once been a Sīr-stūr ‘Garlic-feast’ on the fourteenth day of the tenth month, with the object of gaining protection against demons (al-Birūnī, Chronology, tr. Sachau 1879: 212). The third Old Persian month, Ḟāyṛći-, may have been named for garlic (Eilers 1953: 43n., but doubted by Boyce 1982: 25). In the Indian tradition, by contrast, garlic was regarded as impure (see Bedi 1960).

\textsuperscript{28} A secular form of this preparation seems to have survived elsewhere in Iran as āb-kāma, an infusion of spices eaten with meat. Historically, āb-kāma could be prepared with either Ruta graveolens (Dehkhudā 1947-1973: s.v.) or Peganum harmala (Minorsky 1953: 255), showing once again the equivalence of the two plants in Iran. Since Peganum harmala, which has no role as a spice in Iran, was probably the older ingredient, its presence in āb-kāma suggests that the origin of this bitter sauce may have been in the ritual connection of sauma with the sacrifice of meat animals for food (see §153).
resurrected dead. Although the “white haoma” differs from ordinary haoma, just as the Haōayuš bull differs from ordinary cattle, this mythological Yasna seems to be a paradigm for (or reflection of) the Yasna ceremony as it was ordinarily performed. Throughout the Avesta, gav- ‘flesh/bovine’ is mentioned as a constituent of haoma preparations. The individual deities of the Yashašs are regularly worshiped with haomayō gavā (or *haoma yō gava [cf. Hoffmann 1967]) ‘flesh/bovine with haoma’, and the zaōdras which the Avesta proclaims to contain haoma and haōanaèptā are also said to contain gav-. In ritual usage, gav- is often represented by milk (which is mixed with soma in India), and it was milk which was mixed with hōm to engender Zoroaster (§95), but in some other rituals gav- may be represented not by milk, but by urine, or horn, or in the account of Gāhāmbār beginnings above, by meat, whereas in the drink consumed at the final Yasna, it is in the form of the fat of the bull Haōayuš. The only modern ritual preparation involving the fat of sacrificial animals with which this “white haoma” mixture could be said to correspond is sir-u-sedōw, in which Ruta graveolens has unmistakably the role of sauma.

§139 That the use of Ruta graveolens in Zoroastrian ritual must be in place of Peganum harmala was first recognized by W. B. Henning, who thought the replacement resulted from a superstitious regard for Peganum harmala as a plant (only) of sorcerers: “In late times sudāb was admitted to Zoroastrian ceremonies, probably as a substitute for island, in a concession to popular superstition” (1965: 39 n.2). The need to mollify Muslim suspicions of sorcery

29. Bundahīšn 226.3: yazišn pad rist-wirāyišn Sōşyans kird abāg ayārān kunēd ud gaw i Haōayuš pad ān yazišn kuśēd, az pih ān gaw ud hōm i spēd anōš wirāyēnd ud ō harwisp mardōm dahēnd ud harwisp mardōm a(h)iš bawēnd ‘Sōshyans with helpers who perform the Yasna at the Resurrection of the Dead and they will kill the Haōayuš bull at that Yasna, and from the fat of that bull and white haoma they will prepare immortality and will give it to all men and all men will become deathless’ (similarly Dādistān-i Dēnig 48.16 and Zātspāram 3.15).

30. Milk is present in the putative sauma mixtures mentioned in §90 n.25 and §130 n.16. Harmel extract is drunk with milk according to the passage quoted in §95 and at the observance of Isandagān in Kerman (see §122).

31. For the combination of hōm (Ephedra) with bovine urine in a form of nērang, see §79 n.17.

32. Because of the variation in the form in which gav- is ritually present, it seems unlikely that the bovine constituent served a pharmacological function. “Bovine” may have been consumed with sauma to facilitate for the drinker contact with the soul of the slaughtered beast and a means thereby of negotiating immunity from the ordinary consequences of killing sentient beings. The need to forestal retaliation by the slain animal’s spirit in this way could have been a factor in the persistence of the centrality of sauma in priestly traditions (see Chapter 6). In the liturgy, at the conclusion of the Hōm Yash (Yasna 11.1 and 7) recited just before the zaotar drinks haoma, gav- is a metaphor for the flesh of the zaotar (see §150 n.3).
may indeed have been a factor encouraging the replacement of isfand in ritual by other plants.

(e) *Ruta graveolens* and the history of *soma* in India

§140 The Sanskrit term *somalatā*, used for *Sarcostemma brevistigma* and *Ephedra Gerardiana* in different places in the Indian area, also reportedly identifies *Ruta graveolens* (Fleming 1812, Piddington 1836, Monier-Williams 1899), as do also the synonyms *saumyā*, *somavallari*, and other relevant Sanskrit terms (see Table 2). There does not seem to be any attestation of the use of *Ruta graveolens as soma* in Indian rituals, which is not surprising since an extract pressed out from *Ruta graveolens* is toxic. There is, moreover, no property of *Ruta graveolens* which could readily explain these names. However, since *Ruta graveolens* necessarily reached India via Iran, where it appears to serve analogously to *soma* in certain rituals, it may be that the Sanskrit names are modeled upon Iranian terminology of ritual substitutes for *Peganum harmala*. Although Achaemenian, Parthian, Saka and Kushan incursions into India may have exposed some Brahmans to Iranian rituals, there is nevertheless little reason to think that late Iranian ritual use of *Ruta graveolens* could have prompted adoption of the plant under the name *soma* in Sanskrit.

§141 If the Sanskrit names for *Ruta* do not then reflect Iranian use of the plant, the alternative is that the names were given to *Ruta* in the course of its propagation in India. It has generally been supposed that the dispersion of *Peganum harmala* across northern India resulted from Muslim transportation of the seeds for medical or apotropaic uses. However, peoples entering India from Iran probably used and esteemed harmel much more before the advent of Islam, and the conditions for its distribution have remained the same from the period antedating the immigration to India of the Indo-Aryans themselves. Although harmel may be locally abundant in its characteristic ruderal environment, it is not a common plant in India. It seems unlikely that *Ruta graveolens*, on the other hand, reached India much earlier than the Hellenistic period, since there is no evidence for its cultivation anywhere outside of Greece before that time, and since *Ruta* is not a part of the traditional Indian Ayurvedic herbal. As happened in Iran, when *Ruta* was introduced into India, it must have acquired the names of the wild species it most resembles, that is, *Peganum harmala*. If this is so, then harmel must have been recognized as sauma and designated *soma* in some quarters of India long after Vedic times.

§142 The problem of the availability of sauma in Vedic India has frequently been misunderstood. There is no reason to think that the absence of sauma has ever impeded the performance of Vedic rituals. The fact that sauma intoxication has been absent from the *Yajña* throughout historical times shows that sauma is unnecessary for the viability of that rite as an institution. Apparently, even before the completion of the *RgVeda*, a major use of the priests' knowl-
edge of Vedic hymns and ritual was for magical purposes, for which the intoxicating effects of sauma would not necessarily have been required. Historically, sauma seems not to have been essential to the magic of Indian priests. Sauma itself was doubtless potentially useful for such purposes, but the power attributed to sauma would presumably have been regarded as inherent rather than due to special priestly knowledge, and access to the plant by nonpriests, and particularly by non-Aryans and the intended victims of Vedic magic, would only have lessened the relative advantage of the Aryan priests in the conduct of magic. Whether or not sauma grew in India or only at a great distance from it, access to the plant by Indians would have been the same for the priests and their enemies alike. The problem for the Vedic priests would have been less how they were to obtain the plant themselves than how to prevent others from doing so.

§143 Just as knowledge of Vedic hymns and ritual techniques was jealously restricted by Indian priests, in the context of the Indian caste system it would have been useful for them to have controlled access to sauma. Since the actual growth and distribution of the plant could not be controlled, the only means of curtailing access to it would have been to obscure its identity. This was accomplished by the combination of elaborate obscurantism in the composition of hymns to the plant drug (an extension of a characteristic already found in certain Indo-Iranian genres [see Boyce 1975b:9]), with a corresponding proliferation of irrelevant ritual details. The Brāhmaṇas (c 600 B.C.E.) list a variety of plants, few of them clearly identifiable and many patently fantastic, for use as soma substitutes (e.g. Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa 4.5.10; 5.3.3; 6.6.3; see R. E. G. Müller 1954). These hypothetical substitutes do not seem to share features that could be related to a common original plant and do not at all show similarities with Ephedra/Sarcostemma. Because of the similar appearance of the soma of present-day Indian rituals (i.e. Sarcostemma brevistigma) and the Ephedras used in Iran, it can be supposed that there has in fact been a continuous tradition of the ritual plants used as soma and that the substitutes proposed in the Brāhmaṇas had no reality in actual practice.

§144 Although such tactics would have succeeded in obscuring the identity of the plant among the laity, outside of Aryan society knowledge of the identity of the intoxicant plant as a sacred object would persist among the servants of the priesthood and be adopted by them. This would have been regarded as a defilement of the plant which could not be prevented. The priests, who by this time may anyway have had no need for the intoxicant plant, would have tended to stop using it. At this point the sanctity of the plant would have become manifest as a taboo.

§145 Now may be appreciated the significance of the otherwise unexplained reports by E. Balfour that Peganum harmala was “the plant sacred to the Pariah
 caste" (1885: II, 18), and "the [Peganum harmala] plant is . . . not to be touched by Sikhs or Hindus" (ibid. III, 172).
§146 This explains why *Peganum harmala* disappeared from all Hindu rituals and folk traditions and is no longer associated with its ritual substitutes. Thus, the Indian situation, so closely linked to its unique social history, is markedly different from the Iranian, where the ancient ethnobotanic tradition is unbroken. It is this Iranian ethnobotanical tradition that yields the ultimate identity of the plant which stands behind Iranian *haoma* and Indian *soma*, *Peganum harmala* L.
THE HISTORICAL PERSISTENCE OF THE SAUMA RITES

§147 To this point we have been exclusively concerned with examining evidence for the botanical/pharmacological identity of sauma. Before summarizing the arguments identifying sauma with harmel, some of the historical aspects of this identification need to be considered. The purpose of this chapter is to clarify how harmel was used in order to account for how the ceremonies symbolically representing harmel consumption continued to be at the core of the Zoroastrian tradition after the actual consumption of the plant in those ceremonies had ceased and had even been forgotten.

§148 It will be recalled that in the Ardā Wirāz Nāmag quoted in §24, Wirāz was sent forth to the spirit world to resolve the question of whether souls were helped in avoiding hell by the ceremonies (which were historically based directly or indirectly on drinking sauma) practiced by Zoroastrian priests (or more precisely, in view of the probable pre-Sasanian origin of the Ardā Wirāz Nāmag, by the Parthian Magi). The administration of the drug to Wirāz could not have been merely intended to convince Wirāz, who anyway had no doubts about the truth of Magian teachings, but was meant to persuade those summoned to observe him. Since it was the people’s doubt about priestly claims that led to the project of sending Wirāz, the Magi could not have supposed that the people would accept the report of Wirāz, who was experienced in the intoxicant use of sauma and hence surely a priest himself, without being shown some evidence of his reliability. The drug which was meant to bring Wirāz visions was at the same time the means of exposing him to an ordeal (as shown by Göbrecht 1969) that would publicly attest his personal trustworthiness. He passed this test by remaining tranquil.

§149 A contemporary (mid-second century B.C.E.) account of the use of drug plants by the Parthian Magi survives from the Chirocmeta by Bolus of Mendes (in Egypt), a book quoted in Pliny’s Naturalis historia 24, 160-67 (translated by W.H.S. Jones 1956: 7, 113-17) where it is wrongly attributed to Democritus (see Bidez and Cumont 1938: I, 117-19, and above, §90 n24). Since sauma is the only
plant known from Iranian religious sources with attributes similar to the magical plants described by Bolus under various Greek names, it is probable that some, or perhaps all of those plants refer to sauma (which as we have seen was already also diversely named in Iranian texts, e.g. by Avestan dūraoša-, haďanaępátā-, barasman-, haoma-). Bolus’ account attests that the potential of plants as ordeal drugs was exploited by the Parthian Magi. The capacity of sauma to produce visions of a credible spirit world would certainly have qualified it for the uses that Bolus reports the Magi made of the following plants:¹

thalassaegle: “To drink thalassaegle [‘sea radiance’] causes men to rave, while weird visions beset their minds.”

Achaemenis: [A name which has obvious reference to the Persian world.]: “Criminals, if they drink it in wine, confess all their misdeeds because they suffer diverse phantoms of spirits that haunt them. Mares have an intense aversion to it . . . for which reason it is known as hippocobas” (see above, §55, n.14).

Nyctegretos: [‘That which keeps one up all night.’]: “The Magi and the kings of Parthia use the plant to make their vows.”

ophiusa: “To take ophiusa [‘that which is characterized by snakes’] in drink causes such terrible visions of threatening serpents that fear of them causes suicide; wherefore those guilty of sacrilege are forced to drink it.” (Cf. the prominent role of snakes in yagé visions, §82, n.20.)

§150 This ordeal aspect of the use of sauma also appears in the liturgy on both occasions where sauma consumption is represented in the Yasna, that is, accompanying both the consumption of the drôn bread after Yasna 8.4 and the drinking of haoma extract during Yasna 11.10. In the first case, when the zaotar is about to partake of the surrogate sauma represented by the drôn bread (see §133), he invokes the drug to expose him in the following words (Yasna 8.3) if he is falsely representing himself:

8.3 amāša spanta daēne māzdayasnē
vaghavašca vāguhišca
zaorāsca yō aēśva
mazdayasnaēśva
mazdayasnō ajanō ašahe rādma
jištaymnō yāēwa gādō ašahe
mrayante avī tū dīm disyāta
yā apasca urvarāsca zaorāsca
8.4 yasca aētēšam mazdayasnanam
parnāyunam aiwi, zūzuyanam
inā vacō nōt visaite framrüite
aētam ā yātumanahē jasāiti

O Amaša Spantas, Vision of Mazda-worship,
Good Males, Good Females,
Zaaōras! Whoever among these
Mazda-worshippers here, calling himself a
Mazda-worshipper, an adherent of the Truth,
ruins the world with witchcraft,
O you waters, plants and zaōtras,
make him known!
Whoever of these Mazda-worshippers,
of full age, invoking diligently,
is not ready to recite these words
will get the punishment for sorcery.

1. Although in other contexts Pliny uses Magi for charlatans active in the Roman world of the second century C.E., in the Chicrocmeta the term has the older meaning ‘Iranian priests’.
[At this point the *zaotar* consumes the *drôn* and then recites *Yasna* 8.5-8, which propound curses upon deceivers and which are identical to the words that are recited following the drinking of *haoma* (i.e. *Yasna* 11.11-15)].

Whereas originally in the *Yasna* these “plants, waters, and *zaotras*” must have referred to the sauma drink, in the shorter *drôn* ceremony they must refer to the *drôn* bread and whatever is consumed with it. The announced function of the plants, waters and *zaotras* to expose duplicitous participants indicates that the ceremony must have once been an ordeal for the priests who performed it. The function of testing the drinker is again asserted in *Yasna* 11, (the last of the three chapters of the *Hôm Yasht*) which the *zaotar* recites just before he consumes the *haoma* extract. *Yasna* 11 consists of an elaborate warning that woeful consequences will befall anyone who attempts to resist the effects of the drug, and that the *zaotar*, following Zarathushtra, surrenders his body to *haoma* and thus shows himself to be a follower of Truth. In the more elaborate *Yasna* performed at *Gāhāmbārs* and at the initiation of priests, the *Visperad* (‘all the judges’), the *zaotar*, before drinking the *haoma*, interrupts his recital of the *Hôm Yasht* to make a roll-call of six additional priests who, as well as the usual raspi, were apparently at one time regularly assembled on such occasions to witness (and judge) his response to the drug. What most decisively shows that administering sauma functioned as an ordeal is the construction of the *Yasna* itself: at near the beginning of the ceremony the *zaotar* is handed a cup containing as *haoma* an extract whose composition is unknown to him, since it

---

2. The ordeal character of the text of *Yasna* 8 has been demonstrated by Darmesteter (1892-1983: I, 75), J. C. Tavadia (1948) and M. F. Kanga (1950).

3. *Yasna* 11 requires that, just as a sacrificial animal submits to the *zaotar* priest (*Yasna* 11.1), the *zaotar* priest must in turn surrender himself to *haoma*, who is “the swiftly-sacrificing *zaotar* of Ahura Mazda” (*Yasht* 10.89 [Boyce 1970:69]). Because the Pahlavi translators of the Avesta were unaware that *haoma* had originally been an intoxicating drug, they could not have understood the thematic coherence of *Yasna* 11 nor its relevance to the act of drinking *haoma*. In consequence, the command at *Yasna* 11.7-8 for the drinker to cut free his organs of sight and speech and allow them to be acted upon by the drug has been misinterpreted, apparently since Sassanian times, as an injunction to mutilate the heads of sacrificially slain animals to propitiate the abstract deity *Haoma*. This interpretation has prevailed despite the fact that there is no animal sacrificed in connection with the *Yasna* ceremony today nor any other passage in the *Yasna* liturgy to suggest that an animal ever was sacrificed or dismembered during that ceremony. I shall discuss elsewhere the unitary structure of *Yasna* 11 and its constant relevance to the ritual actions actually accompanying its recital.

The traditional interpretation of *Yasna* 11 exhibits a wholly symbolic conception of *haoma*, as a result of which the substitute plants were seen as equivalent representations of a spiritual entity and not as standing for a particular species. This explains why no priority seems to be accorded to harmel among ritual plants and why the question of botanically distinguishing the primary species from its substitutes did not arise among the Zoroastrian priests. In Iran the botanical identity of sauma became obscure because the issue was not meaningful, and not as the result of any compact among priests to conceal it or willfully to compromise the authenticity of rituals.
is prepared in his absence before the Yasna starts [see §104], but which is supposed to be a powerful drug, and he must drink it under scrutiny of other priests and all the spirits summons as witnesses.

§151 The use of sauma ceremonies as tests must have been effective in maintaining fidelity among Iranian priests, all of whom must periodically assume the role of zaotar, while at other times they must prepare the extract to be consumed by their fellows. The willing participation of persons in the role of zaotar in the Yasna would have insured that they were accepted as qualified by the other priests. By being willing to take the role of zaotar, one would demonstrate his preparedness to expose his soul to judgment by the spirits and show his confidence that other priests would recognize his spiritual acceptability. If one had already gained acceptance in this manner, it would have been largely unnecessary for the extract administered to him in the Yasna to have as much pharmacological potency as that administered to someone whose suitability was in doubt. The Ardā Wirāz Nāmag shows that the drug was not taken casually to induce visions, but was reserved for occasions when there was genuine need to obtain information about the spiritual world.4 In the usual conduct of ceremonies there may have been little or no need to induce visions. Thus, virtually from the inception of the ceremony as an institution, the extract administered in it would frequently not have been sauma at its full potency and need not have been sauma at all.

§152 The story of Wirāz suggests that although the vision-inducing drug was available, it was only rarely used, chiefly because people did not desire it. Even Wirāz, who apparently had no reason to be apprehensive about its effects,

4. Among the situations where sauma seems most likely to have been used was at the inauguration of pre-Islamic Iranian rulers. This is indicated by King Wishtāsp’s consumption of “hōm and mang” at his “initiation” (as Molé [1963: 383-84] has justifiably interpreted the passage quoted in §28), which is still commemorated by Zoroastrians at the New Year. The New Year was the occasion when the inauguration of Iranian rulers traditionally occurred and when the use of sauma for divination (in this case of the qualifications for authority) may be expected to have been most exploited. A reflection of the initiation of kings with sauma may be preserved in Plutarch’s Life of Artaxerxes III.1-3 (as translated by B. Perrin 1914-1926: Bk. XI, 130-31):

“A little while after the death of Darius [II], the new king made an expedition to Pasargadae that he might receive the royal initiation at the hands of the Persian priests. Here there is a sanctuary of a warlike goddess whom one might conjecture to be Athena. Into this sanctuary the candidate for initiation must pass, and after laying aside his own proper robe must put on that which Cyrus the Elder used to wear before he became king; then he must eat a cake of figs, chew some turpentine-wood, and drink a cup of sour milk. Whatever else is done besides this is unknown to outsiders.”

Zoroaster also put on a garment when he came up from the hōm liquid (Zātsparam 21.4 and Dēnkird VII 3.53, 4.57 [Madan 1911: 625.1, 636.1; Nyberg 1964: 56.17, 57.16]) as, it seems, did his father Porushasp when he approached the hōm (Dēnkird VII 2.32 [Madan 1911: 606.14; Nyberg 1964: 41.7]) and as also did Ardā Wirāz (see §24). This suggests that a change of clothes may have been a regular feature of sauma rites and therefore gives further reason to believe that the above account reflects sauma-drinking in the initiation of Iranian rulers.
did not want the drug. If the practitioners of the ceremony determined through visions that it was not necessary in each case actually to travel to the other world but that they could accomplish their purposes through ritual procedures alone, then the extract would not have to contain the vision-inducing ingredient. The ceremony without sauma would demonstrate equally well the acceptability of the zaotar to the spirits and exclude unqualified persons from attempting to act as priests.

§153 The value of the ceremony as a test by which to exclude imposters would have been important in connection with the payment of priests and may explain why sauma ceremonies came to be associated with animal sacrifices. The exclusive ability of Indo-Iranian priests legally to oversee the sacrifice of animals was doubtless at one time basic to their livelihood. In the early situation the payment of priests must have been in kind and must have consisted of a portion of the animal sacrificed. Long after the establishment of a priestly hierarchy, priests apparently continued to be itinerant and in each new situation would have required a means quickly to demonstrate their authority to superintend sacrifices. Sauma may have once been necessary to the priests’ authority to conduct sacrifices because by means of it they could reliably convey the animal’s spirit to the other world. But regardless of whether this was the original relationship of sauma to animal sacrifices, the value of sauma as a means of protecting the prerogative of priests to receive a share of every feast must have been the major factor linking sauma drinking and animal sacrifice. Their conjunction must have developed also out of the necessity of sacrifices to pay priests for conducting sauma ceremonies for other purposes, such as to benefit souls after death. The minimum price claimed by priests for such services can be supposed to have been a good meal, and, as late as Avestan times, a good meal could only have been a meal of meat, which was synonymous with food (Avestan pitu-; Boyce 1975b).

§154 Under such conditions the employment of priests for any purpose would necessarily include sacrificing an animal. Since priests were thought to be able to bring benefits to human souls through sauma ceremonies, one might as well have commissioned the priests to conduct a sauma ceremony on behalf of his soul even if the primary objective of employing priests was to have an animal killed and eaten in a feast, since the charges would be no more. Consequently, although it is certain that it was sometimes essential to have animals killed for food, and this must have involved hiring priests to do it, there is no direct attestation of the employment of priests solely for this purpose. Rather, whenever a feast was called for or it was desirable to obtain meat for any reason, priests would be employed to perform sauma ceremonies for the benefit of whatever human souls the donors of the animals would designate.

§155 The sauma ceremonies have continued throughout their history to be the chief activity by which priests obtain their livelihood and maintain their
exclusive claim to their livelihood, and not as a means of obtaining visions. Thus, for the ceremonies to have so effectively served these secondary functions, it was necessary that the extract routinely administered in them, year by year, be without the uncertainties inherent in potentially hallucinogenic plant materials. Since the ranks of the priesthood in both Iran and India came to be decided by social processes (chiefly kinship) rather than by the tests for which harmel could be used, once this change had occurred it would be essential that priests carefully avoid putting their colleagues to the test; to hand a colleague an extract that so much as tasted of harmel and could imply doubts concerning his fitness would have risked insulting him. Courtesy has thus disallowed even a vestigial presence of harmel in the extract drunk in rituals. Safe, nonintoxicating alternatives to sauma/harmel have therefore been essential for the survival of the sauma ceremonies. Thus the ceremonies, originally structured for controlling the intoxication of sauma, developed into independent rituals excluding intoxication—so that no amount of the original plant is consumed in their modern enactments.5

5. For Iran, the evidence we have seen from the Ardā Wirāz Nāmag and Bolus’ Chirocmeta indicates that intoxication by the drug still had an important role within the religious establishment at least into Parthian times. Apart from its importance as a means to Truth, however, informal use of harmel for intoxication for other religious purposes among Persian priests may well have simultaneously continued outside of the ceremonies.

Among the Indo-Aryans, after they settled in India, the reliance upon livestock for food greatly declined, and with the diminished importance of animal sacrifice so did the value of the ceremonies as a means of demonstrating the qualification of priests. By the time of the RgVeda the ceremonies had ceased to have any place for sauma. Nevertheless, there is reason to suppose that completely apart from the soma ceremonies a role for sauma intoxication would have survived in India also. The effectiveness of harmel as a drug is particularly susceptible to modification by admixture with other plants, and these seem always to have had a place in sauma preparations. The opportunities for controlling the effects of sauma through additives must have caused the Indo-Aryans to examine thoroughly the resources of the flora they encountered in India. If the pre-Aryan Indian cultures were familiar with psychoactive plants, the Aryans would surely have investigated those plants. In any event, for centuries after the Aryans entered India, the value of soma intoxication asserted in the Vedic hymns and rituals kept alive belief in the value of psychotropic plants as adjuncts to religious experience and sustained interest in local ethnopsychopharmacological resources. It is therefore relevant to note that (as was pointed out to me by Leonard Enos) several indigenous Indian Desmodium (Leguminosae) species are rich in N,N-dimethyltryptamine, the same substance found in plants added to Banisteriopsis extracts in South America (Banerje and Ghosal 1969; Ghosal et al. 1972; Ghosal 1972). This substance is pharmacologically inert orally unless it is combined with harmala alkaloids (which modify its metabolism through the inhibition of MAO or other enzymes). It appears the only way Desmodium species could have been effectively consumed as psychoactive drugs in India would have been by ingesting them with extracts of Peganum harmala, the one local source of these alkaloids. It may, then, be significant that one Indian Desmodium species, Desmodium gangeticum DC. (=Hedysarum gangeticum L.) is reportedly designated by Sanskrit names associating it with soma ceremonies, namely (according to Kirti kar and Basu 1935) saumyā- (also given as a name for Ficus glomerata, Abrus precatorius (=rosary pea), Glycine debilis (=soybean) and Ruta graveolens [see §140]) and (according to Monier-Williams 1899) amiṣāmat- ‘rich in soma juice’.
SUMMARY OF ARGUMENTS SHOWING
IDENTITY OF SAUMA AND HARMEL

§156 No detail concerning either sauma or Peganum harmala appears to disagree with their equation. If one would still claim that the botanical identity of sauma is unproven, he would need to supply a different explanation both for how harmel came to have every one of the nonintoxicating uses known for sauma (e.g. as apotropaic, incense, aphrodisiac, etc.), and for how it came in some cases to occupy the place of sauma in Zoroastrian rituals, and, on the other hand, account for what became of sauma in popular religion and priestly ceremonies after the time of the Avesta. However, even if one could explain away each of the correspondences we have examined, to claim that harmel was not sauma would in fact require assuming that there were simultaneously two sacred apotropaic intoxicant plants, both used both as incense and drunk in nearly identical ceremonies in ancient Iran. Vestiges of the distinction of harmel as a sacred plant exist among all Iranian peoples. That distinction can only have come about in response to some unique property of this plant and only if that property was exploited and valued. But Peganum harmala is a commonplace weed without significant economic value, as compared with other Iranian plants, and in general unremarkable, except in the one respect that it alone among Iranian plants contains the visionary drugs harmaline and harmine. This property is not exploited today, but because it is the sole significant distinctive feature of harmel, the only way the plant could have acquired sanctity among all Iranian peoples was for these drugs to have been used and for their effects to have been widely experienced and esteemed. It is clear that the effects of this drug in ancient Iran could only have been interpreted in religious terms, and since it must have been used, it is therefore to be expected that some trace of that use should exist in the data of ancient Iranian religion. In other words, if the use of a sacred intoxicant, that is, of sauma, had not already been deduced from the Indo-Iranian texts and rituals themselves, it would be necessary to propose it on the basis of the properties and cultural history of harmel in Iran. However, the correspondences we have seen between the two independent sets of evidence for harmel on the one hand and sauma on the other, point to a single intoxicant plant, and in addition, verify the historical reality of the use of its drugs as a major feature of ancient Iranian culture.
Major arguments for the identity of sauma and harmel

1. GEOGRAPHICAL CORRESPONDENCE
Sauma must have been widely available to many Indo-Iranian groups over large parts of the Iranian area, and was not a localized or rare species. No known psychotropic plant is so abundant and conspicuous as a source of psychoactive drugs over the Iranian area as is harmel, and harmel has been long known in Iran to have psychoactive properties.

2. PHARMACOLOGICAL CORRESPONDENCE
The pharmacological suitability of the drugs of harmel for use as sauma is objectively demonstrated by the parallel roles played in ancient Iran by sauma and in certain South American cultures by Banisteriopsis extracts containing the same drugs. In both cases (1) the plant extract is the basis of mixtures with other psychoactive plants; (2) the intoxicant use of the plant is chiefly in ceremonies supervised by trained specialists; (3) the effects of the drugs are valued for visually revealing a simultaneous, intangible spirit world interpreted as being a higher reality; and (4) the experience of these visions is central to beliefs and religious institutions.

3. EVIDENCE FROM IRANIAN FOLK RELIGION
The chief evidence for haoma comes from the record of ancient Iranian folk religion which is preserved in the Avesta. The survival of this ancient text among the Iranian Zoroastrians (chiefly as oral literature) manifests a conservatism which may be expected also in Iranian folklore and ethnobotany.

Sauma in ancient Iran | Harmel in later Iran
--- | ---
Name: The name “haoma” was apparently restricted to ritual contexts, and was not the common name of sauma. While intoxicant use was limited to specialists, the property of chief popular interest was the sacred power sauma’s psychoactive use proved it to possess. Sauma was the sacred (i.e. Avestan spanta-) plant. Modern Iranian names for harmel show that it was named ‘sacred’ in ancient Iran. Only the identification as sauma provides a plausible explanation of the Iranian names for harmel.

Ethnobotanic attributes:

In pre-Islamic Avestan and Pahlavi texts haoma harmel is invoked in verses which:
(A) Attribute the origin of the use of haoma to the founding figures of Zoroastrianism.
(B) Assert that
\- Haoma brings healing, victory, salvation & protection.
\- Haoma originates in mountains.
\- Haoma promotes childbirth [as aphrodisiac(?)].
\- Haoma is chief of drugs, etc.

In post-Islamic Persian, Mandaic, and Turkish texts is invoked in verses which:
(A) Attribute the origin of the use of harmel to the founding figures of Shi’a Islam.
(B) Assert that
\- Harmel brings healing, victory, salvation & protection.
\- Harmel originates in mountains.
\- Harmel promotes childbirth (as aphrodisiac).
\- Harmel is king of drugs, etc.

Use as apotropaic incense:
The chief nonpriestly use for sauma was as an apotropaic, a use which is inherently independent of formal religion. Sauma was burned as incense apotropically. Sauma was apparently the chief incense plant of Avestan times (e.g. dīrāzošt, haśānaṗāštā = sauma).

Harmel is the chief apotropaic plant of Iran today and this role is demonstrably pre-Islamic. Harmel is the most widely used native incense plant in Iran and the only one containing known psychoactive drugs.

4. EVIDENCE FROM ZOROASTRIAN RITUALS
The purpose of sauma intoxication was to gain knowledge from visions which could be obtained from the plant. Belief in the validity of such visions (and skill in using the drug to obtain visions) disappeared from Iran. Visions are not longer sought from the rituals representing the use of sauma and the original plant is therefore not consumed in them. In various ritual contexts where the consumption of sauma is represented, the selection of the three other plants which are used, i.e. Ephedra, pomegranate and Ruta graveolens, is explained by the relationship of these plants to harmel. The ancient addition of Ephedra to sauma mixtures is explained by the pharmacology of harmel. Pomegranate is a native Iranian plant which has had demonstrable use in Iranian ethnomedicine as a replacement for harmel. The presence of Ruta graveolens in Zoroastrian rituals is explicable only as a harmel substitute. In Zoroastrian rituals where sauma is burned instead of being consumed, the plant used has always been harmel.
Part II

Martin Schwartz
AVESTAN PASSAGES
RELEVANT TO HAOMA

ALLEGED GATHIC REFERENCES TO HAOMA (see §7, §72 and §98)

§158 The alleged opposition of Zoroaster to the use of the intoxicant haoma is based chiefly on the interpretation of one passage, Yasna 48.10, concerning which I showed the following in a recent detailed study (Schwartz 1985a): Instead of madahyā, genitive of mada- ‘intoxication’, one must read magahyā (cf. Pahlavi translation maṛih). The form maga- means ‘gift of reciprocity’, especially that given to poet-priests (cf. Old Indic maghā-), but also ‘ditch, pit’ (=Younger Avestan maga-). The homophone is exploited by Zoroaster in a complex pun. I translate kadā ajōn / mūṭram ahyā magahyā // yā... karapanō urūpayeintī // as ‘when will they ban(ish) the filth of that ditch/reciprocity-gift whereby... the karapans commit plunder’ (aj-ān ‘ban, remove, set aside as accursed or sacred’, cf. Arabic HRM; to Old Indic āgas- ‘sin, vice’; Greek γόντς ‘stain, pollution; holiness, sacred precinct; i.e. sacratum’. Karapan- /karpan- / *‘singer, poet’, cf. Old Indic kṛpayū- ‘singer, poet’ from kṛpayā-; also kṛpāmāṇa- with kavī-; and urūpaya- < *rupāya-, cf. Middle Persian rubāy- ‘swipe, snatch’, rōb ‘robbery, plunder’). The phrase mūṭram ahyā magahyā is contrasted (with phraseological and phonic parallelism in the respective surrounding verses) by mīḍdam... ahyā magahyā (Yasna 53.7) ‘the prize of that gift’, referring to the reward for the commitment to Zoroaster, which entails prosperity for the righteous, while the karapans and their supporters disappear into the ground. Thus Yasna 48.10 contains no reference to intoxication, let alone condemnation of haoma.

§159 I recognize another play on words in the other Gathic passage cited in discussions of haoma, Yasna 32.14, which reads, ahyā grāhmō *ā hōiθōi / ni kāvayasciḥ xratūṣ (nī.)dadaṭ / *varacāhīcā fraidivā / hyaṭ visēntā dragvantem avō // hyaṭcā gāũs jaidyāi mraoi / yō dūraošam saocayaṭ avō //. The occurrence of the same word, avō, twice in the same position at the end of consecutive lines, is unusual, as is also the syntax of avō in c, where the dative *avarjīhe ‘for help’ is expected. I assume two Avestan words avō, 1) = Vedic ávas(-) ‘help, sustenance’ and 2) = Old Indic avās, ávas ‘down(ward)’. The latter avō may now also be recognized in Yasht 8.40, where the context demands ‘downward’, rather than a pleonastic hapax ‘water’; cf. also avō as preverb,
Yasht 13.44. The implication of avō is that the kavis, by patronizing the wicked karapan in connection with sacrificing the bovine (cf. Yasna 32.12) and burning the haoma-plant (dūraoša), in the long run lead him downward, i.e. to hell. I translate, 'For the loot [grāhmah-, cf. Old Indic gras 'to devour', Sogdian yrāmē 'wealth', etc.] of which (world) some kavis have constantly put their thoughts and energies down into the trap, whereby they set about to help the wicked one, whereby the bovine is ordered to be slain, (the wicked one) who burns the dūraoša-plant, for help/hell'. The form avō 'downward' concretizes the directionality suggested by ni. The phrase 'in the snare' is paralleled in the preceding stanza by 'in the House of Worst Mind' (aciśṭahyā dāmānē manan̄̄hō) in which the destroyers of the world have sought loot (grāhmō ḫīṣāṣāt). That both phrases refer to hell is shown by Yasna 46.6a, drujo . . . dāmān haēṭahyā 'the bonds of Lie' alongside Yasna 46.11a drujo *dāmānē 'the House of Lie' (note that dāman- = Old Indic dāman- 'bond', cf. Persian dām 'trap', etc., but probably with play on *dāman- 'establishment, dwelling', cf. Vedic rtāsya dhāman- 'foundations of Truth'). My interpretation of 32.14 is supported by the stanza immediately following it, 'Because of these things, the kavihood and karapanhood is going to perdition, along with those they ensnare (*dainī; Insler 1975), who will not be brought to those who rule at will over life in the House of Good Mind'.

§160 Thus Yasna 32.14 does not provide evidence for Zoroaster’s rejection of the commonplace sacrifice of cattle, nor does it prove that Zoroaster condemned the burning of dūraoša (the haoma-plant), much less that he repudiated the pressing and drinking of haoma. It does provide evidence for the ritual burning of the plant, of greatest importance for Dr. Flattery’s identification of the plant as Peganum harmala.

§161 The use of word play, together with syntactic ambiguity, reflect a general stylistic obscursantism characteristic of Indo-Iranian priestly poetry (for which cf. Boyce 1975b:9; Gonda, cited §244; on Zoroaster see Schwartz 1985a and 1986). An extension of play on sound is found in Yasna 11.9, where there occurs a series of forms based on Gothic words which resemble, in some instances only vaguely, the names of the numbers from one to ten. This bizarre paronomastic use of the Gathas provides a “count-down” (Schwartz 1986: 331-332) preceding the drinking of haoma, as Flattery has observed. This important connection of the text of the Gathas with the ritual use of haoma is of relevance for Flattery’s observations of parallelisms with the yagé cult, where sacred chants accompany the taking of the drug; cf. especially §§120 and 124 above.

ANNOTATIONS TO THE HOM YASHT

Yasna 10.8: urvāsman- (see §21)

§162 The association of urvāsman- (Old Avestan urvāzaman-) ‘bliss’ and aša- ‘Rightness, Truth’ probably has visionary connotations; cf. Kuiper (1964: 105).
Kuiper’s general views are not vitiated by taking the key passage, Yasna 30.1c ašā yecā yā raocōbīš darosatā urvāzā, as ‘. . . and [via hymns] for Aša (*aśāyēcā for */aśāyēcā/), the things which are to be seen in bliss (urvāzā) amidst the lights’. The paradisiacal aspect of the visionary experience is seen from Yasna 11.10, vahištam ahūm ašaοnm raocanam vispō.xăērām ‘the Best Existence of the righteous, full of light, having every comfort’, which echoes Yasna 31.7c: raocōbīs . . . xăōrā ‘the spaces/comforts amidst the lights’, where the context is literally visionary, as shown by Yasna 31.8 (see further Schwartz 1986:367-369).1

§163 Yasna Haptaŋhāiti 36.2, where ‘the Fire of Ahura Mazda’ is addressed as ‘most blissful’ and bade to come to the worshippers ‘with the most blissful of bliss’ (urvāzištahyā urvāzyā), is also relevant for the visionary aspect of urvāšman-, for as is made explicit in the final stanza, Yasna 36.6, Fire is the ‘corporeal manifestation’ (kahrpām) of Ahura Mazda, these lights here (imā raocā), i.e. on earth, whose ‘highest (manifestation) . . . is called the sun’. Since Yasna 36.1 begins with the theme of the ‘communion of Fire’ (vāraeqēna āōrō), keeping in mind the connection of Fire and Aša (Yasna 34.4; 46.7, etc.), one may compare Yasna 49.8: urvāzištam ašahyā . . . sarām ‘the most blissful union of Aša’ (cf. Yasna 49.9, where sarām is connected with daēnā ‘visions’), and with Yasna 32.1-2, which relates urvāzamā ‘bliss’, sarēmnō ‘united’, and ašā huš.haxā xāēnvātā ‘the Good Associate of sunny Aša’.2

§164 The contrast in Yasna 10.8 of aēšma- ‘violence, fury’ and urvāšman- ‘bliss’ may ultimately also go back to the visionary contexts of the Gathas; Yasna 49.4 collocates aēšma- and the vision of the deceitful one (dragvatō daēnā), contrasting with Yasna 49.5, ‘he who has united (sar-) his vision with Vohu Manah’, and ‘the most blissful (urvāzištam) union of Truth’; cf., in the parallel and concentrically related Yasna 49.8-9, the motif of “yoking” the vision with Truth. There is also an implied opposition of urvāzā and aēšmam, Yasna 30.1 and 6. The visionary associations of urvāšman- in Yasna 10.8 are amplified throughout the rest of the text by the request for lightness, brightness, and clarity of intoxication.

§165 The reading ranjaitē, with expected middle voice (cf. Old Indic rāṇijate), has support from manuscript variants. The form ranjaitī is not impossible in

1. Gāhāmbār 3.6 (whence Visperad 18.2 and in turn Pursīšnīhā 37, mentioned by Kuiper 1964:105) further collocates bliss (urvāsma-), Best Existence (vahištemka ahūm), Endless Lights (raocā) and boundless comforts (xăērā) as shown to the soul eschatologically (in contrast to the sufferings for the deceitful, sādrā dragvatō); the background here probably involves inter alia (see e.g. Yasna 12.1 and Yasht 12.36) a conflation of Yasna 31.7-8 with Yasna 45.7-8, which are united by cašmāinī ‘in a vision’ and other parallel features (Schwartz 1986: 368).

2. For the relation of Yasna 32.1-2 and Yasna 49.8-9, and the connection of vāraeqēna- and urvāzamān-, see Schwartz (1986:342-347). The centrality of the term urvāzaman- (*vražman-) in Iranian visionary experience explains the unique and elaborate oral acrostic suggestion of the word at Yasna 33.2c (cf. ibid. 342-345).
intransitive sense (cf. ranjat.aspa-, if ‘having horses which move lightly’. The factitive/causative form would be not ranjaiti but *ranjayeiti. Intransitive meaning for ranjaiti/e would parallel Yasna 10.19 ranjyō vazāinte ‘waft (quite) lightly’, where ranjyō is adverbial accusative neuter of the *comparative stem ranjyah-.

**Yasna 10.14: Avestan drafša- (see §21)**

§166 Apart from the unsuitability of āsītō to be the subject of the sentence, it is obvious that the translation of Bartholomae (Wolff 1910), with drafša- as ‘flag, banner’, is rather forced, and not very apt for the larger context. Particularly obscure here would be the relationship it introduces between the supposedly fluttering consumers of haoma and the “speaker” (‘me’) whose experiences of intoxication is the topic of the text.

§167 The translation I have suggested for Yasna 10.14 differs considerably from the interpretation of Bartholomae-Wolff, which reads: “Nicht sollen sie mir beliebig wie das Stierbanner sich einherbewegen, (wenn) sie (dich) geniessen; stracks vorwärts sollen sie gehen, (die) sich an dir begeistern; mit energischem Schaffensdrang sollen sie sich einstellen”. The translation of the rest of the passage (which I do not contest) reads: “Ich weihe dir, o ašaheiliger ašafördernder Haoma, diesen Leib hier, der mir schön gewachsen scheint”. My own interpretation for the disputed text is as follows: “May they (your intoxications), besetting me at their own impulse, not move me about as the trembling of a cow. May your intoxications come forth clear(ly); may they arrive bringing straightness of mind.” My rendering is based on the following considerations:

1. The construction mā mē . . . caire is parallel to mā té nīre ‘may nothing of yours flow away’ at Yasna 10.17; the unusual construction of the prohibitive particle with an infinitive in -e based on the present stem is characteristic of Yasna 10. The question thus is, what is the subject of caire?

2. For Bartholomae and others the subject is āsītō, taken as nominative plural of a stem āsīt- ‘consuming’, but the latter is highly suspect. A verb as- ‘to eat’ is unknown in Iranian outside of kahrkāsa-, originally *chicken-eater’, Avestan kahrkāsa-, Sogdian čarkas ‘buzzard, vulture’, Ossetic cergaes ‘eagle’, which may be regarded as a formation antedating Proto-Iranian. The attested verb for ‘consume’ (used with haoma-) is xvar-. Furthermore, āsīt-, with formant -it-, would also be isolated. By contrast, huzāmit- and (daēvō.)ynīt- are formed from attested stems in -i-, respectively huzāmi- and -γnī- (cf. vāraθraynī-); similarly Bartholomae s.v. huzāmit-. Rather than assign āsīta- to *as-, one may take it with the attested stem āsīta- ‘lying upon’ (in āsītō.gātu- ‘lying upon a place’), past passive participle of ā-say- ‘to lie upon’. In the present context āsītō may be either nominative plural of a root-stem āsīt- or nominative singular of the participle āsīta-, agreeing with drafšō.
(3) The interpretation of gaoš drafšō as 'bull-banner' ('banner bearing the image of a bull') is problematic in many ways. Contextually it is unlikely that this specific flag, allegedly a symbol of Iranian victory, would be introduced in a negative context. Formally, for 'bull-banner' one would expect a compound *gaoš drafšā- rather than gaoš drafša- 'the bull's (or, more usually without masculine specification, cow's) banner'. Bartholomae elaborated Darmesteter's acceptance of the Pahlavi translation gāw drafš 'bull banner' and his equation with the flag which, according to sources of the Islamic period, was established as the Iranian national standard, the dirafs-i Kāviyān, by the blacksmith Kāva, who made a banner out of his leather apron (or leather bag, or turban), which he attached to a pole or lance. According to Bartholomae's theory, the drafšō 'banner of the bull', Pahlavi gāw drafš, originally referred to a flag representing a bull, but was later reinterpreted as 'flag made of the skin of a bull'. While A. Christensen (1925: 37), in his fine study on Kāva's banner, accepted Bartholomae's views (and the translation upon which it is based), the numerous early descriptions he assembled of the dirafs-i Kāviyān (ibid., 35-36) in no way support the thesis that the banner had a bovine device, or was made of bull hide. Thus there is no ground for taking drafšō as 'banner' in a phrase with genitive gaoš.

4) An abundance of evidence points to the meaning 'flag, banner' as only one specific application of a broad original signification of drafša-. Old Indic drapsā- is 'banner' at RV 4.13.2, but it is more commonly attested in the meaning 'drop, droplet', and in fact refers to the drops of soma-. It is even possible (I shall not press the point) that at Yasna 10.14 drafša- echoes an old word-play on 'droplet' (of sauma) and 'fluttering, trembling'; cf. RgVeda 1.64.2, where drapsīnah, describing the atmospheric and martial Maruts, means both 'bearing banners' and 'pouring out drops', while in hymns to Agni, the god of fire, drapsā- 'droplet of soma' may also mean 'spark' (Gonda 1975: 242-243). Middle Iranian attests not only the noun drafša- 'banner' (Middle Persian drafš, Sogdian ṛō̄sp, ṛō̄yśp, cf. Armenian drauš), but also a verbal stem drafša- 'to tremble' (Middle Persian drafš-) as well as 'to shine' (Middle Persian drafš-), 'to blaze' (Parthian drfš-, Manichean Sogdian wyōrfš-). The association of meanings 'tremble' and 'shine', etc. is found for other words, e.g. Old Indic tvīṣ- 'violent agitation'; 'brilliance, glitter, splendor'; Greek σείω 'shake, quake', Σεύρως 'burning, Dog Star'; or Old Indic sphurāti 'darts, rebounds, springs, trembles'; 'flashes, glitters, gleams', and sphurāṇa- 'glittering, sparkling'; 'trembling, throbbing, vibrating', etc. The latter has more distant cognates with similar semantic range, e.g. Old Norse sparkr 'lively, brisk', English spark, sparkle, Latvian spirgsti 'glowing coals', Swedish dialects spräker 'lively'; 'shining, radiant'; språkkle 'spot, speckle'; Norse spronge 'ride quickly, sprinkle', English spring, etc. Clearly the image of agitating motion
gave rise to words for flashing and flickering light, as well as sprinkled droplets, etc.

§168 Thus the entire range of forms in Indic draps-, Iranian drafs-, may be relegated to a single etymon with meaning ‘to be in agitated motion’. The old etymology of drapsa-, drafsa- ‘flag’ from PIE drep- ‘to cut (cloth, etc.)’, whence Old Indic drāpi- ‘mantle, garment’, Lithuanian drāpanas ‘clothing’, Middle Persian drab- (Pahlavi dlp- [Nērangistān 170.10 and 25; Waag 1941: 92, 94]) ‘to wear’, must be abandoned. Old Indic drapsā-, Avestan drafsa- ‘flag’; drafsaka- > Armenian draušak ‘streamer on a crown’, are semantically parallel to Old Indic dhvaja- ‘banner’, Avestan dwō.ša- (dwaža-) ‘to flutter’. Parallel to the developments of drafsa- *‘be in agitation, shine’ on one hand, and *‘flutter’ on the other, would be Sogdian arđēf- (Manichean ropa,-, S. ṛṛy-) ‘to shine’ and Khotanese Saka drāh- (ppp. drautta-) ‘to fly’ (< *‘flutter the wings’ and/or ‘dart about’), both of which go back to a single stem, Old Iranian *drāfaya-. The -f- of the latter is probably due to the influence of drafsa- < drapsa. ThisOops! Something went wrong, please try reloading the conversation.
(varzyaŋuhāŋhō), clarity, and lightness. Thus we would have accord between verses 19 and 8, ranjyō vazāinte (tē) mađō ‘may (th) y intoxications move lightly’ and ranjaiti haomahe mađō ‘the intoxication of haoma is light’. See §178.

§171 The form mađō would ordinarily be the nominative plural of a root-stem (-)mad-, which could, in theory, mean ‘becoming intoxicated’ (cf. Vedic soma-mad-), but, as is actually shown by *aŋryō.madu.mad- (see below, §184), means ‘intoxicating (someone)’, from which an independent noun mad- ‘that which intoxicates, intoxication’ could easily arise. The gender of mad- is feminine, as is shown by imāsa, Yasna 10.19; see below, ad loc.

Yasna 10.14 and 19: Avestan fraša- (see §21)

§172 The word fraša- here is not the adverb ‘forward’ (as in the alliterative cliche fraša fra-ay-), limited to passages in the Vidēvdād, 6.27, 7.52, 18.29, which is probably a reinterpretation of fraša fra-ay- of the passage under discussion). Instead, fraša is nominative plural of the adjective fraša- discussed by Bailey (1971a: vii-xvi). Bailey has demonstrated beyond doubt that fraša- means ‘conspicuous, spectacular, splendid, wondrous’. Important among the evidence he marshals are: (1) the translation of Old Persian fraša- as Akkadian bunū, verbal noun from bānu ‘be bright, lively; make beautiful, be magnificent’; (2) the Avestan collocations, Yasna 19.10, srītra- ‘beautiful’, abdana- ‘wondrous’, and Vidēvdād 1.20, bāmya- ‘radiant’; (3) the Pahlavi collocation abd fraškard; (4) Armenian hrašk- ‘marvel’, hrašakert ‘extraordinary’; (5) Middle Persian frašagar translated by Persian zāhir ‘manifest’; and (6) Middle Persian frašemurw, Georgian p’aršamangi ‘peacock’, literally ‘marvelous bird, bird with spectacular colorations’.

§173 The identification of fraša- in Yasna 10.14 and 19 with fraša- ‘conspicuous’, etc. now becomes clear from the parallelism of fraša frayauntu tē mađō and raoxşna frayauntu tē mađō, where raoxşna is ‘brilliant, bright, splendid’; both adjectives fraša- and raoxşna- are appropriate descriptions of intoxications (referring to the vivid quality of the visions), but could hardly be used of those intoxicated. It may be noted in passing that the use of fraša- as an epithet of haoma is probably connected with frašmi-, occurring exclusively as an epithet of haoma, Yasna 10.21 (where it is parallel to the color term zāiri-), and further Yasna 57.19, Yasht 8.33. The meaning of frašmi- should be something like ‘glowing’, but the relationship with fraša- may have been associative, rather than etymological; compare Gershevitch (1959:233).

---


For the meaning of fraša-, see now J. Narten (1986:197-203).
§174 The identification of fraša-as an epithet of haoma- now also helps explain the characterization, transmitted by Bolos of Mendes apud Pliny, of the Persian plant "theombrotion" (whose description otherwise suits Peganum harmala used as haoma, see §93 n.25), 'like a peacock in its colorings'. The Old Iranian phrase *fraša- mřgα- 'spectacular bird' yielded the word for 'peacock' not only in Middle Persian frašemurw, but also in Parthian *frašamarg, reflected in the Georgian form. The adjective fraša- appears to have disappeared from everyday Iranian speech, for it is not attested beyond Old Iranian, except in Armenian hrαšk, which may go back to an older stratum of the Parthian vocabulary; its absence not only from our large corpus of Middle Persian texts, but also from the fairly abundant Sogdian texts, points to the relatively early general desuetude of fraša-. Thus, by the time of Bolos of Mendes, the Persians called the peacock by a term no longer comprehensible, 'the fraša- bird', or 'the bird Fraša'. The word fraša-, constantly heard alongside raoxšna- 'bright' in the liturgy to Haoma, could then be associated with 'peacock'. This could give rise to a popular belief in a particular variety of haoma plant with the colors of a peacock.

§175 The disappearance of the word fraša- in Persia eventually affected the word for peacock as well. Middle Persian frašemurw, frašamurw was replaced by New Persian firišta-mury 'angel-bird', where firišta 'angel' (Middle Persian frēštag) replaced the no longer meaningful fraša-. From Arabic, Persian has the better known word for peacock, ūavūs.

§176 I would explain the early obsolescence of fraša- as due to its being subsumed by its development as a technical term of theology. The starting point is the Gothic phrase forašām (ahūm) kar-/dā- 'make (the world) *distinguished, excellent'. In the Gathas this referred to a situation regarded as imminently possible; note especially aťca tōi væm hyāmā yōi im forašām karanaon ahūm 'Thus may we be those who will make this world excellent' (Yasna 30.9). It is probably significant that the three other Gothic attestations of foraša- are connected with haiťya- 'something' actual, real, true' and vasnā 'according to wish': xsmākā xšādrā ahūrą forašām vasnā haiťyām dā ahūm 'By your power, Lord, Thou shalt make this world in actuality excellent', Yasna 34.15; yō mōi ašāi haiđīm hācā varašaili zaratuštrāi hyaţ vasnā forašō.tomam 'He who, in accordance with righteousness, shall accomplish as actual for me, Zarathushtra, that which is most excellent, in accordance with (my?) wish', Yasna 46.19; dātā aŋhauš aroaţ vohũ mānaŋhā haiťyā.varaštām hyaţ vasnā forašō.tomam 'The Creator of the world shall promote, through Good Thinking, as an actual accomplishment, that which is most excellent, in accordance with (His) wish', Yasna 50.11. The fraša- is here something brought into reality, haiťya-, from the plane of wish, vasnā (the concept of vasnā may involve more than 'will'; see Schwartz [1986:387 n.15]). While haiťya- may correctly be translated 'true' (like its cognates Old Indic satya-, Ossetic ææcg)
the Pahlavi inevitably translates it throughout the Avesta not by the usual words for ‘true’, rāst, wābārīgān, wizurd, but by āskārāg ‘patent, overt, manifest’. This glossation must be based on an early exegetical tradition where haiuthya- ‘true’ was understood as that which is patent, verifiable, ascertainable, in contrast to truth as a matter of ethics or religious faith. This accords precisely with the prehistory of haiuthya- < PIE *Eṃtya-, from *Eś(e/o)nt-, participle of *Ees- ‘to be’; hence *Eṃtya- is basically ‘as something is’, cf. Old Indic sa(n)ī- ‘real (English cognate sooth), virtuous’, but German Sünde, English sin.

§177 With regard to the statement in Pseudo-Democritus that theombrotion is drunk by Persian kings against bodily disorders and instability of intellect, cf. the attributes of haoma (healing, increasing insight, etc.) in the Hōm Yash (§84). For Pseudo-Democritus’ statement that the Persian kings drank theombrotion to increase the sense of justice, cf. the Hōm Yash’s characterization of haoma as ‘truly the source of Truth/Rightness’ (haiithimca aṣāhe xā), Yasna 10.4, and the epithet ‘furthering Truth’ (aṣa-vāzah-, aṣa-vazah-) uniquely applied to haoma (Yasna 10.1 and 14, etc.). The institutional application of the justice-manifesting consumption of haoma was the ordeal; see §§150-159. For Pseudo-Democritus’ term hermesias, see §90 n.25.

§178 In Yasna 10.19, the separation of imāsa from from tē mađo, which has previously impeded translation, parallels that of āsītō . . . tē mađo at Yasna 10.8, again with fraša frayantu. Note the alliteration fraša frayantu, the assonance fraša . . . raoxšna and the alliteration raoxšna . . . ranjyō. For reasons of meter/rhythm and parallelism, *tē mađo must be posited after vazāinte, whose -te caused haploglyphic disappearance of *tē. The form vazāinte ‘waft, fly, move forth’ may echo Yasna 10.14 ašavāzō ‘making Rightness/Truth move forth’, cf. Yasna 10.1 ašavazāḥ, both epithets of Haoma.

§179 In Yasna 11.10, while pairi.tē haoma . . . daśami is repeated from Yasna 10.8, it is expanded by the request of reciprocity, pairi.mē . . . dayā . . . haoma; this parallelism may extend to ašava . . . ašaonām. Cf. also the parallel of havanuḥāi ‘for well-being’ (from hu- ‘good’ and ahu- ‘existence’) plus așavastāi vis-à-vis vahīṣtam ahūm ‘Best Existence’ plus așaonām. I emend (θwaxšāi) *haomahe (mašāi) for haomāi in consideration of both form and meaning; cf. haomahe mađo (Yasna 10.8). The erroneous haomāi is a simple instance of “attraction” to the surrounding datives.

Yasna 10.15: Avestan ūnā- (see §90)

§180 The interpretation of this passage rests on the meaning of two words, ūnąm and śvitō.xarādāyā. I take the first simply as accusative of ūnā- = ūnā-, literally ‘empty place, hole (cf. H.-P. Schmid 1969: 124 seq.; 1983), here probably = ‘cunus’. For the second hapax, śvitō.xarādāyā, I follow the reading preferred in Geldner’s edition. I see the form as parallel to mairīyāyā, i.e. the
gen. of an -ā- stem fem. adj., śvītō.xarədā-, obviously a compound. The first member, *śvīta-, I take as 'endowed with, characterized by', and identify it with the second element of satāvīta- and utāvīta-, where *śvīta- is equivalent to the possessive suffix of the parallel forms satāvant- and ūtāvant- in Yasht 2.14. *śvīta- would be the past passive participle of avi-ay-'herzugehen zu, ankom- men'. The second member, *xarədā-, has been recognized as the cognate of Khwarezmian pçxṟō, New Persian payxāl 'excrement (of animals and birds), refuse', New Persian āxāl 'peel, trash, discards', New Persian (loan word) xard 'mud', Shughni šar-, Yidgha xawd-, Yaghnobi xard-, Pashto xar-el 'to defecate', Khotanese sanḵkal- 'to stain', etc. Thus, śvītō.xarədā would mean 'filthy, dirty'. The Sanskrit translation paribhṛastabuddhi- 'with impaired intellect', which misled Bartholomae into making his improbable analysis *śvītō.xarədāy- < *a-vitaxra-dāy-, is probably based on an erroneous interpretation involving xarəd- as equivalent to Middle Persian xrad (xraḏ) or New Persian xirad 'wisdom, intellect' (Avestan xratu-); this also motivated the misreading śvītō.xradāyā.4

Yasna 11.2: Avestan bāšar-

§181 Hoffmann’s (1986:166 and 179, fn.4) translation of bāšar as “Pfleger” instead of ‘rider’ is hard to accept, in view of the clear context for ‘rider’ (‘may thou not be a yoker of steeds, a mounter of steeds, a harnesser of steeds, who do not entreat me for [showing] strength in the crowded district assembly of many men’), and the symmetry horse : rider (bāšar-) :: haoma : drinker (xāšar-). There may have been a general expansion of the agent suffix to include middle voice verbs, or a special creation of bāšar- in the specific context of Yasna 11.2 by analogy with zaotar- and xāšar (where there is also rhyme).

Yasna 10.5: Avestan nāmy-(āsu-) (see §87)

§182 Against Gershevitch’s (1974:48) translation of nāmy-(āsu-) as ‘(having) sweet (stalks)’ stands the Pahlavi translation narm-tāg, ‘soft stalked’. The meanings ‘soft’ and ‘sweet’ are also found for Sogdian namr- in C 2 (spelled nmr-) and glossed ‘sweet’ in Psalm 19.11 (nmry-str). Furthermore note Avestan namīsta-, superlative of the quality expressed by namah- ‘homage’ < ‘bending’, both words being collocated at Yasna Haptaŋḥāti 36.2 in a series of figureae etymologicae. Clearly *nāmi- is a Caland’s Law variant of Old Iranian *namra- ‘pliant, soft’. The semantic development of the vrddhi *nāmra- to ‘sweet’ is an inner-Sogdian phenomenon, cf. French doux, etc.

Pahlavi translations of Avestan mad- (see §22 n.2)

§183 It is a curious fact that the Pahlavi translators did not understand straightforward forms of the Avestan root mad- ‘to intoxicate’ (except for where the context permits equation of the noun maδa- ‘intoxication’ with maδu- = ‘wine’). The relevant Pahlavi glosses are based on mδδ- (which Iranologists have tacitly rationalized to *mδδ-, for example Bartholomae’s madišn for mδδšn’, madēnītan for mδδynītn’; etc. In the translations of Visperad 8.1 and apparently Nērangistān 30, the Pahlavi glosses in mδδ- are interpreted as forms from meh ‘greater’ (mehēnītan ‘to increase’, etc.). In the translation of the Hōm Yasht (Yasna 9-11), this mδδ- is elaborated by glosses which show it was taken as referring to knowledge. Thus maδδ (Yasna 10.14; 10.19) is glossed vidyā by Neriosengh, and maδδem mruye (Yasna 9.17) is glossed mδδšn’. gōw tis-ē-m pad frahang gōw ku-m dānāgīh bawād ‘speak *māyišn, i.e. say something to me in instruction: that I may have knowledge’. (For the latter passage Bartholomae’s emendation of the straightforward sīs-ē-m ‘something to me’ as ucitation of (a) drinking intoxicating (alcoholic) beverages’ (maiδyanaṃ parō xarātōtī), there occurs the gloss az may xwarīšn ‘after drinking wine’, further explained as may xwarēnd mast be-bawēnd ‘they drink wine, they become drunk’. Avestan maδa- is translated as Pahlavi may in Nērangistān 30, where hurām xaraitī maδō aspaya, payānō ‘drinks kumiss, (i.e.) the intoxicating beverage (not ‘Wein!’) of mare’s milk’ is glossed by Pahlavi hur xwarad may ān-iz asp pēm ‘drinks kumiss, the “wine” which is mare’s milk’; the mistranslation was no doubt furthered by the genuine collocation of hurā and the proper word for wine, maδu-, in Vidēvdād 14.17 (hurayā vā maδūs vā). Here the phonically similar (but originally unrelated) words for ‘wine’ and ‘intoxication, intoxicant’ merged in translation as an ad hoc broadened concept of wine (may) for any alcoholic beverage. This is of interest for the solution of the general glossation in Pahlavi of the Avestan words pertaining to intoxication.

§184 The Indo-Iranian verbal stem for ‘bring about intoxication’ would have been a causative stem māḍaya-, well attested in Old Indic. One may assume for Old Persian a cognate *māḍaya-, which lies behind the relevant Pahlavi forms in mδδ-. Thus the earliest stratum of Pahlavi glossation correctly rendered the Avestan forms in māδδ- for ‘intoxicate, intoxication.’ However, *māḍ(ay)a- underwent the regular change to Middle Persian māy-, homophonous with forms for ‘copulate’ (from the old root māy-; thus mδδšn’ is both ‘intoxication’ and ‘copulation’!), bringing about the Middle Persian exploitation of the old past participle masta- for the concept of intoxication, and making mδδ-, i.e. māy- *‘intoxicate’, no longer correctly comprehensible. Hence mδδ- was treated differently in various contexts. It was also taken from meh ‘greater’, or
left unexplained, e.g. for Yasna 10.8, where $\text{m\'d\'s\'n}$ merely elicits a statement of helplessness, $\text{m\'d\'s\'n} \ ab\acute{\text{a}}\acute{\text{y\acute{e}d\ guftan}}$ ‘one must say $\text{m\'d\'s\'n}$’. The Avestan reference is to the violent intoxications, $\text{ma\ddot{\text{d\'a}}\acute{\text{y\acute{h\o}}}}$, against those of $\text{haoma}$. However, the word $\text{mad(a)}$- in reference to $\text{haoma}$ was foregrounded by the importance of the sacred beverage; some interpretation was necessary. Two factors determined the interpretation: (1) the belief that $\text{haoma}$ conferred spiritual benefits; and (2) the apparent sense of $\text{ma\ddot{\text{d\'a}}}$- (and $\text{mai\ddot{o}ya}$-) elsewhere for an intoxicating beverage used ceremonially, i.e. ‘wine’. Taken together, the two factors would give the impression that the $\text{ma\ddot{\text{d\'a}}}$- of $\text{haoma}$ was in some way a spiritual analogue of the intoxication of alcohol. As noted earlier, the Middle Persian word for ‘intoxicated’ is $\text{mast}$, whence $\text{mast\'ih}$ ‘intoxication’. The Avestan cognate was observed to occur in $\text{\'ay\acute{\text{r\acute{y\o}}}.\text{ma\ddot{\text{d\'u}}}.\text{m\'a\acute{\text{s\'t\'a}}}}$- ‘highly intoxicated by the first treading of wine’ ($\text{Pursi\acute{n\acute{b}h\acute{a}}}$ 31), which, as analyzed by K. M. Jamaspasa and H. Humbach (1971: I, 49), is superlative of $\text{\'ay\acute{\text{r\acute{y\o}}}.\text{ma\ddot{\text{d\'u}}}.\text{ma\ddot{\text{d\'a}}}$.- $\text{mad}$-, for which the Pahlavi has $\text{k\acute{e}-\acute{s} \ an \ i \ mast \ ud \ ay\acute{\text{r\acute{y\o}} \ mast\'ih}$ ‘whose intoxication is that of one who is intoxicated, which is of high value’. A form almost identical to Pahlavi $\text{mast\'ih}$ is Avestan $\text{masti-}$ ‘knowledge’ (from the root $\text{mand}$-), correctly translated by $\text{fra\acute{z\acute{a}n\acute{a}g\acute{h}}}$ for the two attestations in the $\text{H\text{"{o}m \ Yasht}$, Yasna 9.17 and 9.20. In the second Avestan passage it is stated that $\text{haoma}$ grants, to those who avidly study the sacred text, holiness ($\text{sp\acute{a}n\acute{a}h}$-) and $\text{masti-}$. In the first passage $\text{masti-}$ concludes a series of nine things for which $\text{haoma}$ is invoked; the series begins with $\text{ma\ddot{\text{d\'a}}}$-, so that $\text{ma\ddot{\text{d\'a}}}$- and $\text{masti-}$ both frame the list. This associative parallelism of $\text{ma\ddot{\text{d\'a}}}$- and $\text{masti-}$ allowed the following analogy: Pahlavi $\text{mast\'ih}$ (Avestan $\ast$ $\text{masti}$-) ‘intoxication’ : Avestan $\text{ma\ddot{\text{d\'a}}}$- ‘intoxication, intoxicant, alcoholic beverage’ :: Avestan $\text{masti-}$ ‘knowledge’ : $\text{ma\ddot{\text{d\'a}}}$- ‘x’, whereby ‘x’ = ‘knowledge’. The latter development could not have taken place if, during the later period of Pahlavi glossation, it was believed that $\text{haoma}$ was intoxicating, which would exclude “spiritualization” of $\text{ma\ddot{\text{d\'a}}}$- via $\text{masti-}$ ‘wisdom’.
AVESTAN TERMS FOR THE
SAUMA PLANT

Etymology of *soma-/haoma- (see §45)
§186 This is the proper place to take account of an unusual explanation of *soma/haoma offered by a distinguished Iranist, Sir Harold Bailey (1971; 1972:105; 1975:19; 1979:491; 1984; 1985). As against a universal consensus that *soma-/haoma- has its origin in the Indo-Iranian root *sau- ‘to crush or grind by pressing with a pestle in a mortar’ with suffix -ma- (see §262 below), Professor Bailey, in a favorable response to Mr. Wasson’s theory that the sauma plant is a mushroom, proposed that *sauma- have its origin in a word meaning ‘mushroom’. It would be a remarkable phenomenon for there to have arisen a central ritual of pounding a mushroom (and, eventually, a twiggy substitute of wholly different appearance) because of similarity in sound between ‘mushroom’ (unattested for *sauma-) and ‘pound in a mortar’; it would be as if English-speaking ritualists, having instituted a cult of a psychotropic mushroom, would have the word mushroom prompt them to innovate a ritual of constructing sacred rooms (and piously fill them with oatmeal mush).

§187 Before proceeding to the etymology itself, it is worth observing the attestation RgVeda 1.84.8 (as translated by Bailey 1984:17) has ‘when will (Indra) spurn [spurāt] the giftless mortal, like the kṣūmpa-plant with foot?’ This is the only clear mention of mushrooms in the RgVeda, and it is interesting that here the mushroom is the exemplum of something despised. This is not definitive evidence against the soma-mushroom theory, but is nevertheless relevant. Bailey attempts to bridge the forms kṣūmpa- and Indo-Iranian *sauma- by taking k- as prothetic. While he does not note the fact, all the other instances of Indo-Iranian k- prothesis involve Proto-Indo-European (PIE) *sw-. Thus Old Iranian *xšv(a)ib/p- ‘to move quickly from side to side, to whip’ (the respective meanings of Old Norse svίfa and Latvian svaipīt), cf. Avestan xšvaēpā- ‘rear, *tail’, Old Indic kṣip- ‘throw, swing’ (probably dissimilated from *kṣvip-); Avestan xšvid- ‘milk’, Old Indic (lexicographical) kṣvidyati ‘becomes moist’ (Latvian svaīdīt ‘to smear’, sviēst ‘butter’); and Old Indic kšvedati ‘hums’, Pashto špeč- ‘to whistle’ (Old Slavic svistati ‘to whistle’). Some of these forms were indeed alluded to by Bailey, who also cites the words for ‘six’. However, the initial velar is lacking for ‘six’ in Old Indic, and the ch
of the Prakrit forms, rather than reflect *kṣ- and unmotivated palatalization, may go back merely to s-, cf. Pischel (1900:§211). Possibly one should proceed from PIE *swekš, becoming Proto-Indo-Iranian *svaḵš; the Indic form may reflect lost -v- by analogy with sapta ‘seven’, and subsequent assimilation of *saṣ to ṛṣ; an independent assimilation of *svaṣ to śvāṣ may lie behind the Iranian x̣svaš, with s-, as regularly, preceding an older initial cluster *ṣC-. Thus ‘six’ should not be ranged with the other forms in Proto-Indo-Iranian that have *ksv- alongside cognate forms, in other languages, reflecting *sw-.

§188 If kṣūmpa- belongs with German Schwamm, etc., it would be a replacement of *kṣvāmpra- or the like. This situation could be explained by a PIE ablaut alternation *swómPo-: *sumPō- (perhaps originally nominative *swómbs(h) > *swómps: genitive *sumb(h)ós, etc., cf. English swamp: sump), giving, via analogical leveling, *kṣvāmp: *kṣumpás, and finally a single compromise thematic kṣūmpa-. Thus the k- of kṣūmpa- would ultimately have the same origin as the k- of kṣvidyati, etc.

§189 While the (k)ksv- of kṣūmpa- thus has parallels in such forms as kṣvidyati, the k- is nevertheless remarkable, for one would regularly expect *sv-, and not Proto-Indo-Iranian *kš-, Old Indic *ksv-, for the entire series of words, ‘mushroom’ included. It is notable that an irregularity is also found in Greek σομφός ‘spongy, fungous’, against the expected ὄμφος (< ὀμφός < *foumφός < *swompho-). It therefore becomes conceivable that the irregularities of both the Indic and Greek forms for ‘fung(o)us’ represent a single PIE variant of *swombh-, i.e. *kswombh-. PIE *ksv- would have been simplified via *sw to Greek σ-. A PIE variation *(k)s- would also explain the hitherto puzzling series of Greek words with cognates pointing to PIE *sw-, words which, apart from the initial sigma, appear, like σομφός, to be Hellenic in phonology, and have meanings which make it unlikely that they were borrowed from a non-Hellenic language. These include σαρδίζω ‘deride’ (Welsh chwarddu ‘to laugh’, Sogdian sxward- [Old Iranian *us-hvard-], ‘to shout’, Avestan kavarada- ‘sorcerer, γόης’, σέλας ‘gleam’, σεληνή ‘moon’ (Old Indic svatati ‘shines’, Greek ἕλιον ‘sunlight’, ἑλάνη ‘torch’); σύη ‘silence’ (German Schweigen) and σωπή ‘silence’ (Old High German giswifôn ‘contiscercere’, etc.); and σουφετός ‘sweepings, draggings’, (Gothic alswairban, biswairban ‘to wipe off’, Old Frisian swerva ‘to crawl’); semantically Greek σαίρω ‘sweep, clean’, σόρω ‘sweep, drag, crawl’ from PIE twer- ‘to turn’ may have been influenced by PIE *swerb-.

§190 Particularly interesting is Greek σιμός ‘bending upwards, convex, snub’, with cognates not only in Germanic (Norwegian svima ‘to reel’, Old English svima ‘vertigo’, Middle Low German swāien, sweimen ‘to swing, sway’, and Celtic (Welsh chwid ‘agile turn’, chwin ‘movement’), but also in Slavic (Ukrainian xvíjaty [-s-a] ‘to tilt [reel]’, Russian xvéjat’sja ‘to move’). These words are from the same ultimate root as Avestan xšvāpā-, Old Norse swīfa. Here Slavic xv- (against regular sv- from PIE *sw-) would parallel Indo-Iranian
*kšv*- (Old Indic kšv-, Old Iranian xšv-) and Greek s- as the reflexes of PIE *ksw-, variant of *sw-. The same Slavic cluster is found in Russian xvórjǐ 'ill' (Middle High German swěr 'pain, illness, swelling', Avestan xara- 'wound'), where again PIE *(k)s*w- should be reconstructed. Note that the regular Slavic reflex of PIE *ks*- is x-, e.g. Polish chybać, Czech chybatí 'to swing, sway, be in agitation': Old Indic kṣubh-, Avestan xšaob- 'be in agitation'; Old Slavic xudů 'small', xuždii 'smaller': Old Indic kṣudra-/kṣodiyas- "small/smaller".

§191 The language groups concerned, i.e. Indo-Iranian, Greek, and Slavic, are precisely those where a difference in the reflexes of *ksw- and *sw- is expectable. In phonetic terms, the *k-* prosthesis of *ksw- may be explained phonetically as originating in a tense onset accompanying a fortis pronunciation of the cluster sw-, and is due to the close relationship of w and velarity (cf., among many examples, *sw- and *tw becoming k' in Armenian). This phonetic intensification would correspond to the "expressive" nature of words in question, which refer to raucousness and high-pitched noise, glowing and glimmering, agitated motion, etc. In some instances the original "expressive" factor can no longer be precisely identified. In these cases the relevant feature may have developed secondary sound-symbolism. Thus, in Greek σιγή and σιωτή the sigma may express sudden cessation of sound; cf. English shh, hush. In Avestan xšvid- 'milk' the xšv- is hard to separate from that of Avestan xšvipta-(*xšviťa-) 'milk (obtained from a milk animal)', Sogdian xšīft-, Sarikoli xevd, etc. 'milk', explainable as 'that which is obtained by rapid or agitated motions' or 'sped forth', root *xšv(a)lp/-b-, but the relative chronology of the semantic developments is unknown, as is the connection of Old Indic kṣira-, Persian šīr 'milk'. The meaning 'milk' for *xšviťa- may be based upon xšvid-, where the prevolarization could be related to a basic word for dripping, trickling, soaking through, etc. For Sogdian xšīft-, see further §203 n.1.

§192 The latter possibility would be supported by Old Indic kṣūmpa-, Greek σοµφός < PIE *(k)swomP-. For *swomP- I assume a basic meaning 'swamp(y)', whence 'fung(o)us', a priori more likely than the reverse order of semantic development. For the further connections I would compare PIE *seup/b--, whence Old Indic sūpa- 'soup', Germanic names for 'soup' (and the like), 'sop, soppiness', and verbs for 'slurp' and 'sip'; *seup/b- is itself one of several PIE roots *seu- 'to exude liquid, be moist', whence various words for soakage, sogginess, etc. Thus, with nasal infix, *sumP- and (with reverse ablaut) swomP- 'soppiness, swamp(iness)'.

§193 There is in fact a considerable difference between *sauma- and the Germanic words for 'mushroom', etc., which would have given in Indic not *svama-(*suama-) or *suma-, let alone *sauma-, but *svamb(h)a- or *sumb(h)a-. The PIE etymon 'mushroom' ('swampy, boggy, moist') is reconstructed *swomb(h). The *-mb(h)- is clearly reflected in Germanic, e.g. Old Norse svoppr, Danish svamp 'mushroom' and 'sponge'; cf. English swamp and, with zero grade, sump; *-mbh- is reflected by -mm- in Gothic swamms (sic), Old
English (mete-)swamm ‘mushroom’, etc., Old High German retains, alongside swam(m), German Schwamm, the cluster -mb- in swamb; Greek σομφός stands to swamb, Schwamm, as Greek γόμφος ‘lateral tooth’ stands to Old High German kamb, German Kamm ‘comb’. As in Germanic, the disappearance of b after m is inconsistently realized in Iranian: Khotanese huma- would be like Khotanese dumaa-, Avestan duma-, against Sogdian  ámb, Middle Persian ámb (alongside ámb) ‘tail’; PIE * ámb, cf. Old High German zumpfo ‘penis’. Since there is no way to bridge the Proto-Indo-Iranian forms *svamb(h)a, *sumb(h)a- ‘spongy object, mushroom’ and *sauma-, the connection must be abandoned.

§194 Bailey (1979) himself has recently seemed to abandon the sauma-mushroom identification while apparently still advocating the possibility that *sauma- is **the spongy plant’ (note that he now adds Khotanese haba- ‘balsam’ from *humba- to the etymology). Bailey (1979: 162) writes:

In RV 10.94.3 reference to the stalks of soma cites the vrksasya sakharm arunasya ‘the branch of the red vrkša-plant’. Avestan varasa-, Old Indic vrks- seem to have survived in Yazghulami warš ‘a herb which blinds cattle’, and Shughni ‘a hill grass’, if these are from *varasa-; it could then give a meaning ‘plant with root, shoot, or stalk’, whence later ‘tree’. The phrase vrks-... arunasya- with ‘branch’ hardly suits a mushroom.

§195 Again on a relationship of Khotanese huma-, etc. to soma-, Bailey notes (1979: 491): “The use of the ‘branch of the red tree’, vrksasya sakharm arunasya, causes difficulty”; here he also refers to RV 10.94.3 together with the Middle Persian description of hém i spēd ‘the white haoma as a tree (draxt) or plant (urwar) (see also Bailey 1974: 374 and 371). It may be added that this Vedic and Middle Persian evidence for the unmushroomlike nature of the sauma plant is completed by the Avestan mention of trunks (varṣaīīṣ), shoots (frasparāgyo) and outgrowths (fravāxšō), as well as stalks (−asū- = Vedic anśu-), Yasna 10.5; Yasna 9.16. The picture of a chlorophyll-producing plant is further borne out by Avestan zairīgaona-, to which correspond Aramaic zargōn ‘vine’, Middle Persian and Parthian zargōn, Sogdian zarγōn ‘greenish, vegetable’. All of this goes against the identification of sauma as the mushroom Amanita muscaria, but is suited by the identification as Peganum harmala.

§196 Bailey (1985), following Benveniste (1929), connects haoma via Plutarch’s ομωμί (on which see §52 n.10) to Greek ὁμομίς and hence to Greek ὁμομον slowm, Syriac humāmā and Arabic humāmā. For the series of forms he claims an original Iranian *humāma, consisting of huma ‘soft’ plus suffix -ama-. The connection of haoma with ὁμομίς is, however, untenable (see §269) and derivation from Iranian *huma- ‘soft’, and thereby connection at the linguistic root level with haoma-, provides no botanical specificity. Bailey’s citation of Old Indic saumya- ‘soft’ alongside soma- does not make it clear that saumya-really means ‘like soma-’ and hence, inter alia, ‘gentle’ (rather than ‘physically soft’). Against Bailey’s etymological manipulations, whereby haoma- would
be ‘something soft’, the traditional explanation of *soma/-haoma- remains unshakable, supported as it is by proper morphological analysis, by its textually associated cognate forms for ‘mortar’, ‘ritual pressing’, etc., and by the actual method of preparation.

More on mushrooms, and the alleged PIE *bhongo- ‘psychotrope’

§197 There exists a series of phonologically similar words in Indo-European, Uralic, and northeastern Siberian languages which seems to bring together mushrooms and other plants under a shared characteristic, a narcotic effect. This linguistic material has had a significant role in the history of the identification of *soma/haoma- and other issues pertaining to the use of psychotropic plants by the Indo-Iranian peoples. The forms consist of (1) words for ‘mushroom, squamous substance’ and likely cognates. These include: in Indo-European, Latin fungus and Greek σφόγγος; in the Finno-Ugric branch of Uralic, Mordvin pango ‘mushroom, fungus, lichen’, Ostyak paŋk, etc., Vogul paŋx, paŋk, etc. ‘Amanita muscaria’; Ostyak paŋkal-, paŋkat- ‘after eating Amanita muscaria, become intoxicated and/or sing; prophesy, heal shamantically’; Vogul pōŋk-, etc. ‘become intoxicated (by any means)’; in the Samoyed group of Uralic, Ket hango ‘Amanita muscaria’ and Tavgi faŋka- ‘be intoxicated’; and in Chukotkan languages, Chukchi, Koryak, and Kamchadal pøŋ- ‘mushroom’; (2) Words for drug plants in Indo-Iranian: Old Indic bhaṅgā-, bhaṅgā- (already AtharvaVeda) ‘hemp’, also (ṚgVeda) epithet of soma; Avestan baŋha- ‘an abortive plant’; Middle Persian bang ‘henbane’; Persian bang ‘henbane, hemp’.

§198 Before discussing the views on the history of drug plants to which these linguistic data have given rise, it will be of help to discuss the forms of the first (“mycological”) group. The etymology of Greek σφόγγος (and its variant σπόγγος), Latin fungus, have been usually discussed by Indo-Europeanists together with Armenian sunk (sounk), with the conclusion that all derive from an unknown “Mediterranean” source. This position allows an escape from accounting for the difficult phonological details. Another solution, proposed by H. Pedersen (1900; I have not been able to obtain the original article and am dependent on the summary of Roman Jakobson apud Wasson 1968: 319-320), also operates with the Greek, Latin, and Armenian forms, to which it adds also Old Slavic goba ‘sponge’ and kindred Slavic forms also meaning ‘mushroom’. Pedersen suggested that goba and Old High German swamb could go back to PIE *sgwhombho-, but, in order to account for the Greek, Latin and Armenian forms, he alternately proposed an original *sphwongo-, becoming through metathesis *sgwompho-, with variant *sgwombho-.

§199 An original *sphwongo- is a priori unlikely, since PIE initial clusters of two labials, PIE *p(h)w- and *bhw-, cannot otherwise be reconstructed. Furthermore, PIE *sp(h)- would give Armenian *p’, not *s’, while the proposed
variant of the metathesis, *sgwombho-, would yield Old Slavic *gvomba and ProtoGermanic *skwambaz, not *swambaz (cf. Old Norse svoppnr).

§200 Old High German swamb, etc. should be (against Pedersen) related to Greek σομφός (see above, §181), and separate from Greek sp(h)όνγος and Latin fungus. Armenian sunk does not belong here either. It is of Caucasian origin, most likely South Caucasian (Kartvelian), cf. Georgian sok’o ‘mushroom’; (see Klimov [1964: 165] where Armenian sunk (and sokon) are given, with Ossetic and Nakh-Daghestanian forms, which are probably also from the Kartvelian). The -n- of sunk may be due to the influence of Armenian spung ‘sponge’ (from Greek), cf. sung, variant of sunk, which therefore need not be of “West Armenian” origin.

§201 This leaves Greek sp(h)όνγος, Latin fungus, and Old Slavic goba to account for. If we start with PIE *bhongo-, we get fungus as regular reflex, sp(h)όνγος via s-prothesis, perhaps with additional influence of α(ϕ)ομφός, and goba via metathesis of *boga. This metathesis would be motivated by the semantic similarity of Balto-Slavic *gumba-, Lithuanian gumbas ‘convexity, round excrecence’, gumbras ‘boil’, cf. Pashto yumba ‘boil’, and also by Old Slavic *goba ‘lip, snout’; for the relevant forms see Vasmer (1950:- 316).

§202 It is noteworthy that the meanings and geographical distribution of the forms Greek sp(h)όνγος ‘sponge’, Latin fungus ‘mushroom, fungus, lichen, mildew’ and Slavic *goba ‘mushroom, sponge’ points to the meaning of *bhongo- not as ‘sponge’ (originally a specific Mediterranean development of the Greek), nor even as ‘mushroom’, but ‘spongy, soppy, swampy substance’, of which fungi are the most common exemplars. The meaning would come close to that of German Schwamm ‘sponge/mushroom’, whose cognates include words for swamp and sump. As I have proposed (§191), *swombho-ultimately means ‘soupy moisture’, to root *seup-; thus *bhongo- could have doublet *bhoğno-, whence Russian bagnó, ‘low swampy place’, Ukrainian bahnó ‘swamp’, etc., and perhaps also German Bach ‘stream’, Irish búal ‘water’ (see Vasmer 1950:-36). For the phonological relationship of *bhongo- to *bhoñgo- cf. Latin fundus: Old Indic budhna- ‘bottom’, but the inserted nasal of *bhongo- could also be sound-symbolic. Cf. also *swomp/bho-, root *seup.1

§203 It is quite possible that *bhongo- was borrowed as *p8ŋk8- in Uralic in some very remote period of contact with the Indo-Europeans; cf. the later borrowings of ‘mushroom’ in Uralic from Indo-European, Hungarian gomba from Slavic, probably Finnish sampa from Germanic *swamb/pa(z), and also Turkish mantar ‘mushroom, fungus, cork’ from Greek μαντάρ (ancient ἀμαντά). It is noteworthy that *p8ŋk- is reflected with the general meaning ‘mushroom, fungus, lichen/mildew’ in Cheremis and Mordvin, but is specifically ‘fly agaric’ in Vogul and Ostyak. There is no evidence to suggest that *bhongo- in Indo-European meant specifically ‘fly agaric’; this sense could

1. [For these forms cf. also Toporov (1985:301-305)].
have developed in Uralic (more precisely, Ob-Ugrian) territory, where this was the mushroom *par excellence*.

§204 This brings us to the second series of words, i.e. the Indo-Iranian words formally reminiscent of *bhongo- but referring to non-mycological drug plants. B. Munkácsi (1907: 343-344) first connected the Ob-Ugrian words for ‘(fly agaric) mushroom’ with the phonically similar Indo-Iranian words referring to various drug plants, and concluded that the Ob-Ugrian originally meant ‘intoxicating, narcotic’, and comes from Indo-Iranian. See further the extracts of subsequent relevant literature most usefully gathered and discussed by Wasson (1968: 226 seq.); note particularly Wasson’s judicious criticisms of M. Eliade’s (1964) thesis that “the magico-religious value of intoxication for achieving ecstasy is of Iranian origin”, which is the most extreme extension of Munkácsi’s view. Most recently the issue has been discussed again by F. Crevatin (1983: 109-15), who seems to believe that PIE *bhongo- (and *sponge-), whence he derives the Uralic forms, originally referred to the fly agaric mushroom, and that the same etymon gave rise to Uralic and Indo-Iranian terms with application of ‘intoxicant potion’ to plants other than mushrooms. Crevatin also seems cautiously favorable to the thesis that the Indo-Iranians originally used a psychotropic mushroom, but is reluctant to identify soma/haoma thus.

§205 As against the evidence for PIE *bhongo- ‘mushroom’, there is in fact no real evidence for such a form meaning ‘narcotic or intoxicant plant’. The apparent Indo-Iranian *bhanga- with such a meaning is based on illusory data, as I shall now try to show.

§206 With regard to ‘hemp’, called bhanga- (and šanə-) in Sanskrit, there is no evidence for its use as an intoxicant in either India or Persia before well within the Islamic era. It is true the Scythians were exceptional in this regard, for their inhalation (!) of hemp is noted by Herodotus and confirmed by the Scythian tomb artifacts from Pazyryk. But it is clear also from Herodotus and other sources that the Scythian religion was different from that of other (Indo-) Iranians, and that the nomadism of the Scythians involved them in a different cultural complex, including particular shamanistic practices. It is perhaps relevant that in Ossetic, the surviving Scytho-Alanic language, ‘hemp’ is gæn(æ) (cf. *kæn- ‘flax’ in kættäg ‘linen’), whose prototype was early disseminated not only in the Caucasus (Svanetic kan, Abkhaz a-k°no), but independently among the Turks (kendir), and also yielded, in Uralic, Cheremis keře. This form (like Sanskrit šanə- ‘hemp’, with s from palatal k?!?) lacks the labial which follows the n in the cannabis word in Assyrian, Middle Persian, Greek, Slavic and Germanic on one hand, and the East (Central Asiatic) Middle Iranian on the other: Khotanese kaŋŋa- ‘hemp’, Sogdian *kinbā or *kenbā (kynp), Khwarezmian knbynk (adj.), Khotanese kuŋbā- ‘flax’, from earlier disyllabic *kanbā- (and *kanbā-, from *kanphā- for Khotanese kaŋŋa- ?).
§207 The latter forms are of further interest. Words for ‘hemp’ and ‘flax’ often merge. If the source of Sanskrit bhaṅga- ‘hemp’ also referred to flax, and (as Mayrhofer 1956-1976, s.v. bhaṅgā- suggests) had the original form *kambhā-, *gambhā-, or the like, a metathesis to bhaṅga- could have been motivated by the association of flax (and hemp) with the beating (Old Indic bhaṅg-) necessary for the plant fiber to be used. W. Eilers (1985: 25) has suggested more simply a theoretical Proto-Indo-Iranian *bhang- ‘to beat’ as the source not only for Old Indic bhaṅgā-, bhaṅga- ‘hemp’, but also Avestan bāṅha- and Middle Persian, New Persian bang/mang ‘henbane’, which he wrongly also takes as ‘hemp’.

§208 Against the opinion of Crevatin (1983: 112-113), the data of the Atharva-Veda do not show that hemp was used as a psychotrope. In AV 11.6.15 we are dealing with a series of holy plants. Soma was obviously the most sacred ritual plant, whether or not it was used psychotropically at the time the Atharva-Veda was composed. The presence of barley in the text is due not to a use in beer, as Crevatin suggests, but due to its long venerability as the Indo-European food grain par excellence. The numinous force ascribed to barley (Avestan yava-asavan- ‘the barley endowed with Rta’, Persian jord) is not only evident in the Avesta, where the mere cultivation of this grain is said to counter demons, but in a variety of Hittite, Vedic, and Greek data; see in detail Watkins (1978). Darbha-grass provided the seat of the god Agni on the fire-altar, and was used to sweep the sacrificial area, whence the numinous power of this grass (cf. AV 19.32). Crevatin’s confidence that darbha was psychoactive is based on AV 6.43, where darbha figures in a charm to appease the anger of stranger and kin, but here we are not dealing with a tranquilizing drug, a “sedativo”: the Atharva-Veda is not medical, but magical.

§209 Finally, the inclusion of hemp (bhaṅgā-) in the list is due to its use as the traditional means of binding, which, as is well known, is an operation which has a profound and multifaceted role in archaic magic and its symbolism, being the medium of control, alliance, incapacitation, and delimitation; it is also the means of fastening amulets. Cf. AV 2.4.3-4. As a name for hemp, out of which snares were ritually prepared, bhaṅgā- ‘smashing’ would be a propitious indication of the desired effect. Cf. AV 8.8.6, where the bonds of death, specified as hempen by Kauśikī-sūtra 16.15-16, 14.28, are associated with fatal hammers.

§210 It may be added that bhaṅgā- ‘smashing, breaking through’, as epithet of soma in RV 9.16.13, amplifies the immediately preceding aptūr- ‘overcoming the waters’. This numinous epithet, with its victorious resonances, could have been another factor in the naming of hemp bhaṅgā-, bhaṅgā-, although the fact that bhaṅgā occurs with regard to soma only in a single, contextually conditioned passage makes a connection questionable. In any event, it can be concluded that bhaṅgā-, either as a name of hemp or an epithet of soma, is independent of psychotropic reference.
§211 Passing now to the Iranian material, Avestan bangha, banjha-, and Middle and New Persian bang and mang (Arabic banḥ), I shall now try to show that these names too do not go back to an Old Iranian *banga- ‘psychotropic or narcotic plant’.

§212 W. B. Henning (1951: 33 seq.) noted that Avestan banjha-/bangha- is better derived phonologically from Proto-Iranian *dvāŋha- (=Old Indic dhvāṃsa- ‘destroying’) than from a Proto-Iranian form with *-anga-. Obviously this would suit the name of a plant at issue in Vidēvdād 15.14, where banjham is listed as an abortive plant (I shall return to this passage). This also neatly fits Vidēvdād 19.20, the divine epithets of Ahura Mazda axaṇñō, abanjaḥ ‘sleepless, indestructible’, and Vidēvdād 19.41, daēvaṃ kundam banjham vi. banham ‘the demon Kunda, destructive, full of destruction’. However, this meaning also seems to occur for the name of a righteous person whose memory is revered, Pouru. banjham (Yasht 13.124); ‘full of destruction, having much destruction’ (or ‘destroying many’), a warrior’s name, seems more likely than ‘he who has many narcotics’, which would suit a drug merchant or (given the context of Vidēvdād 15.17) an abortionist. But if a nom de guerre is not involved here, I suggest *having a large abdomen’, cf. Old Indic bhāṃsas-, RV 10.163.4.

§213 That in Vidēvdād 15.14 banjha- should mean merely ‘destructive, destroying’ is shown by the larger context: banjham vā šaētam vā yānām vā fraspātom vā kāmcīt vā vitācinam urvaranām ‘banjha- or šaēta- or yānā- or fraspāt-, or any of (the) (foetus-)dissolving plants’. The last two terms are clearest etymologically. First, yānāna- ‘beating, killing’, is from the root gan- ‘strike, kill’, cf. Vidēvdād 13.51 ava. yānāna- masculine ‘killer’, yānāna- neuter Yasht 10.27 ‘a blow’ (delivered by Mithra against evil beings’). Next, fraspāt-means literally ‘throwing forth’ (=Pahlavi frāz abgandan). This may now be understood as a term for ‘abortive’, cf. Persian bačča andāxtan ‘throw a child’ = ‘have an abortion’, and also Modern Greek ἀποβολή ‘abortion, miscarriage’ (originally ‘throwing off/out’). The same semantic development occurs in Sogdian: Manichean pšq ‘abortion’ (in Manichean texts referring to the ‘Abortion-demons’), from pšq- ‘to throw, abort’, S. nšqy- *‘to be aborted’,2 which points to šaēta- also meaning ‘abortive’.3

2. S. nšqy- occurs in the Paris Text 22.18, untranslated by Benveniste (1940: 156). The passage means (starting from the end of Line 22): ‘(Her) deficient milk (restore γŜβlīt[γ], cf. Yagnobi xšītī) will dry up, and the pregnant woman’s foetus will be aborted (nšṛyt) in her womb’. One should reconstruct an active form *nšāy- from *nī-šāya-, related to Khotanese biṣṣāta- ‘dislocated’, Old Indic sāyaka- ‘mislaid’, from PIE *sē- (*sē-), *sēy- ‘to throw, cast’. Cf. already Schwartz (1969: 446).
3. It is clear that §, the regular reflex of PIE *s after i, was generalized from the *-šāy- of nišāy- *‘throw down, abort’ to the parallel form pšq-, where p- reflects the preverb apa-, after which one would expect Old Iranian -hāy- for PIE *(h)-šēy-. This resulted in a new “root” *šēy- ‘to abort’. See the parallel examples in Gershevitch (1974:72); in support of Gershevitch’s *šačča- ‘pouring, forming pools, sprinkling’, note the medieval place name Šez in Azarbaijan,
§214 Thus we see that all three words following *banhara- in Vidēvdād 15.14 are adjectives which are in effect synonymous with vitācinām ‘liquidating (a foetus)’, modifying ‘plants’ at the end of the sentence. It is now obvious that *banhara- at the head of the list is semantically like the rest of the series. The series may be translated ‘destroying or aborting or killing or inducing miscarriage, or any of the plants which liquidate’. The series is therefore ordered: [A] a general word for ‘destructive’ alternating with [B] a term for ‘abortive’: ABA’B’(A’). It is doubtful that this is anything more than a pleonastic way of saying ‘any abortive plant at all’, and that any specific plant is named.

§215 One must account for the fact that the Pahlavi translation of *banhara- in the latter passage is not bang, but the less similar variant mang, with the specific gloss mang i Wištāsp ‘the mang of Wishtāsp’. The situation may be explained thus: the scholiasts were confronted with two terms, which they thought to form a pair of botanical designations (whereas the next two words they recognized as common nouns for abortifacients). They of course assumed *banham to be bang/mang, while for *saētam they thought of Middle Persian šēd ‘bright(ness)’ (Persian šeš, cf. Armenian ašxēt; Avestan -xšaēta-). Taking banhara- as bang/mang, they identified this with the mang i Wištāsp, seeing saēta- as a more splendid mang, and invented a symmetrical counterpart, mang i Zarduxšt, ‘the mang of Zaroaster’. If my explanation is correct, there is no ground for Belardi’s (1979: 115-116) speculation that the realia involve two plant juices, one abortive, the other intoxicant.

§216 While it was almost inevitable that the Pahlavi scholiasts would have rendered Avestan *banhara-, in the context of harmful plants, as the virtually homophonous bang (or its variant mang) ‘henbane’, it is most unlikely that bang/mang derives from Avestan *banhara-, which is not a botanical designation. Nor is a derivation from ‘destructive’ appropriate for bang/mang, as shall presently be seen. Phonologically it is very improbable that bang/mang is from Proto-Iranian *dvanhara-, which would give Middle Persian *dax. The change *d- to b does occur in Parthian, e.g. bar = Middle Persian dar ‘door’ from *dvara-, but *-anh- to *-ang- is unknown in Parthian or elsewhere in Middle Iranian. Obviously Zoroastrian Middle Persian *-ang- in scholia as approximation of Avestan *anjh- in proper nouns is irrelevant for our present instance.4

at the site of a spring-fed lake. From this *śāy- was formed an early East Iranian form šaēta-[šaēta-] ‘abortive’, parallel to that of the cognate Old Indic form seta- ‘furrow’ from PIE sēy- ‘to throw (seed), sow’ (cf. also Old Indic senā ‘missile’). For *seE>śey-, *sey-, see Schwartz (1980b). It may be added that B. T. Anklesaria (1950) and H. Jamasp (1907) have taken šaēta- as ‘abortive’ by comparing Sanskrit śayatati ‘cause to lie down’, regarded as possible by W. Belardi (1979: 115). One must object that the cognate of Sanskrit śi ‘lie’ is Avestan sī (say-), with expected s-, not ś. Belardi’s preferred connection with the other Avestan saēta-, ‘acquisition, possession, wealth’ (not ‘power!’), is unconvincing.

§217 It now becomes necessary to explain Middle Persian, New Persian bang/mang ‘henbane’, Arabic banj ‘henbane, datura’ (which, as most scholars have agreed since Henning’s [1951: 33 seq.] discussion, must not be confused with the later Persian bang ‘hemp’ from New Indic bhang, Sanskrit bhāṅga-). An ingeniously novel explanation was offered by W. Belardi (1979:119): Assuming banha- and bang/mang are ‘henbane’, Belardi reconstructs Proto-Iranian *dvanga-, Proto-Indo-Iranian *dhvanga- ‘Solanaeae; plant containing solanine’. From this *dhvanga- Belardi also derives Sanskrit dhvāṅkṣi- (lex.) ‘a particular medicinal plant’, dhvāṅkṣatunḍa-, dhvāṅkṣanāsā-, dhvāṅkṣavalli- ‘Ardisia solanacea’, dhvāṅkṣamāci- ‘Solanum indicum’, all forms which would arise by popular etymological modification via dhvāṅkṣa- ‘crow’ (all these forms are misprinted dhvarkṣa-, as Crevatin [1982], who is sceptical of the etymology, has noticed).5

§218 Belardi’s etymology, for all its erudite combinations, is very problematic. It is difficult to think that the word in question would embrace so broad a botanical spectrum. In detail, the genus Ardisia does not belong to the order Solanaceae (which includes e.g. the potato and eggplant), and neither Ardisia solanacea nor Solanum indicum contain the same alkaloids as Hyoscamus (henbane), as Belardi thinks (D.S.F.). While the Sanskrit forms are self-explanatory at face value, i.e. named for their resemblance to a crow’s beak, etc., an etymon *dhvanga- remains unexplained (Belardi wisely refrains from any temptation to mention dhvaj- ‘to flutter’). Furthermore, it is a fact that the Sanskrit and Iranian names of shrubs, herbs, and fruits, are rarely (if ever) cognate.

§219 The assumption that bang/mang means ‘henbane’ has been countered by Flattery, who instead argues for it being a more general word for ‘psychoactive drug’. In favor of this one could note Arabic banj as both ‘henbane’ and ‘datura’. More importantly, as Flattery argues (§26 n.3), there is nothing to show that bang/mang necessarily referred to a potentially lethal drug, not even in the Ardā Wirāz legend. Wirāz drinks the mang i Wištāspān, apparently the same mang Wistäsp took for the trance in which the truth of Zoroaster’s mission was revealed. In the Iranian Bundahišn 4.20 (Anklesaria 1908: 43.12), the drug which mercifully palliates the death throes of the

5. And even if, against all likelihood, the Iranian name of ‘henbane’ were related to the Sanskrit names in dhvāṅkṣ- for such different plants, even granting dhvāṅkṣ- represents *dhvanga-, the correspondence of the Iranian would be irregular. As noted above, *dhvanga- would give (Late) Avestan *bang-, not baŋha-, and (if my arguments that baŋha- is not a phymton are correct), the only reason to have thought that baŋha- is a misspelling of *bang- (i.e. bang- in Hoffmann’s [1971] system), the equation with Middle Persian bang, etc., is no longer tenable. I shall not quibble that *dvanga- should have given Persic *dang; interdialectal exchange is theoretically possible. The vast formal and semantic gulf between dhvāṅkṣatunḍa-, etc., and bang/mang suffices to make one seek another explanation.
Primordial Bovine is called *mang i bêšāz kē hast i ‘bang-(i)z (banj?)* xwānīhed ‘the medicinal/healing mang, which is (also) that which is called bang’.

§220 The key to the etymology of bang is the variant form *mang, again referring to a psychoactive substance. This form occurs in the Pahlavi accounts of the Primordial Bovine, divinely given *mang for soothing the pangs of death; of Wishtāsp, who enters the long trance which precedes his acceptance of Zoroaster’s religion; and of Wirāz, who has his vision after drinking *mang i Wištāspān. The first two myths are based on lost Avestan texts. In the two versions of the first myth, *Iranian Bundahišn 4.20 (quoted above) and Zātsparam 2.7, the word *mang is glossed as ‘that which is called bang’. These data indicate that *mang is the more antique form, possibly an adaptation of an Avestan form, and that bang is of later origin. While in Iranian b- could be dissimilated to m- before n- (Eilers 1953: 73 seq.), m- becoming b- is not unusual, particularly when a nasal follows.6

§221 Thus we arrive at *mangā- ‘psychotropic substance’, which could give specific senses ‘henbane, datura’, and, with Flattery (§§26-27), ‘Peganum harmala’. The etymology would be PIE *meng- ‘to create attractive illusions, to charm, appear charming, deceive’ (cf. Pokorny 1959: 731 ‘schöner machen, schwindelhaft verschönern’) whence Old Indic mañjū-, mañjulā- ‘attractive’, and probably also maṅgalā- ‘good omen, fortune’; Greek μάγγανον ‘means of charming, bewitching, or tricking; philtre; device’; μαγγάνεμα ‘quack remedy’ (occurring with φάρμακα ‘drugs’); Middle Irish meng; Ossetic maŋ, Sogdian, and Persian *mang, all ‘deceit, trickery’. It may be assumed that Iranian inherited two homophonous words, *manga- ‘deceit, trickery’ and *manga- (or *mangā-) ‘magic potion, hallucinogen’. 7

§222 It may be concluded Indo-European *bhongo- did not mean ‘psychotrope’ but merely meant fungus and the like; it is a coincidence that Ostyak

---


7. As a semantic parallel to the etymology of *mang/bang* ‘hallucinogen, henbane’ (Arabic bân ‘datura’), I would compare the etymology of Sanskrit dhûttara- ‘datura (Datura alba)’, where dhûrta-, dhûtrakāra- ‘deceptive, tricking’ is clearly involved; see the material in Turner (1966; 1973:384 and 393 under dhâttara-, dhûrta-, and *dhûtrakāra-). There is now all the less reason to involve dubious etymologies in *dhîves-, *dhus-, or an unknown substratic etymon without further derivatives, and the role of “popular etymology”, cf. Mayrhofer (1959:88-89). Old Indic dhûrta- gives Prakrit dhutta- ‘rogue’ and ‘datura’; from *dhûtrakāra- would come Marathi dhatūra- ‘cheat’ etc. and by metathesis Marathi dhatūra ‘trickery’, with compromise forms Buddhist Hybrid Sanskrit dhuttarakā, Hindi dhatūrā, Bengali dhatūra, Assamese dhatūrā, etc. The -tt- forms could be due to forms like dhuṭta- with tt from rt, and also have expressive value; and Sanskrit dhistūra- could have st as “learned” overcompensation replacing Middle Indic th (found e.g. in Maithili dhuṭhur), in reality the product of assimilatory aspiration by dh-; similarly the forms with dhisvas- in the first syllable. Thus dhûrta(krt-), literally ‘deceptive, causing deception’, glossed as ‘datura’, is not a baseless lexicographical fabrication.
paŋk ‘intoxicating mushroom’, Old Indic bhaṅga- ‘hemp’, Avestan baŋha- characterized of abortive plant (‘destructive’), and Middle Persian bang ‘henbane’ are similar in form. A parallel of sorts to this situation is the accidental similarity of English hemp and henbane. If I may close this unavoidably ponderous section with levity, the alleged *bhongo-, *banga- ‘hallucinogen’ turns out to be merely an attractive illusion.

Haoma and hops

§223 Abaev (1975) has proposed to derive Ossetic xumællæg ‘hops’ from *hauma- aryaka- “Aryan haoma”. This would be conceivable if it were known that the Scytho-Alanic (West Saka) ancestors of the Ossetes regarded haoma as paradigmatic of intoxicant in general (which would probably involve a desacralization of the beverage). Unfortunately nothing is known about the Saka usage of haoma (the background of the epithet H-u-m-v-r-g applied to certain Sakas by the Achaemenids unfortunately remains wholly conjectural; against Khotanese durausã reflecting Avestan dūraosã, see Emmerick’s note §98 n.27). Earlier attempts to connect the hops word with haoma- have been justly rejected by most scholars. The fermentation of beer is quite different from the pressing of haoma; note that extraction by mortar and pestle cannot be applied to hops. There is no evidence for the cultivation of hops originating among the Scyths; this would in fact be contradicted by the application of *hauma- as a name for ‘hops’, which have no intoxicating property in themselves, but are used to facilitate the production of beer, enhance and preserve it (Burgess 1964). The situation with, for example, Russian xmel’ ‘hops, intoxication’ is different, for here hops would be associated with the production of an intoxicant beverage introduced by another people. Henning (1946: 720) connects Greek ξύδος ‘beer’ with Sogdian zwtk ‘some intoxicant beverage’, but this is too uncertain as evidence for Scythian brewing of beer. The former word, if of Greek origin, may be connected with ξυμός ‘leaven, ferment’, and the latter may be from an ancient *zulta- ‘poured (as a libation)’. The modern Ossetic word for ‘beer’, bagæni (whose *g [as in the case of Khwarezmian bkny] cannot be from Old Iranian *g [which gives γ], seems to be of Turkish origin, suggesting external influence in development of brewing techniques. Sogdian ḩvny has nothing to do with bagæni and beverages; see Henning (1968: 244-245).

§224 It is likely that the ‘hops’ word originated among the Germanic peoples, for whom beer has a long tradition of importance. Indeed Germanic uniquely provides a convincing etymology (German hummeln ‘to grope, grasp around’ has been compared, in reference to the distinctive growth of the clinging vines). From Germanic the word for ‘hops’ (Old Norse humli, humla, humall, whence eighth century Latin humulus and Finnish humala, traveled eastward and southward (note Slavic *xūmelt, thirteenth century Greek χούμελος, and cf. especially Old Norse humli, Old English humele) to the region north of the
Black Sea, where it likely was borrowed into Scythic as *xumall-ag (with the productive suffix -ag, -ak), whence, likely via a Turkic intermediary *gumlaq/*xumlaq, the word was further disseminated in Chuvash, Vogul, Hungarian, etc. From Scythian *xumallag comes, as the expected development, Ossetic xumællæg.

§225 This trajectory seems confirmed by the history of the ‘ale’ word: Germanic *alud- (Old English ealud, etc.), representing a West Indo-European word for ‘bitterness’ (cf. Latin alumen), gave Finnish olut, etc. and ultimately Scythic *alud/t-, whence Ossetic æluton, ilaetan (whose fabulous nature suggests an exotic origin), Georgian ludi, for which cf. further Abaev (1955: I, 130). It may be concluded that Ossetic xumællæg has no relevance for the history of haoma.

Avestan dūraoša- (see §98)

§226 Since no noun or adjective *dura- is found in either Indic or Iranian, and dūra- ‘far’ occurs in both, and *-auša(s)- is reflected in Iranian and Indic only in the sense of ‘destroying, destruction’ (rather than its etymological meaning ‘burning’), the simplest explanation would be that Avestan dūraoša- ‘keeping destruction far away’ reflects the original form and meaning, whereas the Old Indic duróša- has shortened the first syllable by popular etymology (dur- ‘bad, difficult’). The Vedic hapax oṣām ‘quickly’ may be from older ‘burning’, but it is unclear if the latter meaning was still extant when the compound *dūrauša-was created; the difficulty of the Vedic attestations are probably due to poetic plays on the meanings ‘hard to destroy’ and/or ‘hard to burn’, which await another occasion for discussion.

§227 The usual interpretation of dūraoša- as ‘keeping death afar, averting death’ associates haoma with a drink of immortality. Except in an eschatological context, however, immortality is not a prominent objective of haoma-drinking. Considering that dūraoša- in the Gathas refers to sauma in the context of burning it and that burning is the chief way of using an apotropaic plant in Iran, together with the fact that haoma’s apotropaic function is quite marked elsewhere in the Avesta, it seems more likely that dūraoša- had the sense ‘keeping destruction far away’ as referring to the apotropaic powers of the plant. For the etymology of dūraoša-/duróša-, see, in addition to the references to Bailey in §98 n.28, Gershevitch (1975:49) and Bailey (1985a).

Avestan hašānæpátā- ‘Peganum harmala’ (see §§117-121)

§231 From considerations of realia Flattery (§§117-122) has rejected the equation of hašānæpátā- with pomegranate (for which see Morgenstierne 1973: II, 190; Klingenschmitt 1965: 32 n.8, with reference to Bailey 1957b: 53), and has indicated instead that hašānæpátā- should be a designation for harmel.

§232 It is true that hašānæpátā- seems to be a compound whose first member is comparable with an Old Iranian etymon for ‘pomegranate’, *hašānā-. From
a purely linguistic viewpoint however, the two items cannot be directly and unqualifiedly equated, since haŋanaépátá- has the additional element pátá-apparently added to the first member, haŋanaé-, terminating in a diphthong -aē- which itself requires explanation. The presence of the additional material in fact suggests that haŋanaépátá- is not pomegranate but some other plant thought to bear some relationship to it.

§233 Both details have been addressed recently by Bailey (1985: 871), who still takes haŋanaépátá- as ‘pomegranate’. For -pátá- Bailey compares West Iranian words for ‘poplar’, Persian pad, pada, Baluchi pādk, patk, etc. I fail to see the relevance of ‘poplar’ here. That it is listed in Pahlavi together with willow as a tree, which like haŋanaépátá-, is a soft wood, in no way concerns pomegranate, which has hard wood. Furthermore, Bailey’s citation of the second part of the Avestan word as pátá- is fallacious; the basic form is haŋanaépátá-, with pát-retained in the nominative (and normalized in the Pahlavi transcription), and -pat- in other cases showing the common Avestan secondary shortening of unstressed ā. Earlier Bailey (1979: 197) had compared Baluchi pādk, Kirmanī patk, and Mazandarani palak with Ossetic fåtk'ū. The latter, apart from its semantic difference from ‘poplar’, is probably of Caucasian origin, as indicated by the termination -tk'ū (see Abaev 1973: 203), with replacement of the inherited *ha-jmarnā-. If the analysis is få-tk'ū < *pa-, cf. perhaps Latin pom-um? Alternatively fåtk'ū could be from the ultimate etymon of Hebrew tappūth, etc., cf. Ossetic faarak ‘axe’, etc.: Middle Persian tapar, etc. I believe that such a metathetic relationship may be found in the Slavic word for ‘poplar’, on whose problematic PIE antecedent the unobserved Iranian correspondence sheds new light: Old Slavic *topolt < *potol-, as also Proto-Iranian *patar- feminine, nominative *patá (whence the New Iranian forms cited above), *potol- was itself dissimilated, like Latin pōpulus (and Old Slavic *topolt, if not directly from *potol-), from PIE *pōpolt- or *ptopolt- (perhaps *the fluttering’, from reduplicative stem of *pet- ‘to fly’ and noun formant *e/ol-).

§234 For the -aē- of haŋanaépátá- Bailey reconstructs *-as/-az, comparing Khotanese bištvari- ‘high-born, princely’, which he reconstructs to Proto-Iranian *visas-puθra- (sic, similarly Bailey 1979: 292). This analysis rests on several assumptions, each unsupported: (1) That Indo-Iranian *-as would remain in Proto-Iranian as *-as before p-, rather than become -ah, as is ordinarily assumed. This is refuted by the Elamite transcription of the word for ‘prince’, misapušas (literally ‘son of the [royal] house’), cf. Bailey (1972: 292). This renders Old Persian *visah pusā-, where visah is genitive of vis- (viθ-). (2) That the Khotanese outcome of Proto-Indo-Iranian *-as became *-ai, then *-ē, then -i. Rather, Proto-Indo-Iranian *-as became Proto-Iranian *-ah, which in East Iranian became a fronted simple vowel, cf. already Gothic -ō in kō ‘who’, etc.; Armenian sepouh (with short e, rather than ē, Middle Iranian ē, Old Iranian ai), which is hardly from Alan (with Bailey 1979:293), but from Parthian *wisepuhr, shows Parthian e < *-ah. Khotanese (and Sogdian) have -i as the
regular outcome of *-ah, as in the nominative singular of thematic stems; in Khotanese bīśīvāras- the -i is lengthened under stress at morpheme juncture. It is Younger Avestan, where *-ah became -ō (as apparently in part also Gathic), that is erratic, cf. Avestan *-āh > ā. (3) That Avestan -ō(.)- at the end of thematic first members of compounds reflects a Proto-Iranian substitution of the thematic vowel -a- by the ending of the thematic nominative singular. Rather, as shown by East Middle Iranian compounds, this development occurred within Avestan; it may even be a matter of scholastic orthography. The Digorun Ossetic alternation dzæbêdur, dzæbôdur ‘mountain goat’ probably has nothing to do with *-as/h C- (cf. Abaev 1958:390-391), let alone with the Avestan developments. Nothing, in fact, supports the alleged alternation of -aē- and -ō(.)-

§235 The second element of hađānaēpātā- is identical to the past passive participle of the root pā- ‘to protect, preserve, contain, keep, hold in, hold back’, well attested in Avestan and throughout Iranian. The past passive particle was taken over in Armenian with the meaning ‘covered’, etc.; cf. oskiapat ‘covered with gold, gold plated’, further patak ‘cover’, reflecting an early Parthian form *pātak, and Armenian has as denominal verb patem ‘I cover, surround, enclose’. (Bailey [1979: 197] invents for the Armenian words an Iranian root *pat ‘to cover’, whence he also derives Shugni pūdĉ ‘eyelash’, Persian palk ‘eyelid’, etc., which are more likely to be partially sound-symbolic reflexes of *pet- expressing fluttering and flapping.) As for the -aē-, it is simply what it appears to be, the locative of a thematic stem at morpheme juncture, cf. e.g. rathaēstar- ‘one who stands in a chariot’.

§236 Thus hađānaēpātā- would mean ‘the (plant) contained in the pomegranate fruit (hađāna-)’. Applying this to Flattery’s independent equation of the hađānaēpātā- plant with Peganum harmala, we may compare the colloquial Arabic designation umm-harmal (imḥarmal, etc.), literally ‘mother of harmel’, for ‘pomegranate’ (§121). It is quite possible that this curious appellation for the pomegranate ultimately derives from Iran, the source of other Arabic lore concerning Peganum harmala (e.g. §66, n.5); note especially the likelihood of Arabic harmal based on a calque of Iranian svanta- (§265). A folkloric view of pomegranate as the matrix/origin/prototype of Peganum harmala would have as a corollary Peganum harmala as ‘contained’, i.e. latent, in the pomegranate fruit. Possibly too the term hađānaēpātā- may refer not only to the harmel as ‘contained’, but also to the capsules containing (cf. Armenian pat, patak) the harmel seeds, with a complex word play ‘(having) contains at the thing which is accompanied by seeds’ (hađāna-, neuter?). It is precisely the many capsules of Peganum, with their abundant seeds (30 to 40 per pod), which is strikingly similar to a small pomegranate (reflected also in the Arabic ḥurraymila, ḥurrmayla, etc. [§121 n.10]).

§237 The term hađānaēpātā- emerges as a kind of priestly kenning, a special ritual designation. One may compare, in the Vidēvdād, priestly inventions
replacing the ordinary secular designations (which are overtly disdained as belonging to 'people of bad/evil speech/words' (*duž.vacah-*) in *Vidēvdād* 13, against profane *dužaka-* for 'hedgehog', there stands *vanhāpara-*, which I take as 'stickleback', from *vanhā-* (**F.3g**) glossed by Pahlavi *pušt* 'back', and -*para-* probably related to Greek *περόνη* 'point, needle, quill', Russian *perjat* 'to pierce', but with *para-* as preposition, perhaps paronomastically 'having a superextensive back'? In *Vidēvdād* 13.2, as against profane *kahrkatāt-* for 'rooster', there stands *paro.daras-* 'that which sees first'. In these instances the secular terms may have been interpreted as pejorative. Thus *dužaka-* (whence Persian *žūža*, etc.) would have been associated with *duž-* 'bad' (perhaps as *duž.aka-* 'having nasty barbs': -*aka-* and/or as 'little-bad-thing' and 'bad evil' (*aka-*)). While the *kahrka-* of *kahrkatāt-* is represented by Pashto *čirg* 'rooster' (and Persian *kark* 'chicken', etc.), the -*tāt-* which is the productive suffix forming (feminine) abstract nouns, requires explanation. I suggest that *kahrkatāt-* amounts to 'cluckdom', where -*tāt-* enhances the onomatopoetic quality of *kahrka-* Thus, via focused magnification of merely potentially pejorative aspects of these ordinary words, they become characterized as words of malice. The "elevated" terms for 'hedgehog' and 'rooster' reflect their position in the priestly world view, i.e. creatures who belong to the world of Good, who combat the forces of Evil (the rooster combats the demon of sloth, and the hedgehog destroys the ant). The opposition of the approved (priestly) words to words of "bad-speaking men" (=ordinary words!) is a dualistic partial recasting of the Indo-European opposition of words of divine language to words of human language. Both oppositions are compatible with a more basic opposition, poetic vs. ordinary language (cf. Toporov 1980: 208 seq. with literature).

§238 The poetic traits of metaphor and ambiguity characterize not only *hašanaepātā-* but also terms for parallel ritual objects. At *Vidēvdād* 8.2 and 18.71, *hašanaepātā-* is accompanied by the names of two other (fragrant) fuel plants, *vohu.gaona-* and *vohu.karati-* The meaning of the latter is obscure; a possibility is 'having/conferring good praise/glory' (*karati-*), but a meaning 'having a good make', apparently equal to 'well made, having a fine shape', would be paralleled by the transparent interpretation of *vohu.gaona-* as 'having good color'; thus Pahlavi *hugon* preceded by *hukard*. Yet these meanings would be oddly vague as designations of fuel plants. In fact Avestan has a different, more descriptive meaning, 'blackish' ('blood-colored') for *vohu.-gaona-* as at *Yasht* 8.58 (Pahlavi *siyā-gōn* 'of black color'), the reference is to sheep. Possibly then *vohu.karati-* is 'having a blood-like aspect'? Cf. Schwartz (1982: 195). As with *hašanaepātā-* a complex word play seems involved.

§239 The oldest attestations of *hašanaepātā-* *Yasna* 3.3 and *Yasna* 22.1, occur with yet another roundabout designation for a ritual object, *gav-jivyā-* 'living flesh/cow' traditionally understood to designate ordinary *xšvid-* 'milk' (but see §138 n.32 above). The form *jivyā-* is remarkable for the preservation of *jiv-* as against *jv-* which is found everywhere else in Avestan (including the
orthography of the Gathas), and shows the great antiquity of the ritual phrase. Perhaps the term haðânaëpätä- is equally old.

On pātä-, AtharvaVeda 2.27

§240 Could haðânaëpätä- be of Indo-Iranian origin? The question arises from its new identification as another name for Peganum harmala, and in consideration of the proposal of W. W. Malandra (1979: 220-224) and M. Stutley (1980:130) that pātä- in AtharvaVeda 2.27 is soma. The meaning of this hapax is unknown. The plant with which it is later identified, pāthä- ‘Stephania (or Clypea) herndifolia’ is phonemically different, and Malandra (1979:220) rightly looks for a different explanation. Malandra notes a number of parallels between pātä- and soma: The eagle discovered them both, Indra consumed both, Indra’s use of the pātä- amulet in overcoming the Asuras, as prototype of human use of it to overcome opponents in disputes, is parallel to Vasiṣṭha’s invocation of Indra(-)and(-)Soma to overcome and countercurse his false accusers, RV 7.104. From RV 7.104.12, where it is said that soma favors the honest and smashes the untruth, Malandra deduces that soma was thought to be instrumental, like Varuna, in discriminating truth from falsehood and destroying the liar or perjurer.

§241 One may now bring in some data from the Iranian side. For soma as showing forth truth, cf. Flattery’s discussion of haoma as an ordeal medium (§§147-155), and compare further the invocation of Haoma at Yasna 10.4 haiδimca ašahe xā ahi ‘really thou art the well/source of Truth’ with the parallel invocation of Varuṇa, RV 2.28.5 rdhyâma te varuṇa kham ṭāsya, cf. Kuiper (1960: 248). Furthermore, haoma also was used as an amulet against one’s foes in battle (see §73), which matches the statement at AV 2.27.4 that Indra wore the pātä- on his arm.

§242 The association of the pātä-charm with defeat of the enemy in battle also follows from AV 2.27.5 ‘By means of it (the pātä-) I shall conquer the enemies, as Indra (conquered) the Śālavṛkas’. This passage was cited by Kuiper (1960: 251) in supporting his hypothesis that the verbal contest as a reiteration of Indra’s primordial battles. Kuiper here has in fact anticipated Malandra’s observation of the similarity between the pātä-text and the soma myth (including the parallel role of the eagle). But it is Malandra who takes the bold further step and explicitly suggests the identification of pātä- with soma.

§243 Malandra, focusing on the text’s statement that the pātä- was dug up by the sūkarā- (hog or boar) with his snout, ventures to identify the plant as a tuber, since lexicographers attest many names of tubers which begin with sūkara- or varaḥa- ‘boar’. In view of the boar’s fondness for truffles, Malandra suggests that the pātä- was a truffle. However, Malandra also holds open an identification of pātä- as a mushroom, in view of Buddhist traditions identifying sūkaramaddava-, the food (pork?) whose ingestion was held responsible for
the Buddha’s death. Malandra makes very clear that he is “not among those who are convinced that the ṚgVeda offers evidence that soma was a mushroom” (1979:222, cf. 223, lack “strong evidence to support the soma = mushroom equation”). Nevertheless, he concludes that if pāṭā- were a truffle, it could then have been a substitute for an earlier mushroom, and thus be admissible as “circumstantial evidence” for Wasson’s soma-mushroom theory.

§244 The assumption underlying Malandra’s approach to the identification of the plant in question is, in itself, a reasonable one: Salient statements of a text have a close relationship with the object which is the focus of that text, and in the instance of an object whose identification is obscure, such statements may be identificatory. This is expectable with regard to descriptive prose but is hardly axiomatic for the poetry of magical charms. As J. Gonda (1949:3) remarks concerning his earlier work on the language of AtharvaVeda Samhitā 1-7 (cf. also Gonda 1940 and 1975):

A good number of stylistic peculiarities in Vedic literature, such as alliteration, anaphoric repetition, paronomastic juxtaposition, rhyme and homoioteleuton and other ‘figures’ must not be considered as ornaments, as stylistic ‘embellishments’ (at least not primarily), . . . on the contrary, they had another function: in the sacral or ritual ‘Sondersprache’ a certain stereotypy in the construction of the sentence (parallelism, etc.), . . . [and] repetition of various kinds, etc. possess a very real and essential expressive value, they intensify the magic power or religious value of the text, have a hallowing effect, render the text solemn.

It is precisely such devices that are the raison d’être of various “statements” of our Vedic texts, of which the AtharvaVeda is the most explicitly incantatory.

§245 The use of phonic repetition may be illustrated for AV 2.27 from the first stanza: (a) (nēc chāṭruḥ) prāśam jayāti ‘May not the enemy’ win the argument’: the last words are echoed by (c) prāśam prātiprāśo jahy ‘smash the argument of the arguing opponent’, which is repeated as the refrain of the following stanzas, (c) doubly echoes the prāś-, with the further strong alliteration by pra- of prati- ‘opposed, counter-’, and at the end of the line -prāśo jahy echoes prāśam jāy-. The role of phonic factors in producing an entire topic may be illustrated by another AtharvaVedic datum. AV 4.85.1, addressed to the apotropaic plant varaṇā-, features a play on the name of the plant and the verbal root v(a)r- ‘to ward off’; more at AV 10.3.1-6. But what is more interesting is AV 4.7.1, proclaiming the effects of the water, vār, of varaṇāvati- ‘that which is associated with varaṇā-’ (probably a river near which the plant grew), as able to ‘ward off’, vārayātāi. The verb is repeated in the recitation, vāraye ‘I ward off’. Here focus on the water, with vār- chosen instead of the alternative common forms udaka-, jala-, etc.), and on varaṇāvati, instead of address to the plant itself, is phonically motivated. From a viewpoint of magical use of language, extra dimensions of calling forth apotropaic powers are thereby gained.

§246 We may now consider the detail of the sūkarā- digging up the pāṭā. The phonic aspects after the relevant passage can be best appreciated after an analy-
sis of other aspects of its background as a poetic text. These factors, while essentially heterogeneous, underwent a complex interaction with the phonic factors through the associability of their similar elements. The text in question is thus a result of an interhierarchical convergence of diverse data, formal, structural, and conceptual (I call this convergence "syntropy"): (1a) A myth of the origin of the use of the plant. The myth specific to soma is its being brought by an eagle (śyenā-, suparnā-) to Indra. This connection of the eagle and the plant par excellence explains why, e.g. in AV 1.24, addressing the 'dark plant of even color,' the first statement is 'the suparnā- that was born in the beginning, you were his gall'. The text goes on to say how the Asurī gave it to the trees for color, and made it a cure for leprosy. (1b) A statement of how the plant was first dug up by a mythological being is a topos in the AtharvaVeda; for example, 4.37.1: 'That which Jamadagni dug up to make his daughter's hair grow, Vitavya has brought here from the dwelling of Asita'; AV 4.4.1, 'You, the plant which the Gandharva dug up for Varuṇa when his virility declined, you, who produce erections, do we dig up'. Cf. also 6.109.3. This topos combines the format of origin myth and a statement of digging up the plant for purposive use; note e.g. AV 6.136.1 'As a goddess you were born upon the goddess Earth, Plant! We dig you up, O Nitatnī, that you may strengthen the hair'. Cf. AV 6.21.1; further 4.7.5-6 and 6.6.8. (2a) The pig/boar is the rooter, i.e. digger, par excellence. (2b) The Boar (sometimes called Emuṣā) is, like the suparnā- (who brings the soma that energizes Indra's cosmogonical act), a protological beast. Cf. Kuiper (1960: 251): ‘...this plant... is said to have been dug put by a boar with his snout—just as a boar has dug out the earth from the bottom of the cosmic waters before Indra could expand it”. The Boar, in fact, was regarded as an avatar of Viṣṇu, but also identified with the cosmogonic god Prajāpati (Taittirīya Samhitā 7.1.5.1, Taittirīya Brāhmaṇa 1.1.3.5, cf. Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa 14.1.2.11). (3a) The pairing of the eagle and the boar as discoverers of the plant makes for a parallelism (3b) which achieves a contrast of items, (3c) themselves complementary, their respective domains of operation, heaven and earth, together indicating a cosmic totality. Cf. the statement in the Hōm Yasht that haoma grows on the highest mountains and deepest valleys, etc. (§83). Now the phonic aspect: (4) Of the words for the mythic animals, which included śyenā-, the primary name of the eagle in the soma-myth, and varāhā-, the usual word for 'boar' (as against the tame hog), or Emuṣā-, as it is called in some texts, the forms suparnā- (which is found instead of śyenā- in some RgVeda texts), and sūkarā- ('hog, boar', also used of Emuṣa) have detailed phonic similarity, suitable to their being chosen for contrastive/complementary celestial and terrestrial mythic discoverers of the plant: sūCar(C)ā- {suparnā- → locus: heaven protological beast sūkarā- → locus: earth} totality
§247 The phonetic relationship is foregrounded by the shared initial positions of the animal names, and by the structural parallelism of the rest of their respective lines, AV 2.27.2ab:

suparnās tvānvavindat
sūkarās tvākhanan nasā

The mantric power of the two lines explains why they recur as the opening of AV 5.14, a charm devoted to a nameless plant, which may or may not be the pāṭā-

§248 If the above analysis is correct, it is likely that the connection of the plant with the eagle was primary in the poet’s mind, so there is a good chance that pāṭā- was regarded by the poet as another name for the soma-plant (i.e. whichever plant he identified as soma); the possibility is increased somewhat by the parallels drawn from Indra’s career. Both data may, however, be merely a matter of poetic adoption of material from the soma-hymns.

§249 The pāṭā-plant was also treated by M. Stutley (1980:130). Stutley’s discussion parallels that of Malandra in several respects, but is more confused. In the midst of the summary of AV 2.27, she remarks: “The pāṭā (Clypea hernandifolia) has a bitter root and is much used in India as a medicament.” Despite this identification (where pāṭā is written instead of pāṭha), she returns to AV 2.27: “It was said to have been discovered (or seen) by an eagle and then [sic] dug up by a pig, which suggests that it may have been a truffle.” Stutley even goes on to note that according to Kauśikā-sūtra 38.18-21, ‘He ties on his arm an amulet of pāṭā root and wears a wreath of seven of its leaves’. Clearly this seven-leaved wreath (mālam saptapalāsim, Kauśikā-sūtra 38.21) contradicts the identification of pāṭā as a truffle (or any tuber or mushroom). The impression that pāṭā was conceived of as sappy (i.e. containing chlorophyll) is conveyed by AV 2.27.1: arasān kṛṇv oṣadhe ‘make them [the opponents] sapless, O plant!’ Noted also that Kauśikā-sūtra 38.18 with Dārila’s commentary (for which see M. Bloomfield 1886: 481) indicates that the pāṭā has a root which the plant’s user chews (pāṭāmālamkhadann) when he speaks.

§250 This further shows that the pāṭā may not actually have been expected to be consumed. The oral application of the plant was here probably connected with efficacy of speech, just as binding the plant onto the arm (as attributed to Indra) was thought to confer victorious strength. For the latter detail may be compared the binding on of the haoma amulet (§73).8

8. Regarding the ‘binding’ of haoma in Yasht 14.57 it may be noted that since nivizaiti is a hapax for which Bartholomae could furnish no cognates, his translation ‘attaches (ansteckt)’ seems based solely on the context, which involves the haoma being borne on one’s person during battle. However, further evidence from Iranian is now available. Bailey (1979:387) brings ni-viz together with Avestan a-vaeza- ‘unbound (by sin), comparing Khotanese viysāna- ‘a binding’, and also Baltic and Slavic forms meaning ‘to plait, to bind’ from PIE *weı-g(h). ‘I have furnished similar comparisons from Baltic, etc., venturing also to explain Av. *Viśta-aspa- ‘having bound/tied horses’, parallel to Yuxtāspa- and Hitāspa-
§251 If, as must remain uncertain, pāṭā- was a (magic?) name for some plant regarded as the soma-plant (used in a manner other than pressed), then a relationship with Avestan haṣānaēpāṭā- is conceivable, but rather improbable. Unless, as is very dubious, the term started as Indo-Iranian *pāṭā-, of unclear meaning (‘protection’ is formally unlikely), one would have to posit a truncation of the original compound. Such a truncation would also be a difficulty for regarding pāṭā- as inspired by an Iranian priestly term, a notion which intrinsically has nothing to recommend it. Finally there is the t for expected t; a spontaneous palatalization is possible but not ideal. Etymologically pāṭā- could be partially inspired by pāṭhā-, and partially by the root paṭ ‘to split, to Sunder’, cf. paṭu- ‘acute, keen, trenchant’, vākpaṭu- ‘eloquent, successful in speech’. In any event, pāṭā- has no real relevance for the identification of the soma-plant.9

Avestan barasman-, Indic barhīs- (see §§123-126)

§252 Avestan barasman- (Pahlavi and Persian barson) has been constantly compared with Vedic barhīs-. Both words refer to pieces of vegetation which are used ritually in connection with offerings; both are said to be strewn (str-star-) and, since barasman- goes back to Proto-Iranian *barzman-, both are reconciled by an Indo-Iranian root *bharzī. The same root also furnishes in Iranian a formally identical cognate of barhīs-, Old Iranian *barziīs- (Avestan baraziīs-), Persian bālīs ‘cushion, pillow’, which accords with the fact that barhīs- grass was used as a cushion upon which the gods were thought to accept the offerings.

§253 These facts have given rise to an assumption that has prevailed among most commentators on the subject, that barasman- originally had the same meaning as barhīs-, both referring to a cushion of foliage; see most recently P. Thieme (1957: 71-75). The conclusion that the meaning ‘cushion’ is basic has also lead to a preference for deriving barhīs-/barziīs- and barasman- from PIE *bhelgh- ‘to blow up, swell’ whence Old Prussian balsinis, Serbo-Croatian blàzina ‘cushion, pillow’ as against derivation from the Indo-Iranian root

(Schwartz 1980a:126). I hope there to have met the objection to my earlier, similar explanation for Vištās-apa- (Schwartz 1985b:659), recently voiced by Mayrhofer (1985:327), who asks whether one can still conceive any alternative to the equation with RgVedic viṣīta- āśva-forwarded by O. Szemerényi and refined by J. Narten. Note especially pp. 581-582 in the article of Ines to which I last refer, where the derivation of viṣīta- from *sHto- is refuted in favor of PIE *sīto-. The latter form would also necessarily be continued in Av. Hitāspa-. In Schwartz (1985b:659) I merely meant to range Jāmās-apa- (Dejamās-) with Hitās-, Yuxtās-, and Vištās- semantically, not formally; Jāmās- (on which see now Schwartz 1980a:125; 1986:345, 347, and 389) is of course not a past participle.

9. For pāṭā, see now Das (1987), who has treated the matter in detail. From the additional AtharvaVedic material Das has brought to bear upon its identification, the pāṭā is a leafy plant with ‘hooks’ (Das 1987:36).
*bh(a)ržh- ‘to make high’. For these views see Mayrhofer (1956-1976: II, 415-416). It will now be shown that these conclusions are fallacious.

§254 The provision of foliage as a seat for the gods is a custom of Indo-European origin. This institution reflects a period when grasses were ordinarily heaped up to form cushions. The strewing of grasses for this purpose was probably originally designated by the PIE verb *stεr(H)-, whose close association with long, twiggy grasses may be seen from Latin strāmen, English straw (although the same verb could be used of the spreading of cloth upon which to lie). In barhīs-, precisely because of its ritual context, there is a preservation of the early material realia, grasses employed as a cushion; in baraziš-, bālīš there is generalization of the function served by the grasses, ‘cushion’, whence the development ‘pillow’, just as ‘cushion’ is designated in Old Indic by another derivative of the root, upapārhaṇa- (cf. Khwarezmian βânyk ‘pillow’ < *barzanaka-, Parachi bāna-pāi ‘pillow’ reflecting *barz-n-, etc.).

§255 These data are ideally suited by derivation from a root meaning ‘to heap up’. This definition suits the meaning not only of Indo-Iranian *bh(a)ržh-, but also its Indo-European etymon *bhergh-: from ‘heap up’ one not only gets the very numerous Indo-Iranian forms for ‘high, elevated object’, matched in Germanic by Old English beorg ‘tumulus, hill’, German Berg ‘mountain’, etc., but also words referring to solidity, e.g. Old Indic bṛṛhāti, (pari)bṛṛha-, Latin forctis, forctus, as well as the sense of ‘cover over’ found in the Saka Iranian Ossetic aembaerzu, Khotanese vɨda- ‘covered’, and matched by German bergen, etc. By contrast Old Prussian balsinis and Serbo-Croatian blazina refer originally to a stuffed or inflated bag (i.e. the modern type of pillow), cf. especially Slovenian blazina ‘pillow, handball, football’. Against the derivation of the Indo-Iranian words in question from the same etymon as the Balto-Slavic words for ‘pillow’ is the fact that forms like Old Indic upapārhaṇa- show an inner-Indo-Iranian formation from a still productive verbal root. There is no evidence for an Indo-Iranian verbal root *bharžh- ‘to swell up’. In fact there is no evidence for the latter as a verbal root even in PIE. The various forms from Celtic, Germanic, Baltic, and Slavic given by Pokorny (1959-1969:125-126) under *bhelgh- ‘schwellen’ point only to an old noun for ‘inflatable animal skin, leather bag’. The exception, Old Irish bolgaim ‘I swell’ alongside bolg ‘bag’, should therefore be a denominative, parallel to English bulge, etc., ultimately from Gallic bulga ‘leather bag’. In place of the alleged verb *bhelgh- I suggest a nominal formation in -gh- from *bhel- ‘to blow up’.

§256 A vestige of the institution of “streewing” a heap of grass as a seat for the gods may have been preserved in Western Iran; Herodotus I. 152 reports that the Magi deposited the sacrificial victim upon tender grasses, but this may be due to a projection of Greek ritual ideas upon the Iranians. There is no support for the theorization that barosman- originally referred to vegetation used as a cushion. Since the root means ‘to heap up’ without necessarily referring to a cushion, barosman- need merely refer to some heap of vegetation whose laying
out would be indicated by the verb *star-*; see above on English *straw* and Latin *strāmen*. The formation of *barasman-* (*"bhergh-men-*) would in fact be parallel to that of *strāmen*.

§257 As it happens, there exists possible evidence for a Middle Persian scholastic retention of the original sense of *barasman-* as ‘heap (of vegetation)’, in Pahlavi *Vidēvdād* 18.3. In a list of tokens of the priestly office, Avestan *urvarā* ‘vegetation’ is glossed as *barsom*, which is further glossed *hast kē līfīlīg gōwe(n)d ‘there are those who say līfīlīg*. The unclear word cannot, from its context, be *kwtyīn* (i.e. *kūdīn* ‘mallet, sledgehammer’ [also Persian]) as at *Nērāngistān* 129.5, 17, 18 (bis), 22, 23, 29, nor its homograph at *Nērāngistān* 172.25, *kntgr* (elsewhere *kntgīl*), i.e. *kantigr*, *kantīr* ‘quiver’. The second letter, between the unambiguous *k* and *t*, may in theory be *w*, *r*, *n*, or *O* (ideographic ‘ayin). In practice only *w* is likely, since [r] is spelled *l* in less common words, and, since *[kVnVt-]* is dubious, Old Iranian **[nt]* would appear as Pahlavi *nd*, not *nt*, and *O* is excluded, as the word is obviously not an ideogram. The sequence *kwt-* suggests *kōt* (*kōd*), whence Armenian *koit* ‘heap’, Persian *kōd* ‘heap of grain, collection’. The last three letters are ambiguous; if -gwn, read *kōdgōn* (or, less likely, if -yn’, read *kōdēn*) ‘like a heap’? A more satisfying possibility is a scribal error for simple *kwt*, with a false start for *gwb-* of the *gōwēnd* which follows; then we would simply read *kōd*. We would thus emerge from this analysis with a scholi um for *barasman-* ‘heap (of plant matter)’.

§258 In any event, the pressing of *haoma* would require a preparatory accumulation of stems. The identification of these heaps with the *barasman-* would explain the frequent mention of strewing the *barasman-* as a specific act of worship in the *Yasna* ceremony, and accords with the other Avestan references to this act. The “strewing” of the *barasman-* (*"barzman-*) would be comparable, in name and action, to the “strewing” of the *"barziš-*, the grasses serving as a cushion for the offerings. This circumstance may have had a role in the disappearance of the latter institution in Avestic religion, what with the greater importance of the *haoma* ritual.
3

OTHER NAMES FOR HARMAL

Iranian *svanta ‘Peganum harmala’ (see §§57-64)

§259 The Proto-Iranian form *svanta- (=*suanta-) ‘sacred’ must be reconstructed as the foremost name for harmel. This is especially significant in view of the fact that the representatives of this form in modern Iranian languages are the sole reflexes of the ancient word for ‘sacred’, apart from compound fossils of ancient fixed phrases (i.e. the month name, Persian Islāndarmūd [of which isfand is a modern abbreviation] = the Avestan goddess Spāntā Armaiti, and the word for ‘sheep’, Persian gusfand, etc., Avestan gav-spānta-). Thus harmel was ‘the sacred (plant)’ par excellence, as Flattery notes. This etymonic evidence in itself points a priori to the conclusion that the haoma-plant is Peganum harmala. In fact spānta- actually is adjective of haoma- at Vīsparad 9.3. The etymon is reflected by a variety of forms whose phonological characteristics show independent evolution, rather than borrowing from Persian isfand, sipand or the like. Here may be cited the vocalism of Pashto spānd, and cf. the interesting spalanai ‘harmel-seed’, which must be explained as the expected Pashto outcome of earlier *spadān-, itself dissimilated (via *spand(ū)ān-) from an ancient compound *spanta-āna-(ka) < *svanta-dāna-); the vocalism of Oroshiri sapān, as well as its development *-nt- > *-nd- > -n-; and contrastively the lack of voicing of -nt- in Baluchi sipantān (old plural, or, like Pashto spalanai, Ishkashmi sopandona < *svanta-dāna-*harmel-seed’, with expected East Iranian sp) reflecting Proto-Iranian svanta-; isfand itself has the characteristically Persic sf (as against sp) reflecting Proto-Iranian *svanta-, cf. Persian gusfand alongside guspand, Avestan gao.spānta- ‘sheep’ (*sacral, i.e. ritual, bovine), etc. An alternative Persian reflex of *sv (*su) is s (cf. Old Persian asa-, Avestan aspa-, Sanskrit asva-) with *svanta- giving Old Persian *santa-, reflected in Kuhgiluya gusend (Lumā‘a 1960:180), Kumzari “gosan” (Thomas 1930) ‘sheep’, and Armenian sandaramet representing the name of the earth divinity (=Avestan Spāntā Armaiti; Persian Islāndarmūd; Cappadocian Σονδαρα may have Σο- from *s va-). Thus one may expect Persic forms for ‘Peganum harmala’ from *santa-.
§260 The latter may well be the source of Lari sandolos 'the esfand which is placed on fires' (Eqtedar 1955: 136) and sondoros "esfand" (Bastaki 1980); Syriac *sndryg 'harmel seed'; and Persian šandaldāna (Persian-Arabic šandal-dāna) 'harmel-seed'. The termination of the Lari form is curious. It is tempting to reconstruct *alus/arus = Middle Persian arus 'white' (Ossetic urs 'white', Avestan auruša-, Proto-Indo-European *Elu-so-); one could compare Pahlavi arus tāq 'the white twig' of Wahman (above §87 n.24), the 'white isfand' (sipand-i siped) of the Islamic pharmacopoeias, and even the Pahlavi hōm i spēd 'white haoma'. But this combination is unlikely. It is not white esfand which is indicated for the Lari form; rather ‘the esfand placed on fires’ should refer without color distinction to harmel seeds, the meaning found for Syriac *sndryg and Persian šandaldāna. Moreover all three words are formally connected: Syriac *sndryg (for *snrg = Middle Persian *sandarag?) is inseparable from Greek σαυδρακή 'sandarac' (the tree Callitris quadrivalvus or Tetraclinis articulata, whose resin is used for varnish and incense), just as Lari sandolos, sondoros calls for comparison with Perso-Arabic sandarūs 'sandarac', sandalus 'the resin of Trachylobium Hernemannianum' (sold in Indian bazaars). The -l of sandolos (and sandalus) also necessitates comparison with Perso-Arabic šandal (< Sanskrit candana), properly 'sandalwood', found again, oddly, with -dāna 'seed', in reference to harmel. Note also Mandaic sandlus, sandrus compared by Drower and Macuch (1963) with Perso-Arabic and Syriac sandarūs 'sandarac' but glossed as 'sandalwood' (the form occurs with riha 'incense'). One may assume an ancient Persic *santa- giving *sand 'harmel' with special reference to the seeds, burned as an apotropaic incense, and used for preparing a dye. This *sand would recall sandarus 'sandarac', also an incense and dye-stuff, and further the fumigant sandalwood, šandal, with confusion of *sand with each, and further interaction between sandarus and šandal, as independently probably also Mandaic sandlus (sandrus). The form sandalūs for 'resin of Trachylobium Hernemannianum' would derive its name similarly. The presence of such a form in Lari is probably connected with commerce via Bandar 'Abbās.

§261 Forms in modern Iranian languages which preserve gender, such as Pashto spānda and Orophori sapān in the east and Vafsi-Ashtiyani esbanda in the west, would regularly reflect for 'harmel' an old feminine *svantā- (see Morgenstierne 1952: 206). This would disagree with the masculine gender of haoma-. In theory, the feminine gender could be a secondary development; for example, for 'finger', *angušţa, feminine, is reflected by forms in various modern Iranian languages (ibid. 205), but Old Iranian actually had masculine angušţa-, attested in Avestan, in agreement with Sanskrit anugṣṭha-; note Morgenstierne's account of the transformation of masculine collective plurals to feminine singular (ibid. 204). But in view of the wide distribution of the *-ā- feminine in the word for 'harmel', it is likely the Proto-Iranian form was
feminine as well. The feminine gender predominates for plant names in later Iranian (see the examples in Morgenstierne 1952) and seems to reflect an Old Iranian tendency; cf. such clear Avestan feminines as haparasì- ‘juniper’ and hašanaepātā-. As an adjective *svanta- agreed with urvarā- ‘plant’, and as a noun may have been an abbreviation of the phrase *svanta urvarā. Agreement with urvarā- may have had a role in the general tendency for plant names to be feminine.

§262 Perhaps the gender difference between *svanta- and haoma- arose because *svanta- exclusively designated a plant, while haoma- referred to a plant, a god, and the juice pressed from the plant. In haoma- (=Proto-Iranian *hauma-, Old Indic soma-) we have an action noun in *-ma-, a suffix which in both Old Indic and Old Iranian is typically masculine and frequently refers to ritual objects and institutions. Other examples are Old Indic stoma-, Avestan staoma- ‘hymn’ from stau- ‘to praise’; Old Indic homa- ‘oblation’ from Old Indic h(a)u- ‘to pour’; Avestan aēšma-(Old Indic idhma-) ‘fuel’ from *aidhi-(s-) ‘to burn’; Avestan maesma- ‘urine (used for ritual purification)’ from Old Iranian *maiz- ‘to urinate’. Thus properly Old Indic soma-, Old Iranian *hauma- from Indo-Iranian *sau-, Iranian *hau- ‘to press (in a mortar)’ = ‘that which is pressed’, and *hauma- is the product of the sacred plant, or the plant itself, or the god embodying both—all three used inseparably from the ritual pressing of the plant. Hence *hauma- was not a general name for the plant, but for one ritual manifestation of it, whose institutional naming has a different basis from the more general term, svanta-. Since our texts refer to the plant in the context of the pressing, it is Avestan haoma- (and Vedic soma-) which they employ.1

§263 Some derivatives of *svanta- require explanation. Tajik has conservative sipand, sipandon (= Persian sipand, sipandān; the second form, combining *sipand-ān plural/collective of sipand, and sipand-dān ‘harmel seed’), but also has the colloquial sipandar (Andreev 1953: 50, 53, 237), cf. also Wakhi spandar (alongside spand), Shughni ispandur, Shina spandur, Burushaski supandur (differently Berger 1956:14). Possibly sipand interacted with kundur ‘(frank-)incense’, giving sipandur, then sipendar. In some forms of ispand/sipand, p became m under the influence of n, note in Persic Lenjān-i Tāt esmand (§68 n.7); and, if borrowed from Eastern Persian, isman in Balti, and compare Kirghiz adraspan, adrašman.

---

1. Other harmel names with specialized religious significance may be reflected in modern vernaculars; e.g. Luri dēnīšt ‘harmel’ may well be a form based on Avestan daēnā, Middle Persian dēn ‘The Religion’ (or ‘Vision’? ‘Consciousness’?). If the form is of Old Iranian provenience, one of many possible etymologies would be with second member of compound *-yaštā-, *-yaštī- (or *-ištī-), hence ‘pertaining to worship to/to/for/in accord with the daēnā’.
§264  I would explain the form sepext ‘Peganum harmala’ occurring in one of the dialects of Bashkardi (according to a private communication to me by I. Gershevitch, who did field research in this Persic language) as a blend of sepand (represented elsewhere in Bashkardia according to Dr. Gershevitch) and *sepext < Middle Persian spixt ‘sprouting/blooming’; cf. Khotanese späta- ‘flower’ < spixta-; further Pahlavi spēg translating Avestan frasparāya- ‘bloom (of haoma)’.

Arabic ḥarmal and its Old Berber equivalent (see §53)

§265  In the form χουρματ attributed by Dioscurides to the “Africans” (Ἀφροί), under which Dioscuridean designation early Berber forms are uniquely attested, I recognize *ḥurma as the Old Berber prototype of modern (j)urmi, awerma, etc. ‘Ruta chalepensis, Ruta graveolens’ (for which see above, Table 2). The Dioscuridean form is therefore of interest for the chronology of the general disappearance of *ḥ in Berber. But it is not likely that the relationship of the Berber and Arabic words is due to a common origin in Afro-Asiatic; the absence of comparable words for harmel in the indigenous languages of Africa, and the lack of clear cognates in Semitic for Arabic ḥarmal (Dioscurides, who attributes ḥαμαλα to the “Syrians”, may well have confused Arabs and Syrians), the Iranian area as the likely center for the diffusion of harmel, and considerations of linguistic geography, make it probable that ḥurma represents a borrowing from Arabic. Since Arabic ḥarmal does not seem to continue an old Semitic plant name, one would seek an Arabic etymology. The root ḤRM ‘sacer esse, sacratum esse’ yields ḥaram and ḥurma ‘sacred, sacred thing’ (which would be a calque of Iranian svanta- ‘harmel’ = ‘sacred’, see §§259-264). Ḥaram and/or ḥurma would then be influenced by the names of the botanically kindred Zygophyllum simplex L., jarmal, qarmal (Migahid 1978). These are formed like xardal ‘mustard’, ḥanżal ‘colocynth’, with the formant -l common in Arabic plant names. In fact names for Zygophyllum species occur without the formant: qurma (with vocalism like that of Arab ḥurma ‘sacred thing’), and, more significantly, ḥarm ‘Z. simplex’ and ‘Z. decumbens’. In the latter we may recognize a confusion of ‘Zygophyllum’ with ‘Peganum harmala’, for ḥ does not ordinarily alternate with j or q (whereas a j/q alternation is possible, since both j and q are pronounced dialectally as g), and there is nothing ‘sacred’ about Zygophyllum species, weeds much resembling harmel used marginally for camel fodder. In ḥarm one may therefore recognize an old form for ḥarmal lacking the -l. This makes it possible that the Old Berber *ḥurma is borrowed from an Arabic form without -l (Arabic *ḥurma, like qurma, or with Berber u < a because of the labial m), rather than with early dissimilatory loss of -l. The Arabic triconsonantal form would also confirm the derivation from ‘sacred’. A loan translation would have arisen under early
Persian-Arabic bilingualism. The calque would be paralleled by the later Turkish calque yüzerlik = sadâb, see §280. Eilers (1974:126) compares the formation of Arabic ʰaɾməl : ʰaɾaṃ ("Tabu") to that of Hebrew karmel : kerem "vineyard", with the remark that ʰaɾməl : ʰaɾaṃ shows parallel semantic development (semantisch gleichentwickelt) to Persian isfand "Raute") from Old Iranian spânta- 'holy'.

**Egyptian ἐπνοῦβοῦ (see §52)**

§266 In MSS of Dioscurides the name of an Egyptian plant, ἐπνοῦβοῦ appears after Latin *ruta hortensis* (or montana) and is followed by "Syrian" ṣrμαλα and βηςσαδα the latter forms indicate that the reference is to wild rue (*Peganum harmala*), rather than to garden rue, and should therefore occur under the entry πηγανον ἀγριον rather than the preceding πηγανον κηπαιον in the MSS edited by Wellmann. The form ἐπνοῦβοῦ is to be analysed as (ἐ)π-, representing the Ancient Egyptian masculine article, and the word for 'gold', Ancient Egyptian nb(w), Coptic noub. This in turn furnishes the identity of the hitherto mysterious plant nb occurring in the late Berlin Museum Papyrus 3027, K 7, 5-6. The text has most recently been treated in H. Grapow, H. von Deines, et al. (1958: 5, 504 [hieroglyphic text], 4:1, 1958, 293 [translation]): 'Ein anderes (Heilmittel): ḫmw (Blätterzweige) der nbw-Pflanze; werde zerkleinert in einem Hin-Gefäss, werde veranlasst, das (das Kind) es trinkt'. The name nbw/ἐπνοῦβοῦ 'golden' would be parallel to the Azari Turkish epithet altun for *Peganum harmala*, and Avestan zāiri- 'yellowish, gold-colored', a chief epithet of haoma, and the less common zairi.gaoena- 'yellowish, yellow-green' (see §77). The sacral term zāiri-, it may be added, seems to be the etymon of Baluchi ziray 'Ruta graveolens', which should be added to the material on *Ruta* as ritual replacement of harmel (see §139).

§267 Twelfth century Coptic names for 'rue' (Arabic saɗâb) are (Ibn Kalb *apud* Budge 1928) bašouš 'rue' (< Syrian baʃṣiša 'harmel'); *kanon 'garden rue' (< * pikanon = πηγανον, with metanalysis via the masculine article pi-); emtōt and kefrios (=saɗâb jabolì 'mountain rue').

§268 The identification of Egyptian nbw as *Peganum harmala* on the basis of Dioscurides was independently made by Terence DuQuesne of the Pharmacology Research Committee, London, as he kindly informed Flattery and myself (letters of April 24, 1982 and May 8, 1984). DuQuesne further links nbw with nbyt to which the Papyrus Ebers 852 assigns an Eastern origin.

**Greek μῶλον (see §52 n.10)**

§269 There is no support for Benveniste's (1929) view that Plutarch's ὀμώμι pounded in a mortar was something other than haoma-'. The mixture with wolf's blood would suffice to characterize it as a daēvic offering, dualistically
distinguished from haoma prepared in the usual manner for offerings to the "orthodox" divinities. Thus, rather than identifying ōmōmē with the botanically obscure Greek ἀμώμης and further Syriac humāmā, Arabo-Persian humāma, I suggest that ōmōmē is a dittography of sorts, brought about by correcting the false start ὀμ to ὀμ (for ὀμ, Middle Persian hōm(-), with the false start left unstruck, as frequently). The form (ὁμομή with the show the same pattern of integration as other Greek plant names of exotic origin (κόμμη, σέσελτ, πέπερι, σύναπι).

§270 It is quite possible that μῶλον, given by Dioscurides as the name of harmel in Cappadocia and Galatia, may have served as the origin of the mythical plant of the Odyssey. Harmel's reputation as a magical plant may have come to Asia Minor (and ultimately from the Iranian heartland); cf. above on its medico-magical use in Egypt. Possibly then the connection of μῶλον with Hermes may be due to the similarity of 'Ermūn with Semitic variants of Arabic hārmal, cf. Dioscurides' "Syrian" ἄρμαλα. Note also in this connection the name hermesias given by Pliny for a Magian preparation which quite likely contained Peganum harmala, as Flattery indicates (§83 n.23). The connection with Hermes also suits the psychotropic (and psychopompic) "speediness" of the drug (cf. the various connections of Peganum harmala and words for 'swift' discussed in §64 n.3). Acquaintance with the narcotic potential of the plant would explain the later attested use of the name μῶλον for the sleepy nightshade, Withania somnifera, but note Greek μωλός 'weak, feeble, dull' (also used of the intellect). If the name μῶλον originated in an indigenous Indo-European language of Asia Minor and already there referred to the psychotropic nature of Peganum harmala, then it would be related to Armenian moli, moltor, moli 'raving, mad, insane' (cf. Tomaschek 1894: 27-28); the latter would be also paralleled by Egyptian Arabic mogannama (mujannana) 'that which drives mad' = 'harmel' (Ducros 1930). One may note here the likely relationship of Syriac šabbārā, Mandaic šambra, with the root ŠBR 'be childish, foolish, stupid', šaḥrā 'childishness, folly, stupidity'; thus harmel would be named from inducing foolish behavior, cf. Brockelmann (1928: 754). Finally, from Anatolia again, cf. Turkish mahmur çığedi 'bloom of sleepy languidness (as from intoxication)'.

§271 Greek μῶλον for a kind of garlic may have its meaning from μολύζα 'garlic', under the influence of μῶλον; the association of garlic with Peganum harmala may have been effected by their shared apotropaic attribution. There is little to recommend the oft-claimed connection of μῶλον with Sanskrit mūla-, the usual word for 'root'.
Names for harmel in al-Birūnī’s Kitāb al-Ṣaydana (see §54 n.13)

§272 The form dwpw could be an attempt to render in the Arabo-Persian script some Indic vernacular derivative of Sanskrit *dhūpa- ‘incense, fumigant’. In this event hmlw would be a misreading, although its resemblance to hwm = hōm (and to ḥrm!) is striking, and the general superiori ty of the Arabic version must also be taken into account. Possibly there was a conflation of two words. The texts of Birūnī’s Ṣaydana also provide material for the word for harmel in the medieval language of Sanjar (in eastern Syria). The Persian text (Or. 5849) gives the Sanjari name as ṣbrw thlk (in variant MSS: ṣbw nhlk, ṣpr thlk; Sotoudeh and Afshar 1973:225), while the Arabic text has ṣbr y thlk (Said and Elakie 1973: 1545) and has (as do some Persian MSS) instead of ṣbr the erroneous ṣbr Sijjī (as if = Persian saŋzī, the language of Sijistān, Sistān). The first part of the name should represent a vernacular equivalent of Syriac šabbārā, Mandaic šambra; hence *šbr = *šṣbar = Syriac */šbar/ (construct state)?

§273 The phrase ‘rz’d mywšy given in the unique Arabic MS of al-Birūnī’s Kitāb al-Ṣaydana as the Syriac for hwm al-majūs must be corrupt. I propose Syriac *rt’n *dmywšy= ’artānā da-m(a)yūšē; ’artānā and allied forms are glossed in Arabic lexic of Syriac as buxūr maryam (see Payne-Smith 1879-1901:2, 2990). The latter gloss brings *artānā da-m(a)yūšē ‘cyclamen of the Magians’ into line with Arabic hawm al-majūs ‘haoma of the Magians’, itself sometimes identified with buxūr maryam, as Flattery notes. As for the latter identification, it may be explained from an association of “Magian” with “sun-worshipper” (i.e. āftāb-parast) as the Persian name of the marigold. It is thus

2. Note the spellings and vocalizations of vernacular forms in Payne Smith (1879-1901:2, 4043): šawrā, šāšrā, šāšrē, šāṣrē(?), šaṣrānē, at least some of which probably mean ‘wick’ rather than ‘harmel’. The spelling šmr given there is relevant for the Mandaic form. The relationship to such Syriac names for harmel as bašbāsā, bašsāsā, bīṣbaṣ, bīṣkā, etc., is not clear.

The hapax murdin ‘harmel’ (Payne Smith 1879-1901, from a unique Bodleian manuscript) may represent Middle Persian (a)murde/ in(ā)g) derived, via the Middle Persian adjective suffix -ēn- (e.g. šāhē/in ‘royal’, etc.) from Old Iranian *amṣta- ‘immortal’, cf. Persian murdād < Old Iranian *amṯē- Sogdian murdšespand (via West Middle Iranian?) from Old Iranian *amþta*- spānta-, etc. Vedic amṣta- (cf. the Greek cognate ambrosia) ‘immortality, associated with immortality’ commonly refers to the soma-drink (Macdonnell 1917:108-09); possibly some Iranians applied amṣta- ‘immortal’ directly to the sauma plant. Murdin(a) could also be the source of the gloss hawm al-majūs = “marāniya”, if that indeed refers to the sauma-plant. The form is not Arabic (see Gershevitch 1974) and most obviously of Persian origin. However, the form is suspect: genuine Persian words do not end in -y(ā) (since old *-iyaka- does not result in -yā- but in -īg, -ō). I propose that mṛnyh is a simple misreading of mṛdīnḥ = *murdīna, with l (ʔ) misread for s (d).
probably in reference to this plant that *buxūr maryam* ‘Mary’s fragrance’ originally glossed *hawm al-majūs*.

§274 Quite possibly *buxūr maryam* first meant *Cyclamen europaeum*, while *Calendula officinalis* was originally designated *šajara(tu) maryam* ‘Mary’s plant’, with subsequent confusion of names. Cf. Middle Low German *marienblome* and Middle Dutch *marienbloemkijn* ‘Mary’s flower’ = English *marigold* (**Mary’s gold**), attesting an interesting correspondence of Eastern and Western botanical folklore. For *buxūr* ‘fragrance’ in the Arabic name of *Cyclamen europaeum*, cf. Syriac (from Middle Persian) *ādarbōy* ‘fire-fragrance’ = *‘arṭānīthā* ‘Cyclamen europaeum’.

**Persian *sudāb/sadāb* (see §§53, 127, 132)**

§276 The form *sudāb* ‘*Ruta graveolens*’ has hitherto lacked an etymology. As a preliminary to clarifying the origin of the word, it may be noted that the inscrutable initial syllable should have not had *u*, which was favored by Classical Persian lexicographers and continued in the predominant modern Tehran pronunciation *sodāb*, but rather *a*. An older vocalism *sadāb* is indicated by (1) the Pahlavi spelling *stp* rather than *swtp*; (2) the Arabic form *sađāb*, which probably represents the Sasanian pronunciation (in confirmation of the Pahlavi spelling); (3) the vocalization *sadāb* (sađāb) in early New Persian, evidenced by the vocalization in Abū Maṣūr ibn al-Muwaṭṭa (c. 950 C.E.) (Bahmanyār and Mahjūbī Ardakanī 1967), and etymologies and puns involving *sad āb* ‘a hundred waters’, in al-Birūnī (*Kitāb al-Šaydānā: s.v. Ŧījan*, and in Rūdaki (discussed below); (4) twelfth or thirteenth century Armenian *satap/sadab*, from the Persian, and (5) Turkish *sedef*, a colloquial modification of the Persian form along usual patterns (cf. Persian *čirkāb* ‘bilge’ > Turkish *čırkef*); (6) *sedōw* in the Zardoshti speech of Yazd and Kerman, which may be regarded as an independent West Iranian form. Unlike *šabān*, Pahlavi *šp’n*, which expanded at the expense of the older vocalism *šubān* < Old Iranian *šu-pāna*- (example provided in a letter [May 10, 1979] by Professor H. W. Bailey), *sudāb* appears to have expanded at the expense of *sadāb*. Motivations for the change *sadāb > sudāb* will be discussed below.

§277 While *Ruta graveolens* was introduced into the Near East from the Greek territory (where it was known as *πίγγανον*, whence the Semitic “rue” words [see Table 2]), there is no non-Iranian word from which *sadāb* (etc.) can be derived. *Sadāb* should thus be of Iranian origin. In view of the common exchange of words for *‘Ruta graveolens’* and *‘Peganum harmala’* (for which see the data in Berber and Coptic, above, §265), it is plausible that *sadāb* originally was a name for harmel. This is borne out by a verse attributed by Classical Persian lexicographers to Rūdaki (tenth century C.E.). The lexicographers cite
the verse in connection with a noun sudāb supposedly meaning ‘strength’ (i.e. = quvvat, tavānī, qudrat), as follows:

\[\text{agar sudāb bi-kārand u az tu yād kunand}\\
\text{sudāb-i mardi dar tan fuzūn šavad zi sudāb.}\]

The verse would then mean, ‘If they plant sudāb and remember you (or, memorialize you), masculine ‘strength (sudāb-i mardi) will grow in the body from the sudāb’. Now, apart from this verse, there is no evidence for sudāb (or the like) ‘strength’, which would moreover be etymologically inexplicable. Nor is it apparent how ‘Ruta’ could be named from ‘strength,’ or vice versa. Moreover, if one follows the traditional reading and interpretation of the verse, the word play on sudāb would be very heavy-handed.

§278 If however one replaces sudāb in the first hemistich and at the end of the second hemistich by the older form of that plant name, sadāb, and by two words, šad āb, at the beginning of the second hemistich, one gets:

\[\text{agar sadāb bi-kārand u az tu yād kunand}\\
\text{šad āb-i mardi dar tan fuzūn šavad zi sadāb.}\]

‘If one plants sadāb and remembers you, a hundred fluids of masculinity (šad āb-i mardi) will grow in the body from the sadāb.’ The specificity of āb-i mardi ‘fluid(s) of masculinity,’ i.e. ‘semen’, presupposes an association of the plant with the increase of masculine sexual fertility, a property commonly attributed in Iran to Peganum harmala (see §§89-93) but not to Ruta graveolens, which was in fact regarded as an anaphrodisiac (see Détienne 1977:63-64; Afshar 1967). Thus in this early attestation sadāb can hardly refer to Ruta graveolens but should designate Peganum harmala.

§279 It should be noted that New Persian āb ‘water, liquid, fluid’ may without further qualification mean ‘seminal fluid, semen,’ (e.g. Jamālzāda 1963: 1; reference supplied by Dr. Mahmoud Omidsalar). When specificity is desired, the more explicit āb-i mardi (as in our verse) or āb-i mardān ‘fluid of males’ is employed. Thus sadāb ‘harmel’ could have been understood as ‘a hundred seminal fluids’, i.e. ‘furnishing a hundredfold virile potency’.

§280 It is likely that Rūdaki’s verse plays upon an understanding of sadāb as ‘supplying a hundredfold virility’ common in the folklore concerning harmel among Iranians of Transoxiana. In accordance with the general pattern of cultural history, and specifically folklore concerning harmel (see the Azari verse quoted in §69), one may expect such a notion to have spread to the Turkish communities of the area. I would therefore venture to use my etymology of sadāb ‘hundred(fold) fluids/virility’ to clarify the widespread Turkish name for Peganum harmala, (y)üzerlik, which until now has lacked an etymology. Both (y)üzerlik and üzerlik (yüzärlik, üzärlik) are attested from the time of Kāshgharī (twelfth century C.E.), and are current in Turkey today (yüzärlik occurring in
provincial speech). The loss of $y$ before the front vowel $ü$ is common and is already attested in Old Turkish. Taking $yüzerlik$ as the earlier form allows us to analyze the word as a compound of $yüz$ ‘one hundred’ and $erlik$ ($ärlik$) ‘masculine power’; thus one arrives at ‘conferring a hundred virile potencies’, which would be the calque of sadâb.

§281 The meaning ‘Peganum harmala’ is not only attested for sadâb in the above material, but also for Armenian sanam. The form may have arisen via dissimilation from *sandâb (> *sandaţ > *sanam), the -n- being perhaps due to the influence of sandal (Persian şandal), cf. §260. However, the form sandâb is attested for the Arabic of Cairo with the meaning ‘Ruta chalepensis’ (Förskål 1775:146; Meyerhof 1918:196).

§282 It may be concluded that sudâb is from earlier sadâb, which originally meant ‘harmel’. The alleged word sudâb ‘strength’ may now be rejected as a lexicographer’s invention from the context of the misread verse of Rûdaki. It appears that, after a long period of co-existence of the meanings ‘wild rue’ (harmel) and ‘garden rue’ (named after the latter plant because of the similar appearance), the secondary meaning came to predominate, ‘harmel’ having a more common alternative form (Middle Persian spanad, New Persian sipand, isfand, etc.) whose numinous associations (cf. Middle Persian Spandarmad and Amahraspand, referring to divinities) exclusively suited the plant’s apotropaic virtues. It was probably while both meanings still co-existed for sadâb, the garden rue, which lacked all connection with virile potency (an association still borne by the form sadâb in the early Classical Persian period, as indicated by the evidence of yüzerlik and supported by Rûdaki), began being called by a distinctive form sudâb. This arose, perhaps dialectally, through anticipatory labialization of the vowel in the first syllable by the $b$; for long range labialization cf. Persian urdêbihišt (modern Tehrani ordibehešt) from Middle Persian ard(e)wahišt ‘(month) *of Best Rightness’ (Old Iranian *rtahyavanhištahya); and, with progressive labialization, Persian Bahrâm < Middle Persian Wahrân, Middle Persian avestãm < *avestan, ‘province’, etc.

§283 It is unlikely that sadâb (‘harmel’) arose in Middle Persian, or referred originally to the plant with regard to male sexuality. Compounds in ‘a hundred’ are very common in Old Iranian (a feature of Indo-Iranian origin) but not in Middle Iranian. Persian sadâb etc. would continue an Old Iranian compound *satâp- ‘having (or giving) an hundred (sata-) waters (âp-).’ As against later Iranian, Old Iranian âp- is not used for ‘semen’ (which is indicated by xšuðra- ‘liquidity’), so that the sense of âb in sadâb must have undergone a reinterpretation based on the plant’s independent reputation as an aphrodisiac and promoter of male fertility.

§284 An ancient epithet ‘having a hundred waters’ for sauma is justified by various data illustrating the conception of haoma. As the chief representative of plant life, haoma was inevitably connected with water; cf. Yasna 10.3 in §82.
More importantly, *haoma* juice mixed with water (*haomyā-āp*) was the liquid *par excellence*, so that *haoma* was regarded as beneficial to the waters and even having a role in the production of water. This is reflected in ritual by the practice of offering a preparation of the consecrated extract as a libation to the Waters, and in mythology by the statement in *Yasht* 8.33: After Tištrya brings on the cloud-forming mists, the wind flies “along those paths which *Haoma* traverses”, and from there the wind drives down the rain, clouds and hail upon the earth. In the Pahlavi books it is even said that *Haoma* is a “collaborator” (*hamkār*) of Tištrya in the production of rain (*Bundahišn* VI b 3 [f. 33.5] *Dēnkird* III, 112; *Zātsparam* 3.8).

§285 The connection of the plant (and divinity) with water and the production of rain must be of Indo-Iranian origin, for it is also found in the RgVeda, where it has undergone a great deal of poetic elaboration. As A. A. Macdonnell (1917: 153) writes:

Soma’s connection with the waters resulting from the admixture, is expressed in the most various ways. He is the drop that grows in the waters; he is the embryo of the waters or their child; they are his mothers or his sisters; he is lord and king of streams; he produces waters and causes heaven and earth to rain.

There is in fact a Vedic parallel to the Old Iranian epithet *satāpa*; it is *śatādhāra* - ‘having a hundred streams’, which refers to *soma* (9.80.4; 9.86.11; 9.96.14) and the admixture of *soma* (9.86.27). It occurs (3.26.9) with regard to the hymnist as the source (*utsā*) of inspiration in a figure modeled after *soma* imagery; this is clear from the reference to the three “sieves” of the hymnist, and the statement that he “intoxicates”. Finally, in what is probably the most recent attestation, 10.107.4, *śatādhrā* refers to the wind (cf. above on *Yasht* 8.33, with connection of wind, *Haoma*, and rain); this last Vedic passage is proceeded by an apostrophe to *soma*. It may be concluded that *śatādhrā* is properly a *soma* epithet.

§286 In view of the correspondence *satāp*: *śatādhrā*, it is likely that ‘having/yielding a hundred waters/streams’ was a Proto-Indo-Iranian epithet of *sau*ma. If it is assumed that the more specific word, *śatādhrā*, is the more original, its replacement in Iranian would be understandable: Indo-Iranian had *dhārā* - ‘blade’ and *dhārā* - ‘stream’, and homophony caused the elimination of the latter word in Iranian, leaving only *dārā* - ‘blade’ (Sogdian *dār* etc.). The old epithet may well have undergone reinterpretation as ‘having a hundred blades’. Just this meaning is found in the Avestan description of Mithra’s mace, the *vazra* (*Yasht* 10.96): *sataʃtāna* - *satōdāra* - ‘having a hundred mammaries (= protuberances, knobs), having a hundred blades’.

§287 It would seem that the characterization of the plant as ‘having/yielding a hundred waters’ did not have sufficient force, from a cultic viewpoint, for its canonization in what emerged as the authoritative religion; hence, *satāp* is not
found for *haoma* in the Avesta. As a non-sacral name for the plant it survived in folk traditions, where its meaning underwent reinterpretation.³

³ The two meanings of *śatādāra-* 'yielding a hundred streams' and 'having a hundred blades', are connected in the conception of the mace as thunderbolt. This conception is of Indo-Iranian origin, and is attested not only in Indra's water-releasing *vajra-* but is reflected by the Middle Persian *wēr* and *warzag* 'lightning-bolt', from Old Persian *vaḍra-* Old Iranian *vazra-*. It is even not impossible that the collocation of *satafoṣṭāna-* with *sêtōdāra-* formulaically reflects the same word play, with *sêtāna-* literally 'mammary, female breast', supporting the image of released streams; cf. Vedic *ūḍhar-* 'udder' used of the cosmogonic source of the waters, produced by Indra's cleaving the primordial rock or mountain (*āsman-* *parvatā-* *giri*) with the *vajrā-.* The connection of a paronomastic *vazra-*... *sêtōdāra-* with Mithra may go conceivably back to a myth where Mithra had Indra traits; cf. the Western Mithraic representations of Mithras producing streams of waters by piercing a mountain or rock. The Western Mithras has another apparently archaic trait which parallels the Vedic Indra: Mithras is a cattle thief (*βουχλόπος*; Commodianus; for details see Schwartz 1975:417-418) associated with a grotto; cf. Indra's removal of the cattle of the Pānis or Vala (paralleled by the cattle-rustling exploits of Herakles and Cacus). The connection of Mithra(s) and Indra would be due to independent assimilation of traits of the Indo-Iranian *Vṛtraghna-* for which cf. G. Dumézil (1969, chapter 3, part 2).
References


Anklesaria, Tehmuras Dinshaji (Editor) 1908. *The Bundahishn: being a facsimile of the TD manuscript no. 2 . . . with an introduction by Behramgore Tehmuras Anklesaria.* Bombay (Pahlavi Text Series 2).


Ascherson, P., and G. Schweinfurth 1887. *Illustration de la flore d’Égypte.* Cairo (Mémoires présentés à l’Institut Égyptien 2).


--- 1985a “Durauzha the drink exhilarant.” *South Asian Studies* 1, 157-161.
References


References


Brandis, Dietrich 1879. The Forest flora of north-west and central India. London.


References


Delatte, A. (Editor) 1939. _Glossaires de botanique grecs_. In _Anecdota Atheniensia_. ii. Liège (_Bibliothèque de la Faculté de Philosophie et Lettres de l’Université de Liège_ 88), 279-454.


Dhabhar, Bahmanji N. (Editor) 1913. _The Pahlavi rivāyat accompanying the Dādistān-i Dēnīk_. Bombay (Pahlavi Text Series 5).

__1923. Descriptive catalogue of some manuscripts bearing on Zoroastrianism and pertaining to the different collections of the Mulla Firuz Library_. Bombay.


Dickson, Violet 1955. _The Wild flowers of Kuwait and Bahrain_. London.


___(Editor and translator) 1934. "A Phylactery for Rue (an invocation of the personified herb)." Orientalia 4, 324-346.


___1953. Der Alte Name des persischen Neujahrsfestes. Wiesbaden (Abhandlungen der Geistes- und Sozialwissenschaftlichen Kl., Akademie der Wissenschaften und der Literatur in Mainz 1).


References


Gennadiou, P. G. 1914. Λεξικον Φιλολογικον. Athens.


Griffiths, J. Gwynn (Editor and translator) 1970. *Plutarch’s De Iside et Osiride.* Mystic, Conn.


Guest, Evan 1933. *Notes on plants and plant products with their colloquial names in Iraq.* Baghdad (Bulletin of the Department of Agriculture, Iraq 27).


References


References


Meyehof, M. and G. P. Sobhy (Translators) 1932-1940. The Abridged version of “The Book of Simple Drugs” of Ahmad ibn Muhammad al-Ghāfiqi by Gregoris Abu’l-Faraj (Barbebrasus). Cairo (Egypt University Faculty of Medicine publication 4).


Munkácsi, Bernat 1907. “Pilz’ and ‘Rausch’”. Keleti Szemle 8, 343-344.


Pakistan Forest Research Institute, Medicinal Plant Branch 1956. A Note on the plants of medicinal value found in Pakistan. Abbottabad.


References


Piddington, H. 1832. *An English index to the plants of India*. Calcutta.


References


Sanjana, Darab P. (Editor) 1894. Nirangistan, a photozincographed facsimile of a MS. Bombay (Pahlavi Text Series 1).


Skjærvø, Prods Oktor 1983. “‘Kirdir’s vision’: translation and analysis.” *Archaeologische Mitteilungen aus Iran* 16, 269-306.


References


Thomas, Bertram 1930. The Kumzari dialect of the Shiluh tribe. London.


Togan, Ahmad Zeki Velidi (Editor) 1941. "Birüni’s picture of the world." Memoirs of the Archaeological Society of India 53.


Unvala, Jamshedji Maneckji (Editor and translator) 1921. The Pahlavi text: King Husrav and his boy: published with its transcription, translation and... with an appendix and a complete glossary. Paris.

__1924. Neryosangh’s Sanskrit version of the Hōm Yašt (Yasn IX-XI): with the original Avesta and its Pahlavi version. Vienna.


Vasmer, Max 1950-. Russisches etymologisches Wörterbuch. Heidelberg.

References


Watt, George (Editor) 1889-1896. A Dictionary of the economic products of India. 6 vols. Calcutta.

Wellmann, Max (Editor) 1907-1914. Pedanii Dioscuridis Anazarbeii de materia medica libri quinque. 3 vols. Berlin.


Wright, W. Ramsey (Editor and translator) 1934. *The Book of instruction in the elements of the art of astrology (Kitāb at-Tafḥim li-awā' il ʿinā'at at-tanjīm) [by Abū Rayḥān M. ibn Abū Ḥaylān ibn Ahmad al-Birūnī].* London.


## INDEX LOCORUM

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ZOROASTRIAN TEXTS</th>
<th>11.1</th>
<th>§138 n.32, §150 n.3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yasna</td>
<td>3.2</td>
<td>§113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3.3</td>
<td>§239</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4.1</td>
<td>§113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7</td>
<td>§99, n.30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7.26</td>
<td>§113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8</td>
<td>§99 n.30, §150 n.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8.1</td>
<td>§32, §113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8.3</td>
<td>§150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8.4</td>
<td>§28 n.5, §103, §150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8.5-8</td>
<td>§150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9.1-3</td>
<td>§91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9.3-14</td>
<td>§77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9.12</td>
<td>§126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9.13</td>
<td>§32, §92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9.14</td>
<td>§92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9.15</td>
<td>§92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9.16</td>
<td>§77, §113 n.8, §195</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9.17</td>
<td>§21, §84, §183, §184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9.18</td>
<td>§85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9.20</td>
<td>§184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9.22</td>
<td>§77, §89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9.25</td>
<td>§82, §87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9.26</td>
<td>§77, §82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9.27</td>
<td>§77, §84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9.30-33</td>
<td>§85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10.1</td>
<td>§77, §177, §178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10.3</td>
<td>§82, §284</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10.4</td>
<td>§82, §177, §241</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10.5</td>
<td>§82, §182, §195</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10.6</td>
<td>§77, §85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10.7</td>
<td>§77, §85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10.8</td>
<td>§21, §162, §164, §170, §178, §179, §184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10.9</td>
<td>§84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10.10</td>
<td>§64 n.3, §82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10.11</td>
<td>§82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10.12</td>
<td>§82, §85, §113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10.13</td>
<td>§84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10.14</td>
<td>§21, §22 n.2, §167, §169, §173, §177, §178, §183</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10.15</td>
<td>§90, §180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10.16</td>
<td>§180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10.17</td>
<td>§77, §82, §167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10.18</td>
<td>§87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10.19</td>
<td>§21, §165, §170, §171, §173, §178, §183</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10.21</td>
<td>§173</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11</td>
<td>§90 n.24, §150 n.3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

Yaštś

| 10.18 | 8.33 | §173, §284 |
| 10.19 | 8.40 | §159 |
| 10.19 | 8.58 | §238 |
| 10.21 | 10.27 | §213 |
| 10.89 | 10.89 | §150 n.3 |

---

173
### Index Locorum

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10.96</td>
<td>§286</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.36</td>
<td>§162 n.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.44</td>
<td>§159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.124</td>
<td>§212</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.57</td>
<td>§73, §84, §250 n.7,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Vidêvdâd**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.20</td>
<td>§172</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.42-43</td>
<td>§110 n.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.27</td>
<td>§172</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.52</td>
<td>§172</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.2</td>
<td>§238</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>§237</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.2</td>
<td>§237</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.51</td>
<td>§213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.2-3</td>
<td>§118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.5</td>
<td>§118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.17</td>
<td>§183</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.14</td>
<td>§§212-214, §213 n.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.17</td>
<td>§212</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.29</td>
<td>§172</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.71</td>
<td>§118, §238</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.20</td>
<td>§212</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.41</td>
<td>§212</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Visperad**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8.1</td>
<td>§183</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.3</td>
<td>§61, §259</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.2</td>
<td>§162 n.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Frahang i oim**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8g</td>
<td>§237</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Gähânbâr**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3.5</td>
<td>§162 n.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Pursûšnihâ**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>§184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>§162 n.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Nêrangistân**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>§132, §132 n.22-24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>§79 n.16, §132 n.22, §183</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>§79 n.16, §83, §132 n.22, §183</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>98</td>
<td>§124 n.12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**(Pahlavi) Nêrangistân (Sanjana 1894)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>f.40.11</td>
<td>§120, §132 n.24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f.40.16</td>
<td>§132 n.23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f.46.5</td>
<td>§132 n.23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f.85.26</td>
<td>§125 n.15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>f.128v</td>
<td>§125, §125 n.14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f.129.5, 17, 18</td>
<td>§257</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f.129.22, 23, 29</td>
<td>§257</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f.140.16</td>
<td>§130 n.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f.170.10</td>
<td>§168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f.170.25</td>
<td>§168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f.172.25</td>
<td>§257</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f.179.10-15</td>
<td>§124 n.12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Pahlavi Yasna**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>9.26</td>
<td>§120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>§136, §136 n.26</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Pahlavi Vidêvdâd**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>18.3</td>
<td>§257</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.41</td>
<td>§22 n.2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Ardâ Wirâz Nêmag**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I-III</td>
<td>§§24-26, §34, §148, §151, §155 n.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Bundahišn (T.D. Anklesaria 1908)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>f.33.5</td>
<td>§284</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f.43.12</td>
<td>§220</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f.117.28</td>
<td>§132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f.226.3</td>
<td>§138 n.29</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Bundahišn (B.T. Anklesaria 1946)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4.20</td>
<td>§219, §220</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6b 3</td>
<td>§284</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.20</td>
<td>§84</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Dênkird**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>III 112</td>
<td>§284</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VII 2.25-31</td>
<td>§32, §54 n.13-14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VII 2.32</td>
<td>§151 n.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VII 2.46 seq.</td>
<td>§93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VII 3.51</td>
<td>§32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VII 3.52</td>
<td>§122 n.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VII 3.53</td>
<td>§151 n.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VII 4.57</td>
<td>§151 n.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VII 4.84-86</td>
<td>§28, §28 n.5-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IX 36</td>
<td>§33 n.10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Dadistân i Dênig**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>48.14</td>
<td>§32 n.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48.16</td>
<td>§138 n.29</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Epistles of Manuščîhr**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.10.9</td>
<td>§30 n.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pahlavi Rivāyat</strong></td>
<td>9.96.14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>140.6-10</td>
<td>§28 n.5, §29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>166-169</td>
<td>§132 n.24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>175.4</td>
<td>§132 n.24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>175.7</td>
<td>§132 n.23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>182.4</td>
<td>§132 n.23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>AtharvaVeda</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.24</td>
<td>§246</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.4.3-4</td>
<td>§209</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.27</td>
<td>§240, §245, §249</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.27.2</td>
<td>§247</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.27.4</td>
<td>§241</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.27.5</td>
<td>§242</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.4.1</td>
<td>§246</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.34-35</td>
<td>§11 n.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.37.1</td>
<td>§246</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.7.1</td>
<td>§245</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.7.5-6</td>
<td>§246</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.85.1</td>
<td>§245</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.14</td>
<td>§247</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.6.8</td>
<td>§246</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.21.1</td>
<td>§246</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.43</td>
<td>§208</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.109.3</td>
<td>§246</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.136.1</td>
<td>§246</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.8.6</td>
<td>§209</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.3.1-6</td>
<td>§245</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.1.25</td>
<td>§11 n.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.6.15</td>
<td>§208</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.7</td>
<td>§11 n.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.32</td>
<td>§208</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Persian Rivāyats</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I, 159.11</td>
<td>§135 n.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I, 28.9</td>
<td>§135 n.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I, 526-7</td>
<td>§131 n.20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II, 62-3</td>
<td>§132 n.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Šatapatha Brāhmaṇa</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.1.1</td>
<td>§108 n.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.5.10</td>
<td>§143</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.3.3</td>
<td>§143</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.6.3</td>
<td>§143</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.1.2.11</td>
<td>§246</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sad Dar (Metrical)</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>94</td>
<td>§135 n.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>INDIC TEXTS</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>RgVeda</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.64.2</td>
<td>§167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.84.8</td>
<td>§187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.28.5</td>
<td>§241</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.26.9</td>
<td>§285</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.13.2</td>
<td>§167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.104</td>
<td>§240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.104.12</td>
<td>§240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.16.13</td>
<td>§210</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.48.4</td>
<td>§7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.80.4</td>
<td>§285</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.86.11</td>
<td>§285</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.86.27</td>
<td>§285</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Taittiriya Satīhitā</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.1.5.1</td>
<td>§246</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Taittiriya Brāhmaṇa</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.3.5</td>
<td>§246</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Kauśikā-sūtra</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.28</td>
<td>§209</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.15-16</td>
<td>§209</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38.18-21</td>
<td>§249</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Word Index**

Forms in Tables 1, 2, and 3 are, with few exceptions, not normalized and may be inaccurate, even where unmarked.

* indicates rejected forms.

A. = Attested in Arabic script

### INDO-EUROPEAN

**PROTO-INDO-EUROPEAN**

- *bhel-γh-*, §253, §255
- *bherγh-*, §255
- *bherγh-men-*, §256
- *bhongos*, §6201-205, §222
- *dreb/p-*, §168
- *dumb-*, §193
- *-d(y)/-I- (analogue in ablaut) < *-E-*, §213 n.3
- *Ees-*, §176
- *Elu-so-*, §260
- *Etnyo-*, §176
- *Es(e/o)nt-*, §176
- *ksw- < *sw-*, §§189-191
- *kswomh-*, §189
- *k(ks)wompl-*, §192
- *meng-*, §221
- *p(h)w-*, §199
- *potol-*, §233
- *p(t)opotol-*, §233
- *seE-*, *sè-, *sëy-*, §213 n.2-3
- *seup/b-*, §192, §202, §203
- *sgwhombho-*, §197, §198
- *S-Hto-*, §250 n.8
- *sito-*, §250 n.8
- *spongo-*, §204
- *ster(H)-*, §254
- *sumb(h)xos-*, §189
- *sumP-*, §192
- *sumP0-*, §188
- *sw- > *ksw-*, §187, §§189-191
- *sweks-*, §187
- *swerbh-*, §189
- *swomb(h)-*, §189, §193
- *swomp-*, §192
- *swomp/bho-*, §189, §202
- *swompPo-*, §188, §189
- *twr-*, §189
- *weig(h)-*, §250 n.7
- *wey-*, §250 n.7

### PROTO-INDO-IRANIAN

- *aidh(-s-)*, §262
- *as*, §234
- *(a)us(a)s-*, §226
- *bhang-*, §207
- *bhanga-*, §205
- *bh(a)rzh-*, §125, §252, §253, §255
- *drab-*, §168
- *drap-*, §168
- *dūra-*, §226
- *durauša(s)-*, §226
- *dhārā-*, §286
- *dhvanga-*, §217
- *k-*, §191
- *ksw-*, §§189-191
- *sau-*, §186, §262
- *sauma-*, §4, §186, §193, §196
- *sumb(h)ha-*, §193
- *svaks-, §187
- *svamb(h)ha-*, §193
- *svaš-, §187
- *Vṛtraghna-*, §286

### INDIC

**Old Indic/Sanskrit**

- aṁśū-, §195
- aṅguṣṭha-, §261
- aṁśūmat-, §155 n.5
- apīr-, §210
- asva-, §259
- avās-, §159
- āvas(-), §159
- āgaś-, §158
- barhiς-, §125, §§252-258
- brahmaṇayaka, Table 2
- brahmant, Table 2
- bṛhṛta, Table 2
- bṛṛththati, §255
- budhna-, §202
- bhūdṛpasas-, §212
- bhāṅgh-, §207
- bhāṅgā-, §197, §210, §222
- bhāṅgā-, §197, §204, §§206-210, §217, §218
- candana-, §260
- chandṛavallari, Table 2

177
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dāman-</td>
<td>§159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*dṛāfaya-</td>
<td>§168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drākṣa, Table 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drāpī,</td>
<td>§168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>draps-,</td>
<td>§168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drapsā-,</td>
<td>§167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drapsānāḥ,</td>
<td>§167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>draṇa-,</td>
<td>§168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>durōṣa-</td>
<td>§98 n.28, §226</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Middle Indic) A. dwpw, §54 n.13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dhattura-,</td>
<td>§221 n.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dhūpa-,</td>
<td>§272</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dhūrtakāra-,</td>
<td>221 n.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dhustūra-,</td>
<td>221 n.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dhutturaka-,</td>
<td>221 n.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dhvamsa-,</td>
<td>§212</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*dhvanga-,</td>
<td>§216 n.5, §217, §218</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dhvānKay-,</td>
<td>§216 n.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dhvāṅkṣatunḍa-,</td>
<td>§216 n.5, §217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dhvāṅkṣi-,</td>
<td>§217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*gaṃbhī-,</td>
<td>§207</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gras,</td>
<td>§159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guchhapatra,</td>
<td>Table 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>homa-,</td>
<td>§262</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>idhna-,</td>
<td>§262</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*kaṃbhī-,</td>
<td>§207</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kapotavegā,</td>
<td>Table 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kṛpanyū-,</td>
<td>§158</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kṣodiya-,</td>
<td>§190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kṣip-,</td>
<td>§187, §188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kṣubh-,</td>
<td>§190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kṣira-,</td>
<td>§191</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kṣudra-,</td>
<td>§190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kṣūmpa-,</td>
<td>§§187-189, §192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*kṣv-,</td>
<td>§§189, §190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kṣvip-,</td>
<td>§187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kṣvedati,</td>
<td>§187, §188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kṣvidyati,</td>
<td>§§187-189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-latā-,</td>
<td>§110 n.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mabhā-,</td>
<td>§158</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maṇjū-,</td>
<td>maṇjulā, §221</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maṇḍūka,</td>
<td>Table 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maṇḍgalā-,</td>
<td>§221</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mūla-,</td>
<td>§271</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>odana,</td>
<td>§11 n.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oṣām,</td>
<td>§226</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(pari)bṛgha-,</td>
<td>§255</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paṭ-,</td>
<td>§251</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pāṭā-, §§240-243, §§248-251</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pāṭhā-, §§240, §§249, §251</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paṭu-,</td>
<td>§251</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pitaṇuṣpa,</td>
<td>Table 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pūṭika,</td>
<td>§8 n.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rājñate,</td>
<td>§165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rtāṣya dhāman-,</td>
<td>§159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sa(n)t-,</td>
<td>§176</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sārasvati,</td>
<td>Table 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sarpadaṃśṭa,</td>
<td>Table 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>satya-,</td>
<td>§176</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>satyā-,</td>
<td>§140, §155 n.5, §196, Table 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sāyaka-,</td>
<td>§213 n.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>senā-,</td>
<td>§213 n.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>setā-,</td>
<td>§213 n.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>soma-,</td>
<td>§196, §262, Table 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sōmah pāvamānāḥ,</td>
<td>§6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>soma-mad-,</td>
<td>§171</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>somalatā-,</td>
<td>§§106, §109, §§140, Tables 2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>somavallari,</td>
<td>§140, Table 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>somlata (Nepal),</td>
<td>Table 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sphur-,</td>
<td>§168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sphurāṇa-,</td>
<td>§167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sphurāṭi(t)-,</td>
<td>§§167, §187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stoma-,</td>
<td>§262</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suparnā-,</td>
<td>§§246-247</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stūkara-,</td>
<td>§§243, §§246-247</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stūkaramadava-,</td>
<td>§243</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stūpa-,</td>
<td>§192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>svarati,</td>
<td>§189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>šaś,</td>
<td>§187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>šaṇa-,</td>
<td>§206</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>šatādhāra-,</td>
<td>§§285, §§286, §§287 n.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>šāyayati,</td>
<td>§213 n.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ṣi-,</td>
<td>§§213 n.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>śvātra-,</td>
<td>§61 n.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>śyenā-,</td>
<td>§246</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trāyāb-,</td>
<td>§§98 n.28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tvī-,</td>
<td>§167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ūdhara-,</td>
<td>§§287 n.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>upabārhaṇa-,</td>
<td>§§254, §§255</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utsā-,</td>
<td>§§285</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vajra,</td>
<td>§§287 n.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vākpaṭu-,</td>
<td>§§251</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vāla,</td>
<td>§§287 n.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vār-,</td>
<td>§§245</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>varāhā-,</td>
<td>§§243, §§246</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>varanā-,</td>
<td>(apotropaic plant), §§245</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vāraye,</td>
<td>§§245</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vasiṣṭha,</td>
<td>§§240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vārayātāi,</td>
<td>§§245</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vidyā-,</td>
<td>§183</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>viṣṭa-āśva-,</td>
<td>§§250 n.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>viṣāp,</td>
<td>Table 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitavaya,</td>
<td>§§246</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vṛkṣā-,</td>
<td>§§194, §§195</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Kafiric and Dardic
(Gilgit) asmina-buttı, §106, Table 3
(Gilgit) som, §106, Table 3
(Nuristan) soma, §106, Table 3
(Shina) spandur, §263, §289
(Chitral) sumani, §106, Table 3

RECONSTRUCTED EARLY IRANIAN
*ah, §234
*ang-., §212
*anguštā-, §261
*āp-, §283
*barganaka-, §254
*barz-n-, §254
*barzman-, §252, §258
*daēnāyasta/-i-, §262 n.1
*draib-, §168
*draibaya-, §168
*drafs-, §168
*drafsa-, §168
*duruas-, §226
*dvanga-, §217
*dvagha-, §212, §216
*Jet-pāna-, §276
*hau-, §262
*huama-, §223, §262
*huma-, §196
*īš-, §262 n.1
*kaib-, §206
*kaib-ta-, §206
*maiz-, §262
*maizman-, §218 n.6
*manga-, §221
*namaikā-, §291
*pata-, *patā, §233
*raha yahistahya, §282
*rupiya-, §158
*satap-, §285
*satap-, §283
*spand(i)án-, §259
*spar-, §168
*svant-, §§59-62, §236, §§259-262
*šam-, §173 n.3
*us-hvard-, §189
*Vahu-Manah-, §122 n.11
*varṣa-, §194
*vīsa-pūtra-, §234
*xṣtṛa-, §283
*xšvākb/p-, §187, §191
*xvās-, §188
*xvw-, §190
*xšvī-, §191
*zhūta-, §223
*yaša-, §262 n.1

AVESTAN
abaŋxa-, §212
abda, §172
acīma-, §262
acīma- baoiši-, §101
ačīma-, §164
*āryō. mašu.maδ-, §171, §184
āryō. mašu.mastama-, §184
aj-ōn, §158
aošah-, §226
ā-say-, §167
āši-, §169
āšita-, §166, §167, §169, §178
-asu-, §195
Aša, §162, §163
Aša- Vahist-, §28
ašaonam, §179
ašavastā, §179
ašavāzō, §178
aša-vadah-, §177
ašavāzdāh-, §178
ašāyeccā, §162
aurvan/-aurvant-, §64 n.3
aurušā, §260
-(a)uša-, §98 n.28, §100, §226
a-vacā-, §250 n.8
ava.yanāna-, §213
avā, §159
avafsānī, §212
bama-, §172
banga-, §216 n.5
bangha-, §26 n.4, §28 n.5, §43, §§210-212
banga-, §§196-197, §207, §§210-220, §217
n.5
barasman-, §§123-126, §149, §252, §253, §§256-258
barazis-, §125, §§252-254
bāšar-, §181
caire, §§167-169
cāsmainī, §162 n.1
daēnā, §150, §163, §164, §262 n.1
daēva-, §85, §92
dašan-, §159
dainti, §159
drafs-, §168
draš-, §§166-170
drañnah-, §§90, §90 n.24, §132 n.22
duma-, §193
urvāzaman-, §162, §163 n.2
urvāzīša-, §164
urtvīvī-, §180
vagḥā-, §237
vagḥāpara-, §237
varaēdva-, §118
varāsha-, §194
varṣaṭī-, §195
*vārām-ā-, §169
vasnā-, §176
vazānte-, §170, §178
vazra-, §286, §287 n.3
vareṣaṇa-, §163 n.2
Vištāspa-, §250 n.8
vi. bagham, §212
Vohu- Manah-, §122 n.11, §135, §164, §176
vohu gaona-, §238
vohu karati-, §238
varazyanehāghō-, §170
viṭīcinaṃ-, §214
*varzaman--, §163 n.2
*varṣaṭā-, §180
vraodvā-, §118
xaraṭu-, §180
(x) kṣaṭa-, §215
xšā-, §190
xšvaēpā-, §187, §190
xšvīd-, §§187-188, §191, §239
xšvipta-, §191
xvar-, §§113 n.8, §167
xvra-, §190
xvāšar-, §181
xvāṭrā-, §162 n.1
yava- ašavan-, §208
Yuxtāspa, §250 n.8
zāirī-, §§77, §§77 n.15, §173, §266
zāirī gaona-, §195, §266
zaodra, §§128-131

OLD PERSIAN
asa, §259
fraša-, §172
H-u-m-v-r-g, §223
*māṣaya-, §184
(Elamite) misa pušas, §234
*santa-, §259
(Cappodocian) ῾Σωναρα, §259
thèse-, §137 n.27
*vađra, §287 n.3
*visaḥ pusa-, §234

MIDDLE IRANIAN
Middle Persian
abd fraškard, §172
abzőnīg, §33
ard(e)wahīšt, §282
arūs tāg, §122 n.11, §260
arūs, §260
astomand, §30
aškārag, §176
awestām, §282
bahman, §122 n.11
bang, §§26 n.4, §§197-222, §215
brahnaŋ, §218 n.6
dar, §216
dărūg, §§132 n.23
dlp- , §168
drab-, §168
drafs-, §167
drōn-, §§24, §§28 n.5
druxt-, §195
dum-, §193
dumb-, §193
dūrōs-, §136
frašagar, §172
fraše amurvw, §§172, §§174, §§175
frawahr, §§30, §§32
frāz abgandan, §213
frōsta(g), §175
gētīg, §30
gōmēz, §§79 n.17
gumbad, §201
*tjūt = hōm, §§269
hōm i spēd, §§195, §§260
hugōn, §238
hukard, §238
hur, §§76 n.16, §§132 n.23
kantīr, §257
*kōt/kōd, §257
küdīn, §257
mdšn-, §§22 n.1, §§183, §§184
mdvynyn, §§183
mawīth, §§158
mang, §§26-28, §§26 n.4, §§43, §§196-222
mast, §§184
mastīh, §§184
mawīšn, §§22 n.1, §§183
mēnišn, §§22 n.1
mēnōg, §§30
narm tāg, §§182
nērang, §§125 n.14, §§125 n.16
nibast, §§28 n.6
*ōmuē, §269
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word Index</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sogdian</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rōy-, §168</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rōȳ-, §167</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arīf, §168</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bayne, §218 n.6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ḏyn, §223</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bīzm-bānē, §218 n.6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dār, §286</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dūmb, §193</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>γy λmê, §159</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>γšštìty-, §213 n.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*kenbā (kynp'), §206</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*kinbā-, §206</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mang, §221</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*nišā-, §213 n.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nšy-, §213, §213 n.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>psāy-, §212, §213 n.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sxwār̄, §189</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wyōrfš-, §167</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xšīft, §191</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xwm, §54 n.13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Khotanese</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>biśvārā-, §234</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>biśśāta-, §213 n.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>biysman, §218 n.6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drāḥ-, (ppp. drautta-), §168</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dz̥rai, §98 n.28</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dumaa-, §193</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duraša', §98 n.28, §223</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*durausma', §98 n.28</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ḥ̣ba-, §194</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>huma-, §193, §195</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kæmhā-, kæmbā-, §206</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*kæmbā-, §206</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>samkhal-, §180</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spāta-, §264</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thany-, §98 n.28</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tṭrahe, §98 n.28</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>viyšāna-, §250 n.8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vụ̀da-, §255</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Khwarezmian</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>baynak, §220 n.6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bkny, §223</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bžnyk, §254</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>knbynk, §206</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pcxr̄, §180</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NEW IRANIAN</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Baluchi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>espantān, Table 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gandāxo, §55 n.14, Table 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gandhiyo, §55 n.14, Table 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gwaθam, Table 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hum, huma, humb, Table 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hurmul, Table 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ispantān, Table 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>marizad, Table 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nar-ôm, Table 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hib (Jaz Murian), Table 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nārom, Table 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>omah, omak, Table 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p̣ak, pālḳ, , §233</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rogangaz, Table 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sadāp-p kōhī, Table 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sipantān, §259</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spand, Table 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spandā, Table 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spangaolī, Table 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spanguli, Table 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parthian</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bar, §216</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dṛš, §167</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*frašamarg, §174</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*pāṭak, §235</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*wisepuhr, §234</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zargōn, §195</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parthian</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bar, §216</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dṛš, §167</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*frašamarg, §174</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*pāṭak, §235</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*wisepuhr, §234</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zargōn, §195</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parthian</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bar, §216</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dṛš, §167</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*frašamarg, §174</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*pāṭak, §235</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*wisepuhr, §234</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zargōn, §195</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word Index</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>parāhōm, §113 n.8, §130 n.16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pušt, §237</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rōb, §158</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rubāy-, §158</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ruwān kirb, §33 n.10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sīyā-gōn, §238</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spand, §282</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spandarmat, §122, §259, §282</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spēg, §264</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spīxt, §264</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sṭp, §276</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>šabān, §276</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>šēd, §215</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>špn, §276</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tapar, §233</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tarrag, §132</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>urwar, §195</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wahrān, §282</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wašāg, §132 n.23</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zarōn, §195</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Word Index

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>spanj, Table 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spanyānān [plural], Table 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spingulī, Table 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>um, uma, umah, Table 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xušk-targ, Table 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zirāy, §266, Table 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bashkardi</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sepaxt, §264</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gilaki</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>span-dāna, Table 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dailami</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bīm, Table 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Ishkashimi</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sapandona, §259</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spondana, Table 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Kermani</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>būtī sven, §101 n.32</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>čāryū, §101 n.32</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dasht, Table 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>espend, Table 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>patk, §233</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seben, Table 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sedōw, §132, §276, Table 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>svon, Table 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Khufi</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amojak, Table 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Kuhgiluya</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gusend, §259</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Kumzari</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gosan, §259</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Kurdish</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aspand, Table 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Lari</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sandolos, §260, Table 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sondoros, §260, Table 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Luri</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>espan, Table 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esvan, Table 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēnīst, §262 n.1, Table 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dī, Table 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mazandarani</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>palak, §233</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Munji</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yūmana, Table 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ormuri</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>biyān, §220 n.6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oroshori</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sapān, §259, §261 Table 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Ossetic</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ænbaerzun, §255</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>æncaq, §176</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ænuion, §225</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bægæni, §223</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>barynæg, §218 n.6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dzæv bèdur, §234</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dzæv bèdur, §234</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>færæt-, §233</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>faetk'u/o, §233</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gav næ (a), §206</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ilæxon, §225</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*kæn-, §206</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kættæg, §206</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mæng, §221</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>urs, §260</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xumællæg, §§223-225</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pashto</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ašdun-buta, Table 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bandak mān, Table 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>čing, §237</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yumba, §201</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jarkana, Table 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nawa (Waziristan), Table 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oman, Table 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>öma, §106, Table 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spalanæcy, Table 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spalanai, §259</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spænd, §259</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spænda, §261</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spandah, Table 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spælanæi (Waziri), Table 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spilanai, Table 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spönda (Waziri), Table 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>špel-, §187</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xar-əl, §180</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Persian

sapan, §122 n.11
sapèd, Table 2
seband, §68 n.7
sepand, §68, §264
sepandān-i ganda, §53, Table 2
sepanj, Table 1
sifand, Table 1
sipand, §62, §122 n.11, (Tajik) §263, §282, Table 1
sipandān, §263
sipand-āsā, §64 n.3
sipandin, Table 1
sipandar (Tajik), §263
sipandon (Tajik), §263
spand, Table 1
spand, Table 1
sudāb, §53, §127, §276-287, Table 2
sudāb-i kūhī, §1 n.1, §83
šaqrdāna, Table 1
šēd, §215
šir, §191
širāzdū, Table 1
šāvūs, §175
um, uma, uman, Table 3
urdēbihišt, §282
(w)umān (Tajik), Table 3
xard, §180
xirad, §180
xöreš (Afghanistan), Table 3
xumā (Tajik), Table 3
xūr, §76
yehma (Afghanistan), Table 3
zähir, §172
žīža, §237

Sarikoli

ţevd, §191

Semnani/Sangesari

esban, Table 1
esbond, Table 1
esbund(i), Table 1
espan, Table 1
espond, Table 1

Sistani

bidnik, Table 1
dudnt, Table 1
dudnuk, Table 1
Word Index

Shughni
ispandur, §263, Table 1
puärč, §235
šarš-, §180

Wakhī
imīk, Table 3
imok, imom, Table 3
spand, §263, Table 1
spanddonā, Table 1
spandr, §263, Table 1
(y)imīk, Table 3

Yaghnobi
xard-, §180
xšīft, §213 n.2

Yazghulami
s(a)pānt, Table 1
s(a)pantā(g), Table 1
spāndān, Table 1

Yidga
kawd-, §180
yuimenā, Table 3

OTHER INDO-EUROPEAN LANGUAGES

Armenian
aspand, Table 1
ašēt, §215
drausak, §168
garan, Table 2
halebi-esbant, Table 1
hraškert, §172
hrašk, §172, §174
khowniv, Table 1
koit, §257
mol, §270
moli, §270
molor, §270
oskiiapat, §235
pat, §236
p’egenay, Tables 1, 2
patak, §235
petem, §235
sadab, §276, Table 2
sadaf-khed, Table 2
šan-p’in, §§55 n.14, Table 1
sanam, §281, Table 1
sandaramet, §259
satap, §276
sazsaz, Table 2
sban, Table 1
sokon, §198, §200
sounk, §198
spung, §200
sung, §200
sunk, §198, §200
vahri-esbant, Table 1
vahri-peganay, Tables 1, 2
vahri-sazab, Table 2

Greek (M=Modern Greek)
(M.) ἀγριο πήγανον, Table 1
ἀμβροσία, §275
ἀμωμίς, §196, §269
ἀμωμον, §196
(M.) ἀπήγανος, Table 2
(M.) ἄροβολη, §212
achemen, §§55 n.15, §149
βουκλόπος, §287 n.3
(M.) βραμοχόρταρο, Table 1
γόης, §189
γόμφος, §193
ελάνη, §189
ἰλη, §189
Ἐρμης, §270
hermesias, §§90 n.25, §§177, §270
ζυμός, §223
ζόθος, §223
ζενδον, Table 1
thalassaeagle, §149
thombrodion, §§90 n.25, §149
hippopobias, §§55 n.15, §159
(M.) κολλιά, Table 1
μαγγάνεμα, §221
μάγγανον, §221
(M.) μανιτάρι, §202
μολον, §§52, §§269-271
μωλύς, §270
μωλύς, §271
(M.) ἔδαφος, Table 1
ὀμφός, §189
ὀμφός, §189
ὀμοιός, §§52 n.10, §§196, §269
ophiusa, §149
nyctegreton, §149
παρασάγγη, §215 n.4
περόνη, §237
περσα α βοτάνη, §51
(M.) πήγανο (Cyprus), Tables 1, 2
(M.) πήγανο, Table 2
(M.) πήγανα, Table 2
Word Index

Latin
alumen, §225
fortis, forctus, §255
fundus, §202
fungus, §198, §§201-202, §222
humulus, §224
pomum, §233
pōpullus, §233
ruta hortensis, §266
semonium, §90 n.25
strāmen, §§254, §256

Baltic
(Old Prussian) balsinis, §§253, §255
(Lithuanian) drąpanas, §168
(Lithuanian) drębštė, §168
(Lithuanian) guĩbhas, §201
(Lithuanian) guĩbtras, §201
(Latvian) spīrģšti, §167
(Latvian) svaids, §188
(Latvian) sviest, §188

Slavic
(Russian) bagnó, §202
(Ukrainian) bahno, §202
(Serbo-Croatian) blážina, §§253, §255
(Slovenian) blazina, §§253, §255
(Old Slavic) boga, §201
(Polish) chybač, §190
(Czech) chybati, §190
(Old Slavic) goba, §§198, §§201, §202
(Old Slavic) *gvtomba, §199
(Russian) megolnik, §§252, Table 2
(Russian) perjat', §237
(Ukrainian) ruta-dyka, Table I
(Ukrainian) rebrik-sobačij, Table 1
(Ukrainian) rebryk, Table 1
(Bulgarian) sedefče, Table 2
(Ukrainian) smerdioxa, Table I
(Ukrainian) sobača-loboda, Table 1
(Ukrainian) sobače-zillja, Table 1
(Ukrainian) sobakarne, Table 1
(Old Slavic) svistati, §187
(Old Slavic) *topoll, §233
(Ukrainian) vonjučka, §§55 n.14, Table 1
(Russian) xmel', §223
(Old Slavic) xudá, §190
(Old Slavic) *xámeli, §224
(Old Slavic) xudžil, §190
(Russian) xvrjasa, §190
(Ukrainian) xvijtay-[ž]al, §190
(Russian) xviýryj, §190
(Bulgarian) zarniš, Table 1
(Ukrainian) zmozolens, Table 2

Germanic
(Gothic) afoarban, §189
(German) Bach, §202
(Old English) beorg, §255
(German) Berg, §255
(Yiddish) bibe, Table 1
(Gothic) bīswarban, §189
(English) bulge, §255
(Old High German) giwiswiltn, §189
(Old English) ealud, §225
(English) hemp, §222
(English) henbane, §222
(Old Norse) humli, §224
(Old Norse) humla, §224
(Old Norse) humall, §224
(Old English) humele, §224
(German) humeeltn, §224
(Old High German) Kamb, §193
(German) Kamm, §193
(Middle Dutch) marienbloemkijn, §274
(Middle Low German) marienblome, §274
(English) marigold, §274
(Old English) mete-swamm, §192
(German) Schwamm, §§188, §193, §202
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word Index</th>
<th>187</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(German) Schweigen, §189</td>
<td>basāsā, §44a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(English) sin, §176</td>
<td>baśbāsā, §272 n.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(English) sooth, §176</td>
<td>baśsāsā, §52, §53, §272 n.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(English) spark, §167</td>
<td>baśsūsā, §267</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Old Norse) sparkr, §167</td>
<td>bê̂̄ψâsâ, §52, §266</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(English) spring, §167</td>
<td>biśbaš, §272 n.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Norse) spongæ, §167</td>
<td>biśša, §272 n.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(English) straw, §254, §256</td>
<td>āpμaλâ (Arabic?), §265, §270</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(English) sump, §188, §193</td>
<td>humâmā, §269</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(German) Sünde, §176</td>
<td>mūrdin, §272 n.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Danish) swamp, §193</td>
<td>sdb, §132 n.21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Old English, Norweigen) svíma, §190</td>
<td>sandarūs, §260</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Old Norse) svooppr, §193, §199</td>
<td>sndryg, §260</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Middle Low German) swäïen, §190</td>
<td>šabbārâ, §270, §272</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Middle Low German) sweïmen, §190</td>
<td>šaβrâνē, §272 n.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Old High German) swamb, §193, §198, §200,</td>
<td>šaβrē, §272 n.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Gothic) swammas, §193</td>
<td>šawrâ, §272 n.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(English) swamp, §188, §193</td>
<td>šaβrâ, §270, §272</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Middle High German) swēr, §190</td>
<td>šaβârē, §272 n.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Old Norse) swīfâ, §190</td>
<td>šaβârâ, §272 n.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Old Frisian) swerva, §189</td>
<td>*/šar/, §272</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Old High German) zumpfo, §193</td>
<td>ŠBR, §270</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Celtic</td>
<td>Šmr, §272 n.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Old Irish) bolgaim, §255</td>
<td>Mandaic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Irish) būil, §202</td>
<td>gumīza, §97 n.17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Gallic) bulga, §255</td>
<td>šakir, §79, §79 n.16, §84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Welsh) chwarddu, §189</td>
<td>ša(m)bra, §51, §82, §82 n.20, §84, §270, §272</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Welsh) chwîd, §190</td>
<td>sandhus, sandrus, §260</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Welsh) chwîn, §190</td>
<td>Sanjari</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Middle Irish) meng, §221</td>
<td>(A.) ’sbrw thlk, §272</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SEMITIC**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Akkadian</th>
<th>Arabic</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bānu, bunû, §172</td>
<td>ārūta, Table 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>šīburratu, §51</td>
<td>banj, §26 n.4, §211, §217, §219</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hebrew</td>
<td>begâm, Table 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>karmel, §265</td>
<td>bou-ranes, Table 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kerem, §265</td>
<td>buxūr maryam, §54 n.13, §273, §274</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tappūâh, §233</td>
<td>āatrâ, Table 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aramaic</td>
<td>faïjâl, Table 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>šabbārâ, §51</td>
<td>faïjan, Table 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>škr, §79 n.16</td>
<td>fayyal, Table 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Syriac</td>
<td>fayyan, Table 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*artzānîkâ, §274</td>
<td>figeein, Table 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(A.) *rzm’d mywš, §54 n.13, §273</td>
<td>fiīel, Table 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*rzânā do-maryûšê, §273</td>
<td>fiīel, Table 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Copyrighted material*
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word Index</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>galec, Table 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>galega, Table 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yalaq, Table 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yalqat-al-dhib, Table 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yuṣn, §54 n.13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ḥanzal, §265</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ḥaram, §265</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ḥaramlan, Table 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ḥaremīn, Table 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>barjam, Table 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>barma, §265</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>barman, §44, §52, §53, §53 n.12, §54 n.13, §236, §265, Table 1, Table 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>barma, §44, §52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>barman, Table 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ḥashā-al-jinn, Table 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ḥimn, §54 n.13, §272</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ḤRM, §138, §265</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haramil, §121 n.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>harmama, (Arabo-Persian), §196, §269</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ḥuraymilan, Table 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*ḥuraymila, §121, §236</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ḥurma, §53, §265</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*ḥuraymila, §121, §236</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ḥuraymila, §121 n.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ḥurremlan, Table 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imnarma, imnarma, §121 n.10, §236</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>issin, Table 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jarmal, §265</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jell, Table 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-I (formant), §265</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mogannana, §270, Table 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mujannana, §270</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nigt, Table 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qarmal, §265</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qays, Table 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qurma, §265</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rút, Table 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rúta, Table 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sabad, Table 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sadāb, Table 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sadāb, Table 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sadāb, §276, Table 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sadāb gayr bustānī, §44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sadāb jabali, §267</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sadāb-al-jibal, §83, Tables 1, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sadāb-barī, Table 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sadāb-sāmi, Table 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sakab, Table 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sandarīs, §260</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sandāb, §281, Table 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sāzāb, Table 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sendāb, Table 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sidāb, Table 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>šadāb, Table 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>šadābah, Table 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>šajara(tu) maryam, §274</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>šagarat-al-xanizir, Table 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>šaqq, §54 n.13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ūmm-ḥarmal, §121, §236</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xabīsa, Table 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xanaize, Table 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xardal, §265</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xarguel, Table 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xarjal, Table 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xās, Table 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xayyāsa, Table 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xinīza, Table 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xil, Table 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xuf, Table 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xyais, Table 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zar Mặt-al-harir, Table 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zenn, Table 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Ethiopian Semitic**

(Tigrinya) dhen, Table 2

(Amharic) tal-addam, Table 2

(Amharic) tena-addem, Table 2

**HAMITIC**

(Berber) awerm, §265, Table 2

(Berber) awrem, Table 2

(Coptic) basūs, §53, §267, Table 2

(Berber) bender-tfēr/tfē, Table 1

(Galla) dischart, Table 2

(Coptic) emotef, §267

(Egyptian) ṣπυνβού, §52, §52 n.9, §§266-268

(Old Berber) *ḥ-, §265

(Old Berber) *ḫurma (χουρμα), §52, §265

(Berber) ḫurmi, §53, §265, Table 2

(Berber) ivwārm, Table 2

(Berber) iwermi, Table 2

(Coptic) kanon, §267, Table 2

(Coptic) kēfrīos, §267, Table 2

(Egyptian) nb(w), §266

(Coptic) notb, §266

(Berber) Ṽrmī, Table 2

**TURKIC**

abdaraspani (Sart, Chat), Table 1

aṭilīg (Azari), Table 3

adrašman (Kirghiz), §263, Table 1
Word Index

adraşt (Kirghiz), §263, Table 1
adraspan (Kirghiz), §263, Table 1
ādārāmān (Chinese Turkistan), Table 1
altun (Azari), §69, §266
ārlik, §280
çirkef, §274
erlik, §280
ikdrük (Uç), Table 1
ilezik, Table 1
ısırık (Uzbek), Table 1
kıdr, §206
məhmər çiçeği, §43, §270, Table 1
mantar, §203
*qumlaq, §224
sədef, §276, Table 2
üzärlik, §280
üzərk, §69, §280, Table 1
üzərrik (Azari), Table 1
*xumlaq, §224
yidiğ (Oguz), Table 1
yüz, §280
yüzerlik, §280
yüzerlik, §265, §280, §282

URALIC AND SIBERIAN LANGUAGES
(Tavgi) faŋka-, §197
(Hungarian) gomba, §203
(Ket) hango, §197
(Finnish) humala, §224
(Cheremis) kере, §206
(Finnish) olut, §225
(Mordvin) pangо, §197
(Ostyak) paŋk, §197, §222
(Ostyak) paŋkal, §197
(Ostyak) paŋkat, §197
(Vogul) paŋx, §197
(Chukchi) pog-, §197
(Vogul) poŋk, §197
(Vogul) poŋk-, §197
(Finnish) sampa, §203
(Hungarian) virmanc, Table 2

CAUCASIAN LANGUAGES
(Abkhaz) a-k*no, §206
(Svanetic) kan, §206
(Georgian) ludi, §225
(Georgian) pərɔmangi, §172, §174
(Georgian) sokŭo, §200

AMERINDIAN LANGUAGES
(Quechewa) ayahuasca, §38
(Guarani) jauma, §38 n.12
(Jivaru) natemá, §38, §41
(Adamuca) onixumá, §38 n.12

SINO-TIBETIAN
(Balti) isman, §263, Table 1
(Chinese) luòtuò péng, Table 1

OTHER LANGUAGES
(Burushaski) supândur, §263
(Mongolian) ömkhi-övös, Table 1
General Index

āb-kāma, §137 n.28
āb-zōhr, §103, §130, §131, §130 n.19, §284
Abāde, §68 n.7
Abaev, V., §223, §225, §233, §234
abortifacient, §197, §6212-214, §222
Abru precatorius, §155 n.5
Abū Bakr ibn ʿAli ibn ʿUthman Asfar al-Kasānī, §54 n.13
Abū Ḥanifa al-Dinawarī, §44a, §55 n.16, §121 n.10
Abū Jarrāj, §43
Abū Mansūr ibn al-Muwaffaq, §276
Abū Mutarrīf ʿAbd al-Raḥman ibn Wāfīd, §43, §93 n.27
Achaemenian empire, §19, §124 n.13
achaenemia, Magian plant, §55 n.15, §149
acroistics in Gathas, §163 n.2
additive, Ephedra as, §113
additive plants, §38, §116
ʿAfīfī, R., §64 n.3
āfrīnaqān, §24
Aśhar, l, §278
Agni, §167, §208
Aḥluwaliā, K., Table 3
Aḥmad, B., et al., Table 3
Aḥriman, §52 n.10, §62
Aḥuṇa Vairya prayer, §29, §92
Aḥuṇa Mazdaḵ (see also Ohrmazd), §28, §73, §77, §82, §163, §212
...haoma as priest of, §150 n.3
Aḥuras, §73, §92
Ainslie, W., Table 2
Aitchison, J., §101 n.31, Tables 1, 3
Alander, O., §93 n.27
alcohol, §183, §184,
—required for red harmel dye, §48
—consumed with sauma, §132
ʿAli ibn Rizaɣan, §44b
ʿAli, §68, §68 n.7
Allah, commands Arabs to eat harmel, §59, §96
alliteration, §§244-246
Amanita muscaria, §55-14, §195, §197, §203
Ameshaspands, §28, §30 n.7, §282
Ammon, §196
Amaša Spantas, §122 n.11, §150
amulets, §§66, §73, §74, §85, §209, §§231-233, §240, §241, §249, §250
analgésic, §55 n.12
anaphrodisiac action of Ruta, §§278-282
Anatolia, §48, §52, §270
—harmel in, §§83 n.22, §127 n.18
—Ruta in, §127
—Greek beliefs about Ruta in, §127 n.18
André, J., §53
Andrews, M., §263
Andrews, A., §127 n.18
angel over harmel, §59, §96
—and sauma, §15
—cushion prepared for, §125
—contact with soul of, §138 n.32
—fat from, §137
animals clamor for justice, §40
animals, avoidance of harmel by, §55
Anjavi Shīrāzī, A., §122
Anklesaria, T. D., §213 n.2, §219
Anklesaria, B. T., §132
Anquetil du Perron, H., §132 n.17
antidote of Mithridates, §127 n.18
antidote to Circe’s pottage, §52 n.10
antidote, harmal as, §122
aphrodisiac effect of harmaline, §93 n.27
apotropaic,
—burning of incense as, §260
—harmel as, §§65-76, §§141, §227
—consumption of harmel as, §95
—power of Zoroastrian religion, §67
—sauma as, §§65-76, §§226-227, §282
—use of language, §245
—garlic as, §137 n.27, §271
apparations, §§85, §122 n.11, see also hallucinations, visions
Aramaic name for harmel, §51
Ardā Wirāz, §§24-28, §34, §148, §151, §155 n.5, §219
—as a Parthian priest, §148
—did not desire mang, §152
—purpose of his ordeal, §148
Ardisia solanacea, §217, §218
Acremanios, §52 n.10
Arjas, §28
Arkansas, §7 n.4
Aryan haoma, §223
Asadi Tüisi, §122 n.11
Ascherson, P., and G. Schweinfurth, Tables 1, 2
Ašawahšt, §28
ashes, of harmel rubbed on children, §68 n.7
Asita, §246
Astartes, §82
Asuras, §240
Asuri, §246
Aša, ‘Righteousness, Truth’, §162, §163, §208
Ašam Vohu prayer, §150
ātaš zōhr, §131, §132 n.17
AtharvaVeda, §7, §11 n.8, §35, §197, §208, §240, §§244-246
—format of address to magical plants, §246
—mythical allusions of, §246
Athena, at Pasargadæ, §151 n.4
‘Aṭṭār, §66
availability of sauma, §3 n.2, §9, §12, §18, §142
Avesta,
—biography of Zoroaster in, §32
—date of composition of, §19 n.10
—folk uses of sauma in, §73, §74
—more conservative than RgVeda, §19
—references to haoma intoxication in, §21
Avestan ceremonies, simplification of, §105
Axt, §29
ayahuasca, see yagé
Ayurvedic herbal, Ruta absent from, §141
Azarbaijan, §54 n.13, §55 n.15, §213 n.2
Azari Turkish, §69, §266, §280
Bächtold-Stätubl, H., §127 n.18
Back, M., §34
Bahman (plant), §122, §122 n.11
Bahman, §122, §122 n.11, §149
—sent to Jamshid, §135
Bahmanjana festival, §122
Bahmanyar, A., and H., Maḥjubi Ardakani, §276
Bailey, C., and A. Danin, §55, Table 1
Bailey, Harold W., §59, §98 n.28, §172, §180 n.4, §186, §187, §§194-196, §§233-235, §276, Tables 1, 2
Baku, §69 n.8
Balfour, E., §145, §146
Baltistan, §263
Bamber, C., Table 3
Bandar ‘Abbas, §260
Banerjee, P., and S. Ghosal, §155 n.5
Banisteriopsis caapi (see also yagé), §§37-42, §116
—chewing of, §39
banner, §§166-167
Baqā’ī, N., Table 1
barešnum, §79 n.17
barley, §52 n.10, §208
barson, §§123-126, §§252-258
—as Iranian priestly insigna, §126
—bundles of compared with those of harmel, §82 n.21
—held in left hand, §123
—tying bundles of, §124 n.12
—strewn, §123, §258
—by Zoroaster, §82 n.4
Bartholomae, C., §21, §§166-167, §180, §183, §250 n.2
Bastaki, H., §260, Table 1
battle fury, from yagé, §39
—from soma, §12
battle, haoma amulet at, §73
Bedeovian, A., §43, Tables 1, 2
Bodi, R., §137 n.27
bedouins, burning of harmel as fuel by, §55 n.16
beer, §132 n.23, §208, §223
Belardi, W., §24, §24 n.2, §26, §26 n.3, §213 n.2, §215, §217
Bollew, H., Tables 1, 3
Belon, P., §93 n.27
Benveniste, E., §52 n.10, §173 n.3, §196, §204 n.1, §213 n.2, §269
Berber plant names, §§265, §277
Bergaigne, A., §12
Berger, H., §263, Table 1
Best Existence, §162 n.1, §179
—seen by Wistās, §28 n.4
Bhandari, M., Table 1
Bharucha, S.D., §132 n.12
Bidez, J., and F. Cumont, §149
birds, §54 n.13, §82, §90 n.24, §§172-175, §246, §248, §249
—expected to devour Wistās in midair, §28
birth of Zoroaster, §55 n.13, §71
births, harmel burned at, §66
al-Biruni, §26 n.3, §54 n.13, §55 n.15, §122, §122 n.11, §137 n.27, §§272-274, §276
black bile, expelled by harmel, §44b
black ispand, §95
General Index

Black, W., and K. Parker, §55
Blakelock, R., and J. Gillett, §110 n.5
Blatter, E., Tables L 2, 3
bliss, §§162-164, §162 n.1
blood pressure, lowered by harmacline, §47
blood, §238
—of wolf, §52 n.10, §269
—purified by harm, §44b
Bloomfield, M., §249
boar, §243, §246
body of priest, surrendered to haoma, §90
boiling of harm in milk, §95
Bolos of Mendes, §90 n.25, §149, §155 n.5, §174
Bolton, James, Table 1
Bormüller, J., §106 n.1
Borza, L., Table 2
Boulos, L., §55
bovine, (see also animal sacrifice and Avestan gav-), §18 n.9, §160, §259
—ordered to be slain, §98
—primordial, §219, §220
—product of, §§84, §138, §138 n.29
—presence with sauma explained, §138 n.32
Boyce, Mary, §§3 n.9, §99, §99 n.29, §99 n.30, §106 n.1, §115 n.9, §118, §122
n.11, §124 n.13, §127, §130 n.19, §131, §133, §137, §137 n.27, §143, §150 n.3, §153, §161, Tables 2, 3
Brahman priests, §3 n.2
—migration of, §§107-109
—obscurantism of, §143
—why stopped using harm, §144
Brāhmaṇas, soma in, §143
Brandis, D., Table 3
brandy, §48
Brankly, F., §127 n.18
brass, in Zoroaster’s dream, §33
Brauer, E., Table 2
bravery, see also courage, §84
—harmel eaten/burned for, §§59, §76, §76 n.13, §96
—from yagé, §39
bread, see also drôn (bread), §137
—in āb-zōhr, §130 n.19
bridge to spiritual world, §25
Brockelmann, C., §§3 n.12, §270, Table 1
Brough, J., §9 n.7
Brunner, C., §34
Brunnhofen, H., §52 n.10
būd-i nākōš, §131
Budapest, §52
Buddha’s death, §243
Budge, W., §132 n.21, §267, Table 2
Bukhara, §55 n.18
bull banner, §167
bull hair, ring of, §104
bull Hašāyuš, §§138, §138 n.29
bull urine, §79 n.17
bundles, of haoma, §82
—of harm, §§82 n.21
—of barsom, §§124, §124 n.12
Burgess, A., §223
Burkill, L., §54
Burnell, A., §107 n.2
burning,
—of Ephedra, §§99 n.30
—of harm, §§66, §67, §§94-97
—equivalent to eating harm, §96
—of sauma, §§97-100, §§136, §§159, §§160, §§161, §§162
Burtt, B., and D. Lewis, Table 1
Burushaski plant names, §263
burying haoma, §§110 n.5
Bushrīr, §68 n.7
būtī sven, §101 n.32
buxūr maryam, §§13 n.13, §273, §274
caapi, §38, see also yagé
Cacus, §287 n.3
Caland’s law, §§182
Calendula officinalis, §§13 n.13, §274
Callivero, C., §§93 n.27
Callitris quadrivalvus, §§260
Calmeyer, P., §126
calques on harmel names, §§90 n.25, §§236, §280
camels, harmel eaten by, §55
cannabis, see hemp
Cappadocia, §§44a, §§52, §§52 n.10, §§259, §§270 β-carbolines, §§37
cardamum seed, substituted for harmel, §§44
cardiovascular effects of harmeline, §§47
Cassia, §§44a
cattle, sacrifice of, see animal sacrifice
cattle, see bovine, §18 n.9
cattle thief mythology, §§287 n.3
cemeteries, harmel and, §§52
Centaura behen, §§122 n.11
Central Asia, Iranians in, §18
ceremonial use of yagé, §§40
ceremonies, superfluous for consuming most drugs, §12
Ceropogia Decaisneana and C. Elegans, §§107 n.2
Cerquand, J.-F., §52 n.10
cércadillo, fourth day after death, §131
Chandrasena, J., Table 2
carrù, §101 n.32
charlatans, Magi as, §149 n.1
charms (see also amulets), §§208, 242, 244, 247
cheese, §52 n.10
Chemical Abstracts, §§55 n.17
chewing,
—of Banisteriopsis, §39
—of mushrooms, §45
—of harmel, §45 n.4
—of turpentine wood, §151 n.4
—of pāfā root, §249
chicken, §167, §237
chicken gait, mixed with harmel, §44a
children, obtained by means of hermesia, §890-99, §90 n.25
Chile, §39
Cim i Drôn, §132 n.24
China, §§9 n.9, §52
—Ephedra in, §§10, §110 n.10
Chilocoreta, §90 n.25, §149, §149 n.1, §155 n.5, §174
Chitrāl, Table 3
Choaspe (Karkha) River, §90 n.25
Chopra, R., et al, §45 n.4, §110 n.5, Tables 1, 2
Christensen, A., §135 n.25, §167
Chronology of al-Birūnī, §122, §137 n.27
Circe, §§52 n.10
circumcisions, harmel burned at, §66
Clausen, G., Table 1
clay, soma added to, §8 n.5
Clay, J., §52 n.10
climbing plant, soma as, §110 n.5
clockdom, §237
Clupea harnandifolia, §240, §249
coition, §22 n.1, §71, §86
—inclination toward induced by harmel, §44b, §93 n.27
colds, treated with harmel, §44b
colic, treated with harmel, §44b
color, §§172, §§173, §§194, §§238, §§246, §§260
—of haoma, §§77, §§195, §§266
—of harmel, §§46, §§77 n.15, §§266
—of peacock, §90 n.25, §174
—of various kinds of yagé, §§82 n.20
Commodianus, §287 n.3
common harmel, §44a
complexion, clarified by harmel, §44b complement, of the white bahman plant, §122 n.11
conjunctions, see spells
copper, in Zarathustra’s dream, §33
coriander, in sir-u-šedōw, §137
Correll, D., and M. Johnstone, §52 n.11
Cory, V., §52 n.11
cotton seed, in ataš zöhr, §132 n.17
courage, §84
—from yagé, §39
—harmel burned for, §§59, §§76, §§76 n.13, §96
Cow, §84
—living cow, §239
—red cow, §§135 n.25
—trembling cow, §§21, §§167-169
—yellow cow, §§135, §§138
coxalgia, treated with harmel, §44 creation myth, reenacted, §40
creation of world to fight Evil Spirit, §30
Crevatin, F., §§26 n.4, §§204, §§208, §§217
crow, §§217, §§218
Crum, W., Table 2
cumis seed, in sir-u-šedōw, §137
curses, §85
—from zaotar, §150
cushion, §§252-255, §258
—from gods, §§125, §§252
—from killing sheep, §125 n.15
—from grass, §§125 n.16
Cyclamen europaeum, §§13 n.13, §§273, §§274
Dabir Sayāqī, M., §§122 n.11
Dadachanji, R., §§101 n.32
daeva-, §§95, §§125, §§125
daevalasna, “devil-worshipper”, §§62, §§63
daevic offering, §§269
Dandekar, R., §§108 n.4
Daniel, Book of, §§33, §§33 n.8
Darba-grass, §§208
Dardic peoples of the Hindu Kush, §§106
Darilia, §§249
Darius II, §§151 n.4
Darmesteter, J., §§22 n.1, §§99 n.29, §§106 n.1, §§150 n.2, §§167
Das, Rahul Peter, §§251 n.8
date pulp, §§91 n.18
datura, §§26 n.3, §§217, §§221 n.7
Dayton, W., §§52 n.11
De Iside et Osiride 46: §§52 n.10
dead, §§47, §§209
—from confrontation, through yagé, §§39
—from primordial bovine, §§219
deception of haoma, attempted, §§90
deer skin, at Isfandagān, §122
Dehkhudā, A., §66 n.4, §123, §137 n.28, Table 1
Delatte, A., Table 1
demons, §25, §66, §67, §85
—countered by barley, §208
—disappearance of achieved by Zoroaster, §92
—exorcised by harmel vapor, §55 n.18
—garlic against, §137 n.27
—impede Zoroaster's conception, §93
—of greed, §135, §136
—of sloth, §228
—questioned by Solomon, §95
—seen by Zoroaster, §30 n.6
Dēnkird, §28, §32, §33 n.9, §54 n.13, §55 n.15, §112, §122 n.11, §151 n.4, §284
De Ropp, R., §93 n.27
Desana Indians, §82 n.20
Desmodium species, §155 n.5
Détienne, M., §278
devil, §52 n.10, §76, §77
—offering to, §52 n.10
devil-worshippers, §62, §63, Dhabhar, B., §22 n.1, §122 n.11, §123, §131 n.20
diarrhea, induced by yagê, §40
—induced by harmel, §44b
Dickson, V., Table 1
N, N, dimethyltryptamine, §38, §155 n.5
Dimyâti, M., Table 2
Dinawari, see Abu Hanifa
 Dioscurides, §43, §44, §52, §54 n.13, §265, §266, §268, §270
diuretic, §44, §275
divination, §151 n.4
dog dung, §55 n.14
Dollfuss, D., and H. Schlumberger, §48
Donaldson, B., §68 n.7
donkeys, and harmel, §55
dosage, of harmaline, harmine, §47
doubles, spiritual, §40, §42
douvans, §55 n.18
Dozy, R., Tables 1, 2
dream, of tree with metal branches, §33
dreaming, with yagê, §39
—harmaline and, §42
drôn bread, §24, §103, §133
—consumed by zaatar after Yasna 8.4, §150
—consumption of, as ordeal, §§150-155
—consumption of represents sauma drinking, §133
—pomegranate on, §120
drôn rite, §27, §132, §133, §151
—once included preparing a cushion, §125 n.16
—performed by Zoroaster, §28 n.4
drôn- wine, §28 n.4
Drower, E., §81 n.18, §82, §95, §120
Drower, E., and R. Macuch, §79 n.16, §260, Table 1
drug, consumed with drôn, §132 n.23
dualism in pre-Islamic Iran, §67
Dubler, C., and E. Teres, §52 n.9, Table 2
Dübner, F., §52 n.10
Duchesne-Guillemin, J., §33 n.8
Ducros, M., §43, §270, Table 1
Dumézil, G., §278
DuQuesne, T., §268
duraoša, §91, §98, §98 n.28, §100, §122 n.11, §§134-136, §149, §159, §160, §223, §§226-227
—in Khotanese, §98 n.28, §223
dye, §48, §260
Dymock, W., §55
eagle, §240, §242, §246, §248, §249
Eckhardt, P., §91 n.26
economic value of harmel, §48
ecstasy (see also bliss), §9 n.6, §11, §11 n.8, §13, §203
—as object of sauma drinking, §9
—as purpose of ceremonies, §13
Ecuador, §41
Edelman, D., Table 1
Efron, E., §1 n.1
egg, in sir-u-sedöw, §137
eggplant, §218
Egyptian names for harmel, §32, §§266-268
Egyptian willow, §44a
Eilers, W., and M. Mayrhofer, §101 n.32
Eilers, W., §137 n.27, §208, §220
elephant, §45 n.4
Eliaade, M., §203
emetic, harmel as, §44, §45
Emmerick, R., §223
—as Khotanese duraoša, §98 n.28
employment of priests to kill animals at feasts, §154
Emuşâ, §246
Engler, A., §51 n.8
Enos, Leonard, §155 n.5
Ephedra, §54 n.13, §99, §102, §§105-114
—as additive to sauma, §113
—as barsom, §123
fire, §27, §42, §55, §62, §68 n.6, §69, §82, §91, §99 n.29, §101 n.32, §125 n.15, §135, §163, §260, §274
—bursting of seeds in, §§55, §68 n.6
—in yagé ceremonies, §40
fire-altar, §208
Firúzí, §68 n.7
flag, §§166-168
flatulence, dissipated by harmel, §44b
flax, words for, §§205, §206
Fleming, J., §140
flesh, as gav-, §138
Fleurentin, J., et al., Table 2
Flora Armenii, Table 1
Flora Azerbaidžan, Tables 1, 2
Flora Iranica, §106 n.1
Flora Kirgzskoj SSR, Table 1
flower, at drôn rite, §28 n.4
fly-agaric, see Amanita muscaria
fodder, harmel as, §55
food, synonymous with meat in Avesta, §153
Förskál, P., §§281, Tables 1, 2
Foucauld, C. de, Table 1
Fountain of Righteousness, §§82, §162
fragrance of haoma, §82
frankincense, §§99 n.30, §101, §115
Frass, C., Table 1
frawahr, §30
—of Zoroaster, resides in haoma, §32
frenzy, see battle fury
Friedberg, C., §38
Fritzsche, J., §48
fruits,
—in âb-zöhr, §§130, §130 n.19
—in nérang, §§79 n.17
fuel plants, §§55, §§55 n.16, §238
fuel, §§101, §262
fuel, fragrant, §§101, §238
fungus, words for, §§192, §§196, §§197, §§201, §§202
furrows, around Iranian rites, §124
Gabikean, K., §§55 n.14, Table 1
Gabriel, A., §§82 n.21
Gähämîbârs, §§134-136, §150
Galatia, §§44a, §§52, §270
Galen, §§43-44,
gall, §246
Gandharva, §246
garden rue, see Ruta graveolens
garlic, §§135-137, §§137 n.22, §271
—in Indian tradition, §§137 n.22
— in āb-zōhr, §130, §130 n.19
— in ātaš zōhr, §131
— at Isfandagān, §119, §133, §137 n.27
garment, changed at sauma rites, §24, §151 n.4

Gathas, §7, §24, §27, §91, §136, §§158-161, §164, §176, §239
— recited at haoma drinking, §27
— recitation while intoxicated, §132 n.32 §183
— visionary aspects of, §§162-164
— references to haoma in, §158
Geldner, K., §6, §180
gender, of haoma, §261, §262
— of Iranian plant names, §261, §262
Gennadiou, P., Tables 1, 2
geographical range of harmel, §51
Gershevitch, L., §170, §173, §173 n.3, §182, §212 n.2, §213 n.3, §215 n.4, §216 n.4, §264, §272 n.2, Table 1
Ghafoor, A., §55
Ghālib, L., §112 n.2
Ghosal, S., et al., §155 n.5
Gignoux, Ph., §34
Gilliatt-Smith, B., and W. Turrill, Tables 1, 2
ginseng, §9 n.26

Glycine debilis, §155 n.5
Gnoli, G., §112 n.7
goats, harmel eaten by, §55
Göbricht, G., §148
goddess, at Pasargadā, §151 n.4
Goebel, H., §48
gold, §33, §235, §266
— in Zoroaster’s dream, §33
golden age, §9 n.6
golden-color, §69, §173, §195, §266
Gonda, J., §59, §161, §167, §244
Good Thinking, see Vohu Manah, Wahman, Bahman
grace, absence of idea of, §31
— of Solomon, §83
gracious attributes, of harmel and haoma compared, §84
grains in āb-zōhr, §130, §130 n.19
Grapow, H., et al., §266
glass, §125, §207, §252, §256
Gray, L., §52 n.10
Greater Iranian Area, defined, §18, §18 n.9
Greece, harmel in, §52
— Ruta not used as spice in, §127 n.18
— source of cultivated Ruta, §127
Greek basis of Islamic pharmacology, §43
Greeks, exposed to Iranian beliefs in Anatolia, §127 n.18
Griffiths, J., §52 n.10
Grītan i Drān, §125 n.16, §132 n.24
Grjunberg, A., and L Steblin-Kamenskij, Table 1
grotto, §287 n.3
Guest, E., and A. Rawi, §51
Guest, E., §121 n.10
Guignes, P., Table 2
Gunn, J., §47
Gunther, R., §54 n.13, §127 n.18
Gupta, B., Table 3
Habib, K., §54 n.13
habitats, of harmel and haoma compared, §82

hadānāḥpāta, §120, §121, §122 n.11, §138, §149, §§231-240, §251
— as incense, §118
— term originally intended to unambiguously indicate sauma, §119
— collected as loads of fuel incense, §118
— as ‘pomegranate’, §117, §232, §233, §236
— as supposed additive to sauma, §117
Hašāyuš bull, §138, §138 n.29
Hādi Khān al-‘Alawi, Tables 1, 2
hadīth, §59, §76, §77, §96
hair, in ātaš zōhr, §131
hairs, seen by Zoroaster, §33
hallucinations from harmine, §47 n.6
hallucinogenic drugs, differences in, §35
Haoma, (plant, drug, deity),
— as amulet, §73, §250, §250 n.6
— as barsom, §§123-126, §§252-258
— as healer, §85
— as ōnūmi, §52 n.10, §196, §269
— as ordeal medium, §241
— as priest of Ahura Mazda, §150 n.3
— as sexual stimulant, §93
— associated with health through joy, §82
— at death, §120
— bloom of, §264
— body of priest given to, §90 n.24, §150 n.3
— bovine product and, §138, §138 n.29
— burning of, §99, §100, §159, §160, §227
— change of garment and, §151 n.4
— chief of medicinal herbs, §84
— children and, §90
— converses with Zoroaster, §91, §92
— drink, constitution of, §104,
— unknown to drinkers, §150
— drinking required of priests, §120

Copyrighted material
Haoma (cont.)
—extracted before Yasna, §104, §150
—extracted during recital of Yasna 22-27, §103, §130
—fountain of Righteousness, §82
—fragrance of, §82
—gives pregnant women children, §89
—growth of, §82
—hops and, §§223-225
—importance in Zoroastrian texts, reason for, §71
—importance to Zoroaster’s mission, §32
—in tree, §54 n.13
—in zopōras, §138
—intoxication from, §21, §88, §§163-165
—forgotten, §22, §28 n.4, §32, §150 n.3, §§183-185
—irrelevance to Zoroastrian doctrines, §71
—knowledge of intoxicating property of, §111
—makes rich in men, §84
—makes spanta, §84
—many sorts of, §82
—mōlu and, §52 n.10
—mountains and, §§82, §246
—not drunk by Iranian gods, §10
—omniscient wisdom produced by, §§33, §33 n.9
—ordeals and, §§149-151, §177
—plurality of sorts of, §§61, §82, §82 n.20, §113
—pouring of, into waters, §130 n.19
—preparation reflected in Mandaean miṣa, §81 n.18
—rain and, §284
—residue burned, §99
—rich in sap, §82
—river of, §151 n.4
—salvation obtained through, §89
—self-luminous, §91
—sex and, §93
—source of Truth, §241
—spanta and, §84, §259
—swift, §82
—twig of, §54 n.13
—understands Avesta recitation, §87
—verdant, §82
—verses recited after drinking of, §150
—victorious, §84
—water, §32, §151 n.4
—water and, §§284-288
—white, §195, §260
—wine and, §43
—with bovine urine, §79 n.17, §138 n.28
—with milk, §93, §138, §150 n.30
—withholds assistance to women, §90
—Zoroaster saithed with, §33 n.9
—Zoroaster’s birth and, §54 n.13, §71, §93
—Zoroaster’s supposed rejection of, §10, §72, §§158-160

haoma—(name),
—not usual name for sauma, §64, §122 n.11, §149, §262
—why used for Ephedra, §112
—not found in Mandaean literature, §81
—originally referred to the drink, §113 n.8
—necessary ambiguity of, §57
—disassociated from sauma, §23
—gender of, §§261-262
haoma hymns, unknown date of, §19 n.10
Haplophyllum A. Juss., §127 n.17
Haraiti, mountain, §82
hardwood, §118, §233
Harlez, C. de, §21
harumel,
—absent from Hindu rituals and folk traditions, §§144-146
—as analgesiac, §43 n.1, §§44b, §§55 n.17
—apotropaic use of, §§65-76, §§95, §§141, §§227, §§271
—as dye, §§48, §§260
—as sadāb, §1 n.1, §§53, §§276-283
—as sorcerer’s plant, §§61, §§139
—as weed, §§52, §83
—at Islanpagan, §122
—at Mihragan, §§99 n.20, §131
—avoided by animals, §55
—believed to have same effects as haoma, §122 n.11
—boiling of, §§43 n.1, §§44c, §§95
—bundles of, §§82 n.21, §§124 n.12
—burned at Mihragan, §§99 n.20, §131
—capsule (fruit of), §§44a, §§236
—capules of strung together, §§68 n.7, Figure 3
—carried off by goddess, §§82
—coitus and, §§44, §§86, §§93 n.27
—color of, §§44a, §§4 n.2, §§69, §§77 n.15, §§173, §§195, §§266
—conspicuous to herdsmen, §§55
—consumed for healing and procreation, §§95
—consumed for memory, wisdom and intelligence, §122 n.11
—Coptic names for, §52, §267
—description of, §46
—by Dioscorides, §44a, §52
—diarrhea from, §44b
—diuretic effects of, §44b
—drug content, as distinctive property of, §157
—endorsed by founders of Shi'a Islam, §76, §77
—epilepsy and, §44b
—fattens, §44b
—foliage not toxic, §55
—garlic and, §122 n.11, §271
—gender of, §261, §262
—geographical range of, §51
—growing within ritual areas, §124, §124 n.13
—harvesting of, §124, Figure 5
—Hermes and, §52 n.10, §270
—in American southwest, §52 n.11
—in ḏūl-kāmā, §13 n.28
—in Egypt, §266
—in Europe, §52
—in interior highlands of Anatolia, §83 n.24
—in Iran, §49, §51
—in witchcraft, §62
—incense use, §55, §59, §62, §66, §96, §101
—Indian taboo against, §§144-146
—intoxication from, §47, §86
—from smoke of, §55
—trembling and, §47, §169
—according to early Islamic writers, §43
—not mentioned by Greeks, §43
—in Islamic Iran, §36
—Iranian awareness of, §§43-56
—Iranian names for, §§59-62, §§259-264
—menstruation and, §§44b, §54 n.13
—mountains and, §82
—milk and, §95, §122, §138 n.20
—odor of, §§55, §§55 n.14
—offered to fires, §101 n.32
—oil from, §48
—pharmacological effects of, §§35-37
—pomegranate and, §236
—pressing of, §§44, §§45, §§56, Figure 5
—priestly attitude toward, §122 n.11
—psychoactive constituents of, §47
—psychotropic properties of, §§35-37 §43, §43 n.1
—quantity of required for drug effects, §47
—recognized as sauma and called soma in India, §141
—relationship to sauma understood by priests, §122 n.11
—replaced by Ephedra, §101 n.32, §115
—replaced by pomegranate, §122
—replaced by Ruta, §§53, §§53 n.12, §127, §267
—root of, §§47, §124, Figure 5
—sanctity of, §§66 n.5, §§145, §§157, §265
—self generating, §82
—sex and, §§44, §§86, §§93, §§276-280
—sleep and, §§43 n.1, §§44, §§89, §§93 n.27, §116
—smoke, §§55, §§59, §§62, §§66, §§96
—son of mountains, §82
—sorcery and, §§42, §§43, §§62, §§76, §§139
—swiftness of, §§44 n.3, §§82, §§270
—taboo of, §§44, §146
—tapeworms expelled by 44b
—taste of could insult priests, §155
—toothache treated with, §§43 n.1
—Turks and, §§92 n.26, §§278
—two kinds of, §§44a, §§44 n.2
—variation in alkaloids of, §§47 n.7
—verses recited while burning, §68
—willing of stems of, §126
—with chicken gall, §44
—with fennel juice, §§44a
—with frankincense, §§76, §§99, §§115
—with garlic, §§122 n.11, §§271
—with honey, §§44a
—with milk, §§122, §§138 n.20
—with other plants, §§116
—with saffron, §§44a
—with urine, §§44
—with vinegar, §§43 n.1, §§122 n.11
—with wine, §§44a, §§84

harmaline (and harmine), §§37, §§39, §§47
—aphrodisiac effect of, §§93 n.27
—discovery of, §§48
—distribution of in harmel plant, §124
—in analgesic, §§55 n.17
—in harmel smoke, §§55
—induces vomiting, §§45
—other drugs with, §§116
—in Peganum species, §§52 n.11
—pharmacology of, §§35-37, §§86, §§116, §§169
—harmine, see harmaline

Harnen, M., §§41
hashish, §26 n.4
Haug, M., and E. West, §29
Haug, M., §99 n.29, §120
Amarnavarga, §223
Hava, J., Table 1
al-Hāwī fi al-tibb, §43
hawm al-majūs, §54 n.11, §54 n.13, §54 n.14,
§123, §272 n.2, §273
Hayla, M., Table 2
heaven, §34, §39, §42
Hedayat, S., §68 n.7
hedgehog, §237
Hedysarum gangeticum L. = Desmodium
 gangeticum DC., §155 n.5
Hegnauer, R., §110 n.5
hell, §33, §34, §39, §42, §148, §159
 hemp, §§198-222
—among Scythians, §206
henbane, §26 n.4, §197, §216, §217, §218 n.5,
§222
henna, §48
Henning, W. B., §26 n.4, §61, §62, §66, §76,
§132 n.23, §139, §212, §217, §223
Heraclès, §286
herdsman, §18 n.9
—harmful to nutritious, §55
Hermes, §52 n.10, §270
hermesias, §90 n.25, §177, §270
Herodotus, §125, §152, §256
Hillebrandt, A., §108 n.4
Hindu Kush, §82
Hindus, not to touch harmel, §145
Hinnells, J., §106 n.1
hippophobas, Magian plant, §§5 n.15, §149
history of sauma research, §5 n.3
hobgoblins, §85
Hocking, G., Table 3
Hoffmann, K., §138, §181, §209 n.4, §218 n.5
hog, §243, §246
hole for killing sheep, §125 n.15
hōm (see also haoma), §106, §269, §272,
Table 3
—as barsom, §§123-126, §273
—burning of, §§99, §115, §131
hōm and mang, §28, §28 n.4, §151 n.4
Hōm Yasht, §§27, §§28 n.4, §§87-91, §90
 n.24, §§162-184, §228, §246
—brings health and victory, §87
—origin of, §133
—purpose of recital of, §87
—recited while haoma is consumed, §150
homeland of Indo-Iranians, §18 n.9, §112 n.7
honey, §§44, §§52 n.10, §90 n.25
Hooper, D., §121 n.10, Table 1
hops, §§223-225
horn, as gav-, §131, §138, §138 n.28
—paring from, in ātaka zōhr, §131
Horn, P., Table 1
horses, §§55 n.15, §§64 n.3, §165, §181
—excited by harmel seeds, §45 n.4
Hort, A., §52
Houtum-Schindler, A., §79 n.17
Hubaysh ibn al-Hasan, §§44b
Hübschmann, H., Table 1
Hulyat al-muttaqin, §76
Human Urine, An Elixir of Life, §7 n.4
Humbach, H., §§135 n.26, §184
Husayn, §§68, §§68 n.7, §§76, §77
Husayn, M. Mu'min b. M. Zāman
Tanakbūni, §§53 n.23
Hutūs, wife and sister of Wistāsp, §28
Hyde, Thomas, §§135 n.25
Hyonians, §28
Hyoscymus, see henbane
Ibn Bayštār, §§43, §§44, §§93 n.27
Ibn Manzūr, §121 n.10
Ibn Qutaiba, §§53 n.12
Ibn Samajjin, §§44a
Ibn Wārid, §§44b, §§93 n.27
impostors, excluded from priesthood, §153
inauguration of pre-Islamic Iranian rulers,
§151 n.4
incense, §§55, §§101, §§101 n.31-32, §§115, §§260, §§263
incense plants in Iran, §101
incubi, §85
Indian priests, see Brahmins
Indian sources on sauma, value of, §15, §16
Indo-Aryan, arrival in India, §19, §141
—interest in drug plants, §§55 n.5
Indo-European peoples, §§18 n.9, §50
—religious background of, §33
—oral literature of, §19
Indo-Iranian homeland, §§9 n.9, §§112 n.7
Indo-Iranian priestly poetry, obscurity of,
§161
Indra, §§10, §§12, §§231-233, §§240-242, §§246,
§248, §§250, §§286
initiation
—of Persian king, §151 n.4
—or priests, §150
—or shamans, §39
—sauma in, §§31, §§120, §§151 n.4
—yagō in, §42

Copied material
insignia of Kirdir, §34
insignia of Persian priests, §126
Insler, S., §15, §159, §250 n.8
intangible world, see mēnōg existence
intoxicating plants, earliest inventory of, §93
n.27
intoxication, §158, §164, §166, §167, §169, §170, §197, §204, §283
—alcoholic, during ceremonies, §132 n.22
—from haoma, in Avesta, §21, §171, §173
—from harmel, §36, §643-56, §86, §167
—from sauma, §84
—extolled in Avesta, §88
—possible unpleasant aspects of, §88
—in India, §142
—in India outside of Yajña, §155 n.5
—in Iranian rites, §101
—not possible from Ephedra, §111
—role in Iranian ceremonies forgotten, §22, §32, §111
introduction to Zand i Wahman Yasht, §33
Iranian ethnobotany, continuity of, §18, §146
Iranian sources, advantages of, §§16-19
Irano-Turanian floral region, §51 n.8
Iraq, harmel in, §51
iron, mixed with clay, §33 n.8
‘Isa ibn Māssa, §44b
Isfahan, §68 n.7
Isfand (see also harmel), §44a, §76, §132 n.17
—at Bahramjana, §122 n.11
—at Isfandagan, §122
Isfand, month name, §259
Isfandagan festival
—at tas zōhr burned at, §122, §131
—at garlic at, §119, §133, §137 n.27
—at harmel drunk with milk at, §138 n.30
Isfandarmūd day, §122, §259
Ishaq ibn ‘Imrân, §44c
Islamic conquest of Iran, its effect on sauma experience, §36
Islamic invasion of India, §107
Islamic view of harmel use in Iran, §67
Italy, harmel in, §52
itinerant priests, §153
Ivanov, V., et al., §43 n.1
İzadpanah, Ḥa, §68 n.7, Table 1
Jackson, A.V.W., §55 n.15, §106 n.1
Jahrom, §64 n.3
Jakobson, R., §199
Jamadagni, §246
Jamālzāda, M., §277
Jamasp, Ḥa, §214 n.2
Jamaspasa, K., §184
Jāmī, §66
Jamshid, King, §135
jasmine, §44a
Jaśn-i Mīhrīz, see Mihragān
Javadi, Ḥa, §69 n.8
Jettmar, K., §101 n.31
jinn, §66 n.5
Jivaro, §39, §41
Jones, M. E., §52 n.11
Jones, Sir William, §1 n.1
Jones, W. H. S., §149
judges, at Yasnā, §150
jumping feather crowns, §82 n.20
—gender of, §261
juniper, §101 n.31
justice, sense of, §177
—test for, §90 n.25
Kadri, Ḥa, §69 n.8
Kaganoff, B., Table 1
Kaghan Valley, Table 3
Kamīn Shapur, Rivāyat of, §132 n.17
Kamel, S., et al., §47 n.7
Kanga, M. F., §30 n.7, §150 n.2
karapas, §§85, §158, §159
Karkha River, §90 n.25
Karsten, R., §38 n.12
Kāshghari, §278
Kashikar, C., §108 n.4
Kasumov, M., §48
Katrak, J. K., §135 n.25
Kava, §167
kavis, §9, §158
Keith, A., §11 n.8
Kennedy, Alison, §110 n.10
Kerman, §122, §135 n.25, §138 n.30, §276
Khāqānī, §66
Khashimov, Kh., et al., §47 n.6
Khattab, A., and M. Nabil el-Hadidi, Table 2
Kholopin, Ḥa, §91 n.26
Khodadadian, A., §99 n.29, §131
Khorasan, §51, §101 n.31
kings of Persia, §177
—drink theombrotion, §90 n.25
—initiation of, §151 n.4
Kirdir, §34
Kirtikar, K., and E. Basu, §155 n.5
Kisliakov, N.A., and A. Pisarcik, §68 n.7
Kitāb ‘Aṣāyib al-maxlūqāt, §55 n.15
Kitāb al-Ḥawi fī al-ṭīb, §43
Kitāb al-Ṣaydāna fi ṭībb, §§54 n.13, §272, §274
Kitāb al-Jāmī’ li-mufraḍāt, §44
Kitāb al-Nabāt, §§55 n.16
Klimov, G., §201
Klingenschmitt, G., §231
knowledge, as objective of yagé use, §40
Kotwal, F., and J. Boyd, §99 n.29, §104
Kotwal, F., §99 n.29
Kramrisch, S., §8 n.5
Kühn, C., §54 n.13
Kuiper, F.B.J., §8 n.5, §162, §162 n.1, §241, §242, §246
kumiss, §132 n.22, §183
Kunda, §213
kundur, §§76, §§99, §§101 n.32, §§115, §263
Kutlu, H., and H. Amal, §47
Läffler, R., et al., Table 1
Lagarde, Paul de, §1 n.1, §52 n.10, §275
Lamb, F. Bruce, §38 n.12
Lane, E. W., Table 1
language, magical use of, §§244-246
Laouest, E., Table 2
Laws of Manu, §1 n.1
lead, in Zoroaster’s dream, §33
leaf,
—of pomegranate, §§117, §120
—of harmel, §§59, §96
—of pāṛā, §249
Leclerc, L., §44
Legey, F., §66 n.5
Lenjān-i Tāt, §68 n.7, §263
Leonard, J., Tables 1, 3
leprosy, §§76, §246
Lewin, B., §§55 n.16, §121 n.10
libation, see zaodra
light in yagé ceremonies, §40
lightning, §§85, §286
Lincoln, B., §12
Lindquist, E., §68 n.7
linen, names for, §207
liquid omniscient wisdom, §33
livelihood of Indo-Iranian priests and animal sacrifice, §§215-215
living plants preferred in Iranian rituals, §124 n.1
Lokotsch, K., §52, Table 1
Lorimer, D. L. R., §83
Löw, L., §51, §52, Tables 1, 2
Lumva, M., §259
Luna, Luis, §38 n.12
Lushington, A., Table 2
Macdonnell, A. A., §272 n.2, §285
McKenna, D., et al., §38
Madian, D. M., §28 n.4, §28 n.5, §33 n.9, §54 n.13, §151 n.4
madness, and harmel, §§43 n.1, §270
Magi, §§54 n.13, §256
—as charlatans, §§49 n.1
—as fidelity among, §151
—as haoma of, §§54 n.11, §§54 n.13-14, §123, §273
—as Parthian, §148
—as teaching of, §25
—as plant names of, §90 n.25
—as plants, §270
—as rites of, §§125, §256
—as uses of plants by, §149
magic, §§142, §§209, §210
Mahdihassan, S., §110
Majlis, M. Bāqir, §§76, §77
Makowicki, S., Tables 1, 2
Maksimovich, K., Table 1
Malandra, W., §§240, §§242-244, §§249
Mallik, A., and A. Mohajir, Table 1
Manandhar, N., §§108, §§109, Table 3
Mandeans, §§79-89
—as harmel consumption by, §§5
mang, §§26 n.4, §§43, §§151 n.4, §§197-218
—as etymology of, §§220-222
—as Wishtasp, §§28, §§29, §§215 n.3, §§219, §§220
—as Zarduxš, §§215 n.3
—as ‘psychoactive drug’, §§26, §§26 n.4, §§205, §§620-211
—as not a poison, §§26 n.3, §§219
—as refers to sauma, §§26-28, §§26 n.3, §§28 n.4, §§224
—as and wine, §§28 n.4
Māraspand day, §§28 n.4
mares, avoid achaemenis, §149
—as milk of, §183
marriages, harmel burned at, §66
Marw hospital, §§4b
marigold, §§54 n.13, §§273, §§274
Marzell, H., §§127 n.18, Table 1
Mascals i Grivés, F., Table 1
Masih al-Dimashqī, §§4b
Massé, H., §§68 n.7, Table 1
Material world, created against Evil Spirit, §30
Mayer, T., Tables 1, 2
Mayrhofer, M., §§208, §§221 n.7, §253
Mazdayasnic Vision, §150
meat,
—as ab-karma eaten with, §§137 n.28
—as demon greedily eats, §§135, §§136
—synonymous with food in Avesta, §153
meditation, little evidence for in ancient
Iran, §31
Menges, K., Table 1
mēnōg existence, §§28-33, §35
—means of viewing, §31, §34
menstruation, induced by harmel, §§44b, §54
n.13
Mesopotamia, Indo-Iranians in, §18 n.9
Mexico, Peganum in, §52 n.11
Meyerhof, M., §281, Table 2
Meyerhof, M., and G. Sobhy, §54 n.13, §122
n.11
Mig-hid, A., §265, Tables 1, 2
Mihira festival, §99 n.30, §115
—ātaḥ zōhr at, §131
milk, §187, §188, §192
—as gav-, §138, §239
—at drón rite, §28 n.4
—in ab-zōhr, §130, §130 n.19
—of mares, §183
—of red cow, §95
—sour, at initiation of king, §151 n.3
—with haoma, §84, §93, §103
—with harmel, §122 n.11
—with sauma, §138, §138 n.30
—with soma in India, §138
—with theombrotion, §90 n.25
milky sap, §107
Milky Way, §40, §42
Minorsky, V., §137 n.28
mint, in sīr-u-sedōw, §137
Minūḫurān, §122 n.11
miša, Mandaeian oil ofunction, §81 n.18
Mishnah, similarity to Neroğanstān, §132
Mithra(s), §214, §284, §287 n.3
—Indraic traits of, §286
Mithridates Eupator, §127 n.18
mixed iron, §33 n.8
mixture of drugs, §116
Modi, J. J., §120, §135 n.25
Moghadam, M., §71 n.9
Molé, M., §28 n.2-5, §136, §26, §151 n.4
mūdva (moly), §44, §52, §52 n.10, §270
Monchi-Zadeh, D., §122 n.11, Table 2
Mongolia, §52
Monier-Williams, M., §140, §155 n.5, Table 2
monotheism, §67
Mooney, H., Table 2
Morgenstierne, G., §61 n.2, §231, §261, Tables 1, 3
moringa oil, §44a
Morocco, §§55 n.18, §66 n.5, Table 2
mortar, §§44c, §§45, §§47, §§52 n.10, §§81 n.18,
§104, §124, §124 n.12, §137, §186, §187, §196, §197, §223, §262, §269
mountain, cleft by Indra and Mithras, §286
mountain rue, §1 n.1, §83, §267
Mt. Savalan, §§55 n.15
mountains, §§6, §§83, §§83 n.22, §§246
mucus, dissipated by harmel, §44b
Muhammad Baqir Majlisi, §76, §77
Muhammad, §§59, §§66 n.5, §§68, §§68 n.7, §§76, §77, §96
Mu'in, M., Table 1
Mūlla Nasruddin, §§69 n.8
Müller, K. O., §§83 n.22
Müller, R.E.G., §143
Munáncsi, B., §205
mushroom, §§45, §§187-204, §§243, §§249
—as soma, §§5-14
Musil, A., Table 1
Muslims, influence on Pahlavi account of
Zoroaster's life, §32
—import harmel to India, §§54, §§141
myrrh, §90 n.25
mystery and glory, seen by Wishtāsp, §28
mythology, learned by means of yagé, §40
Nabil el-Hadidi, M., §§52 n.11
Nadjarni, K., §110 n.5, Tables 1, 2, 3
Nair, N., Table 3
Najafābād-e Tāt, §§68 n.7
Naranjo, Claudio, §§39, §§42, §§45 n.3, §§47, §§93
n.27, §116
Naranjo, Plutarco, §§38 n.12
Narten, J., §§177, §§250 n.8
Nāṣir-i Khusraw, §§66
Nāšeri, A., Tables 1, 3
natema, §§38, §§42, see yagé
Nebuchadnezzar's dream, §§33 n.9
nērang, §§24, §§79 n.17, §§125 n.15-16, §§138 n.28
Nepal, §109
Neriosengh, §183
Nerōsang, §§28
New Years, §§71 n.2, §§122
—inaugurations at, §§151 n.4
Nikitin, V., Figure 4
nine-holed plate, §104
Nitati, §§246
non-Aryans, access to sauma by, §§142
nonintoxicating plants, need for, §§155
—used in Phlr. times, §§14
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>North Africa, harmel in, §55 n.18, §66 n.5, §265</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>nō₃-swā, §79 n.17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>noxious creatures, Ruta and, §127 n.18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>—at Isfandagān, §122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>nūzdī, §79 n.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Nyberg, H. S., §28 n.4, §28 n.5, §151 n.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>nyctegreton, Magian plant, §149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>O'Flaherty, W. D., §5 n.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>obscuration of identity of sauma in,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>§143, §144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>odana, porridge, §11 n.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>odor of burning harmel, §55, §66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Odyssey, §52 n.10, §270</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ohrmazd (see also Ahura Mazda), §25, §28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>—helps convert Wishtāsp, §28 n.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>—interprets Zoroaster’s dream, §33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>—sends Ashawahisht to Wishtāsp, §28 n.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>—sends Bahman to Jamshid, §135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>—sends Nerōsang to Ashawahisht, §28 n.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>—threatens Wishtāsp, §28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>—uses sauma to show mēnōg existence, §31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>oil, from harmel, §48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>—moringa oil, §44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>—sesame oil, §44, §137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>oleaster, §101 n.32, §130 n.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>olives, §44a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Omidsalar, Mahmoud, §43 n.1, §68 n.7, §83, §277</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>omniscient wisdom, produced through</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>haoma, §33, §33 n.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ȍdōmō, §52 n.10, §197, §269</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ophiusa, plant ‘characterized by snakes’,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>§149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ordeal, §177, §241</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>—yagé consumed as, §39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>—sauma in, §149-151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Orrisa, §8 n.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Osadita, M., §52, §55 n.14, Table 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ossadcha-Janata, N., §52, §55 n.18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>otherworld, knowledge of, §40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ōwzūr, offering to Water, §130 n.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pakistan Forest Research Institute, Table 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>palm wine, §90 n.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Panjī, §286</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>panja, §66, §68 n.7, Figure 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Papyrus Ebers, §268</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>para.haoma-, ‘subsidiary haoma’, §113, §130 n.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>—not identical with MPers. parāhōm, §113 n.8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>parāhōm, identical to āb-zōhr, §130 n.19</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>—not identical with Avestan para.haoma-, §113 n.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pariah caste, harmel sacred to, §145</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Parsa, A., §64 n.3, Tables 1, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Parscenes, §102, §122 n.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Parthian Magi, §148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>—use of drug plants by, §149, §149 n.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Parthian origin of Ardā Wirāz Nāmag, §26, §148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pasargadae, §151 n.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pāṭḥ-, §232, §233, §§240-251</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Patel, R. M., §7 n.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pāṭḥā-, §240, §249, §251</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Patzak, A., §83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pavry, C., §105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>payment of priests with portions of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>—sacrificed animals, §153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Payne Smith, R., §272 n.2, §273</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pazzyryk, §206</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>peacock, §90 n.25, §172, §174, §175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pecos, Texas, harmel in, §52 n.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pedersen, H., §199, §201</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pedrotti, G., and V. Bertoldi, Table 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Peganum harmala, see harmel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Peganum Mexicanum Gray, §52 n.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Peganum nigellastrum Bunge, §52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Peganum Taxiscanum, §52 n.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pennes, H., and P. Hoch, §47 n.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>People of the Book, §32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Perrin, B., §151 n.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pestle, held with right hand, §123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>petals of bahman, §122 n.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Phoenix, Arizona, §52 n.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Piddington, H., §140, Table 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pig, §246, §249</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pine nuts, §90 n.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pine resin, §101 n.32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pinkley, H., §38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pischel, R., §188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pit, §125 n.15, §158</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>plate with nine holes, §104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pliny, §55 n.15, §90 n.25, §149, §174, §270</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Plutarch’s De Iside et Osiride 46: §52 n.10,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>§196, §269, §270</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Plutarch’s Life of Artaxerxes III 1.3, §151 n.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>poetic language, §237, §§244-246</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pokorny, J., §212, §255</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Polak, J., §101 n.32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pomegranate, §54 n.13, §102, §105, §119, §124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>—a hardwood, §118, §233</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
General Index

— and harmel, §121, §236
— as additive to sauma, §117
— as barsom, §123, §126
— as hadanaepata-, §117, §§231-236
— as substitute for harmel, §122, §126
— as earlier substitute for sauma than Ruta, §132 n.24
— as sauma, §117, §132 n.24
— at dron rite, §28 n.4
— fruit, §118,
— resemblance to harmel fruit, §121
— symbolic value of, §118
— in ab-zohr, §130
— leaf, §117
— on dron bread, §132 n.24
— preferred in Yasna as sauma substitute, §132 n.24
— root, §117
— seed juice, used for haoma juice, §120
— twig, §104, §117, §120
Pontus, Mithradates King of, §127 n.18
poplar, §233
Porushasp/Pourushasp, father of
Zoroaster, §32, §92, §93, §151 n.16
pouring of izzerlik, §69
Prajapati, §246
Pramanian wine, §52 n.10
Prasun Kafirs, §61 n.2
preparation,
— of haoma, §81 n.18
— of harmel, §44, §56, Figure 5
— of sauma, §56
— of yagé, §82 n.20
priests,
— in Yasna, §103
— Indian, see Brahman
— initiate Persian king, §151 n.4
— initiation of, §150
— obliged to consume sauma, §31, §153
— organs of sight and hearing of, §90 n.24,
  §150 n.3
— Sasanian, §22
priesthood, defined by sauma rites, §126
priestly vocabulary, §237
problems of sauma phenomena, §15
Proto-Indo-Iranians, §617-19, §112 n.7
— replacement of sauma among, §14
Psalm 19.11 (Sogdian), §182
Pseudo-Democritus, §§55 n.15, §90 n.25, §149,
  §155 n.5, §177
puffball, §8 n.5
Qazilbash, N., §111, Table 3
al-Qazwini, §§55 n.15, §122 n.11
Rachner, H., §52 n.10
raisins, with pomegranate seeds, §122
— with harmel, §122, §131
raspi, §§99 n.29, §104, §150
ravines, §82
al-Razi, §43
rebirth, by means of yagé, §40
red bahan, §122 n.11
red bull, §84
red cow, §35 n.25
red harmel, §44a, §44 n.2
red pigment, from harmel, §48
red vrksa-plant, §§194-195
Redhouse, J., §270, Table 1
Reichel-Dolmatoff, G., §40, §82 n.20
Rempis, C., §28 n.4
Renaud, H. and G. Colin, §122 n.11, Table 2
residue of haoma burned, §§99 n.29, §104
resistance to haoma effects, §150, §150 n.3
resurrection of the dead, §138 n.29
revelation of Zoroaster, §31
Rhazes' Liber Continens, §43
rhubarb, identified with sauma, §61 n.2
rice, in ab-zohr, §130 n.19
Riedl, H., §106 n.1
Rieu, E. V., §52 n.10
Rg Veda, §§5-14, §19, §142, §155 n.5, §198,
  §243, §246, §283
— magical use of, §142
— mushroom mentioned in, §188
— urine drinking in, §7
Rightness (see also Avestan Aša), §162
ring with bull hair, §104
ritual details, proliferation of in India, §143
rituals, and strength of drug, §82 n.20
Rivayat of Kamdin Shapur, §123, §132 n.17
Rivayat of Kaus Kamdin, §123
rivayat, §155 n.25
river of (or for) haoma water, §32, §151 n.4
Rivier, L., and J. Lindgren, §38
robe of Cyrus, §151 n.4
roll call of priests, §150
Rolland, E., Table 1
Rome,
— Ruta as spice in, §125 n.15
— spread of Ruta throughout Europe from,
  §127 n.18
rooster, §228, §237
root,
— of pātā, §249
— of pomegranate, §117
—of bahman, §122 n.11
—of harmel, §47, §76, §124, Figure 5
roots, seen by Zoroaster, §33
Rosenberg, F., §28 n.5
Rosenthal, F., §26 n.4
Roth, R., §1 n.1
Rüdaki, §§274-280
rue, §44a, §52, §53, §102, §127, §127 n.18, see also Ruta graveolens
Russell, James, §55 n.14
Ruta abiflora, §127 n.17
Ruta chalcolensis, §53, §127, §265, §281, Table 2, Figure 2
Ruta graveolens, §1 n.1, §52 n.10, §54 n.13, §102, §§127-141, §155 n.5, §265, §§274-280, Table 2, Figure 2
—aprotopic power of, §127 n.18
—as ritual substitute for harmel, §139, §266
—association with harmel, §1 n.1, §52 n.10, §53, §53 n.12, §267, §§276-281
—at Gähmbär and third day after death, §§134-136
—burned in Gähmbär fire, §135
—causes gastroenteritis, §132 n.24
—cultivation outside of Greece unknown before Hellenistic time, §141
—in āb-kāma, §137 n.28
—in āb-zōhr, §130, §130 n.19
—in ātaš zōhr, §131
—in India, §1 n.1, §134, §135 n.25, §§140-142
—names for, Table 2
—not in Indian Ayurvedic herbal, §141
—reached India from Iran, §140
—represents sauma in rituals, §§128-139
—Sanskrit names for, §140
—sent to Indian Zionists, §134
—tasted on all religious occasions in Iran, §128
—toxicity of, §140
Ruta montana, §1 n.1, §53, §127, Table 2, Figure 2
Ruta tuberculata, §127 n.17
Saad, F., §55 n.15
Sábetí, H., Table 3
Sachau, E., §122, §122 n.11, §137 n.27
sacrifice (see also animal sacrifice), §§153-155, §159, §160, §256
sacrilege, ophiusa as punishment for, §149
Sad Dar (metrical), §135 n.25
sadāb, §1 n.4, §44, §53, §127, §132, §265, §267, §§276-287
—in drōn, §120, §132
saffron, §90 n.25
—mixed with harmel, §44a
saffron paper, at Ifandagān, §122
Safina, I., et al., §47 n.7, Table 1
Šafinázad, J., §68 n.7
Said, H., and R. Elakie, §54 n.13, §272
Saka use of haoma, §§223-225
—in hemp, §207
sal ammoniac, §45
Sālavṛkṣa, §242
salt, §68 n.7, §137
salt peter, §48
Sanāvi, §64 n.3
sanctity of harmel, §§57-64, 65 n.5, §157, §§259-265
sandalwood, §101, §101 n.32, §260, §279
sandarac, §260
Sanjar, §272
Sanskrit, in Nepal, §109
Santal plant name putka, §8 n.5
saṣṣyant’s “savior”, §91, §138 n.29
Sarcostemma brevistigma, §§107-109, §140
—as replacement for Ephedra, §3 n.2, §110 n.5
Sasanian Avesta, now largely lost, §23
Sasanian commentaries in Nērangistān, §132
Sasanian Zoroastrianism, establishment of, §34
sauma (see also haoma, soma),
—absence of has never impeded Vedic rituals, §142
—as a climbing plant, §110 n.5
—as offering to be drunk by gods, §10
—at drōn rite, §28 n.4
—at inauguration/initiation of rulers, §151 n.4
—availability of, §18, §142
—change of garment and, §151 n.4
—concealment of identity of, §150 n.3
—cultivation of, §49
—defined, §4, §20
—divination by, §151 n.4
—drinking reported in non-Avestan Iranian literature, §98 n.28
—drunk in original Yasna, §133
—effects of, §34, §36
—etymology of PIIr. term “sauma”, §§187-197
—geographical limits of, §50, §51
—historical problems of, §15
—in āb-zōhr, §130, §130 n.19
—intoxicant use absent from Iran today, §36
General Index

—intoxication from, §34, §84
—knowledge of outside of Aryan society, §144
—mountains and, §83
—names for, §§55 n.15, §122 n.11, §149
—necessary to priests’ authority to conduct sacrifices, §153
—need to control access to in India, §143
—not always used in early Yasnas, §151
—not desired by Wiraz, §24
—not drunk by gods in Iran, §10
—not necessary for Vedic magic, §142
—only means of viewing mēnāg, §31
—only substance necessarily consumed in Yasna, §132
—ordeal aspect of use of, §§150-155
—parallels with yajé use, §42
—preparation of, §56, §124
—problem of replacement, §14, §15
—referred to as “liquid omniscient wisdom”, §33
—reflected at initiations by pomegranate leaves, §120
—represented by magical plants in the Chirocatemala, §149
—reputation of, §§58, §112
—role in ancient Iranian society, §§70-75
—role as intoxicant understood by 17th-century priests, §122 n.11
—roots, branches, blossoms or seed, absent from RgVeda, §6
—shunned by animals, §§55, §§55 n.15
—synonyms for, §§55 n.15, §122 n.11, §149
—use as incense, §101
—use by daēvayasna, §63
—victory by means of, §84
—with milk, §§84, §§93, §103, §130, §130 n.19, §138, §138 n.30
—working definition of, §20

sauma rites
—and animal sacrifice, §15
—at initiation of Persian king, §151 n.4
—marked by discarded plants, §124
—used to maintain fidelity among Magi, §151
—define Iranian priests, §126
—historical persistence of, §§147-155
Sadī, §66
Schapka, U., and O. Volk, Table 3
Scherath, B., §133
Schmidt, H.-P., §180
Schmucker, W., §54 n.13
Schultes, R.E., §38
Schwartz, M., §7, §§68 n.6, §132 n.23, §158, §161, §162, §162 n.1, §163 n.2, §180 n.4, §186, §213 n.2 & 3, §238, §250 n.8, §287 n.3
Schweinfurth, G., Tables 1, 2
sciatica, treated with harmel, §44b
scorpions, §122
Scythian (see Saka)
seasonal variation in alkaloid content of harmel, §47 n.7
seat for gods, §§123, §§125, §§209, §§254, §§256
secrecy of identity of sauma, §§58, §§143, §§150 n.3
secrecy of initiation of king, §151 n.4
serpents, see snakes
sesame oil, §§44, §§81 n.18, §137
seven branches/metals/ages, §33
sexual aspects of harmel, §§44, §§86, §§93, §§276-280
Śambra, §§51, §§82
—as king of drugs, §84
Śalta d’Śambra, §§579-88
—purpose of reciting text, §86
—recommends harmel for pregnancy, §89
Shaked, S., §30
shamans, §39
—at yajé ceremonies, §40
Shamish, §82
al-Shamma, A., and A. Abdul-Ghany, §47, §47 n.6
Sharifabad, §115 n.9
Shea, D., and A. Troyer, §123
sheep, killing of, §§125 n.15, see also animal sacrifice
Sheriyar, K., §128
Szé, §213 n.2
Shi‘a founders endorse harmel, §§76, §§77
Shina, §263
Shokurzade, J., §§66 n.4, §§68 n.7
Shrestha, K., Table 3
Siberia, §§5, §§18 n.9
—urine drinking in, §7
sieve, §104
sifting of powered harmel seed, §44c
sight, §285
—improved by chewing Banisteriopsis, §39
—improved by harmel, §44
—of priest surrendered to haoma, §§90 n.24
Sikhs, not to touch harmel, §145
silver, in Zoroaster’s dream, §33
Sims-Williams, N., §173 n.3

Copyrighted material
Soma, §1, §§105-107, §188, §§194-197, §208, §210, §242, §246, §262, §283
—andon armā, §273
—and bhāṅga-, §198, §211
—and pātā-, §240, §248, §251
—and śatadhāra-, §§283-286
—as deity, §6
—drops of, §285
—as creeper, §§110 n.5
—in Laws of Manu, §1 n.1
—in RgVeda, §§5-14
—modern substitute for, §3 n.2, §§107-109
—precedent of, §155 n.5
—presence in rituals rationalized, §9 n.6, §10
—received on grass cushions by gods, §125
—shows Truth, §241
—substitutes for, in Brāhmaṇas, §143
—withdrawn from wicked world, §9 n.6
soma cart, §108 n.4
soma rites,
—Ephedra in, §§107-109
—modern, §107
—in South India, §107, §189
—a single plant used in, §105
Soma: Divine Mushroom of Immortality, §5
somalatā, 'soma creeper', §109, §140
somavallari, §140
sonaderos 'dreaming places', §39
songs, and yagē, §39, §40
sons, as benefit from haoma extraction, §§90-93
Sontheimer, J. von, §44
sorcery, §76
—Muslim suspicions of harmel use as, §42, §43, §76, §139
—punishment for, §150
Soroushian, J., §79 n.17, §101 n.32, §122 n.11, Table 1
Sotoudeh, M., §§274, Table 1
Sotoudeh, M. and L. Afshar, §§54 n.13, §§272
soul forms, seen by Zoroaster, §33
soul of slaughtered animal, contact with, §138 n.32
soul, benefit of ceremonies to, §153
sour milk, at initiation of king, §§151 n.4
Spandarmad month, §§28 n.4, §122
Spandarmad, 'the Earth', §33
Spanish names of harmel, §52
specialists, needed in ceremonies, §§41, §42
speech, organs of, surrendered to haoma, §90 n.24
spells, §85
—in Śatka ṣambra, §87
—recited with yagā consumption, §§82 n.20
spices, with harmel/sauna, §§137, §§137 n.28
Spiegel, F., §21
spirit beings, §40
spirit double, of Kirdir, §34
spirit existence, see menog existence
spirit forms of all things, §30
spirit guides, §39
spirits of animals, contacted by priests, §§138 n.32, §153
spiritual worlds, comparison of, §42
Spitāma, §§28, §91
sponge, words for, §§198, §202
Sptānā Armaiti, §§28 n.4, §122, §259
spōnta birds, §82
Śrivastava, T., and O. Gupta, Table 3
Staal, Frits, §§107 n.5, §§109
Stannard, J., §§52 n.10
Stapf, O., Table 3
stardness, §§28, §§28 n.5, §§29, §§34, §§35
Statice limonium, §§122 n.11
Steblin-Kamenskij, L., Table 3
steel, in Zoroaster’s dream, §33
Stein, A., §§110 n.10
Steingass, F., Table 1
Steinschneider, M., Table 1
stems of sauma, how prepared, §124
Stephania hernandifolia, §240
Stewart, J. L., §122 n.11, Table 3
stimulant action of ephedrine, §110
strainer, §44, §81 n.18, §104
strewing of barsom, §124, §256
Stutley, M., §240, §249
substitutes for sauma, §9, §105, §107, §109, §150 n.3
sulfuric acid, §48
Sultan Selim, §93 n.27
Sultan Süleyman, §93 n.27
Sundararaj, D., and G. Balasubramanyam, Table 2
superstitious view of harmel as sorcerer's plant, §42, §43, §76, §139
surrender to haoma, §90 n.24, §150
swiftness of harmel/sauma, §64 n.3, §82, §270
şyen, §246
synonyms for sauma, §55 n.15, §122 n.11, §149
"syntropy," §246
Syria, Ruta in, §127
Syriac Book of Medicines, §132 n.21
Syriac names for harmel, §52, §53, §260
Syriac name for hawm al-majūs, §54 n.13, §273
Szemerényi, O., §250 n.8
taboo of harmel, §§144-146
Täckholm, V., Table 1
tamarisk, §54 n.13, §123
—held by ancient Near Eastern priests, §126
tapeworms, expelled by harmel seeds, §44b
Tavadia, J.C., §150 n.2
temperature of body lowered by harmelaline, §47
temple, Achaemenian at Pasargadae, §151 n.4
temples, absence from Iran, §124 n.13
terror,
—experienced with yagé, §39
—experienced with ophusia, §149
Tetraclinis articulata, §260
tetrahydroarmine, §37
Texas, harmel in, §52 n.11
tāāyṛti, Old Persian month, §137 n.27
thalassaegle, Magian plant, §149
Thalen, D., §51
theombrotia, Magian plant, §90 n.25, §174, §177
Thieme, P., §125, §253
Thomas, B., §259
Thompson, R. Campbell, §51
Thomson, Margaret, §51
threats, made by Ohrmazd, §28
three cups/swallows of haoma, §27
Tištṛya, §282, §284
Tiemcen, §66 n.5
toglan, A. Z. V., §54 n.13, §122
Tomaschek, W., §270
toothache, treated with harmel and vinegar, §43 n.1
Toporov, V., §202 n.1, §237
Townsend, C. C., §127 n.17
Trabut, L., Table 2
Trachylobium Hermemannianum, §260
tree, in Zoroaster's dream, §33
—branch of red tree, §195
—haoma in, §54 n.12
trembling, §167, §169,
—from harmaline, §47
truble, §243, §249
Truth (see also Av. Aša), §162, §164, §241
—haoma/soma as source of, §41, §177, §232, §241
Truth-driving (Av. ašavāzah-) haoma, §21
Truth-mocker, §85
Tubahat al-Mu'minin, §54 n.13
Tukano Indians of Colombia, §40, §82 n.20
Turks, arrival in Iran, §18
—harmel among, §92 n.26
Turkish names for harmel, §69, §263, §265, §270, §278, §280, §282
turmeric, §137
Turner, R., §221 n.7
turpentine-wood, chewed at king's initiation, §151 n.4
twig, §252
—of barsom, §§123-126
—of hōm, §54 n.13
—of pomegranate, §117, §120
—of Wahman, §122 n.11, §260
two plants extracted as sauma in Iran, §105, §114
tying of barsom twigs, §124 n.12
University of California (Jepson) Herbarium, Table 1
Unvala, J. M., §22 n.1, §122 n.11
Unvala, M. R., §122 n.11, §123, §132 n.17, §135 n.25
Uralic words for mushroom, §§197-203
urine, §218 n.5, §262
—as gav-, §138
—drinking of, in RgVeda, §7, §7 n.4
—with haoma, §79 n.17, §125 n.15-16, §138 n.28
—white twig of, §260
—warriors, soma and, §12
—Wart-šāms Nask, §33
Wasson, R. Gordon, §§55-14, §187, §198, §204, §243
water and haoma, §§282-286
Water, zaotra to, §129, §130
Watkins, C., §52 n.10, §208
Watson, P., §66
Watt, G., Table 1
weed, harmel as, §51, §83
well, ąb-zōhr poured down, §103
Wellmann, M., §52, §266
Weryho, J., Table 1
West, E. W., §30 n.6, §136 n.26
Westermann, E., §66 n.5
white bahman, §122 n.11
white color of harmel seed capsule, §§4 n.2, §69
white haoma, §§138, §§138 n.29, §195, §260
white harmel, §44 n.2
white island, §260
white twig of Wahman, §122 n.11, §260
white-colored mountains, §82
Widengren, G., §28 n.5
Wilkins, §1 n.1
wiltling of barsom stems, §126
Windfuhr, G., §91 n.26
wine, §§45, §§52, §§52 n.10, §§90 n.25, §§132 n.22, §§132 n.23, §§183, §§184
—nērang, §79 n.17
—mang, §40
—achaemenis, §149
—and harmel, §§44, §84
—and haoma, §§43, §79 n.16-17
—drōn rīte, §28 n.4
—intoxication of, compared with that of harmel, §§43, §§44
Wiraz, see Arda Wiraz wisdom, produced through haoma, §§33, §§33 n.2
Wishtāsp, §§28, §§28 n.5, §§29, §§219, §§220
—given hōm and mang, §28
—conversion of, §28 n.4
—initiation of, §§151 n.4
—mang of, §§214 n.3
cytology of name, §§250 n.3
witch, §§85
witchcraft, §§62, §§66, §§76, §§150
Withania somniferas, §§270
Wolff, F., §§166, §§167
wolves, §85
—blood of, §52 n.10, §269
womb, §40
—softened by harmel, §44b
women, haoma bundles bound by, §82
wool, from sacrificed sheep, §131
Wright, W. R., §122 n.11
Wüstenfeld, F., §122 n.11
Yadā Ahū Vairyo prayer, §150
yagé, 
—as mixture, §38, §116
—as ceremonial use of, §40
—as intoxication, unpleasant aspects of, §82 n.20
—as learning to use, §39
—as parallels with sauma, §42, §161
—as drinking required of shamans, §39
—as sorts of, §82 n.20
—as visions, §40
Yajñī, §133, §142, §155 n.5
Yaṣna, 
—āb-zōhr after, §130
—abbreviated form of, §132
—alcohol in, §79 n.16
—as ordeal, §§150-155
—as chief means of serving gods in Avesta, §124
—as duration of, §103
—as extended form of, §134
—as final, §138
—as hauma burned in, §99
—as haoma drunk during, §27, §78, §113
—as haoma prepared before, §104
—as hašanašpâta in, §117
—as held out of doors, §124
—as non-Zoroastrians may not witness, §79 n.17
—as recital of seventy-two chapters of, §90 n.24, §93, §104
—as stardness from, §29
—as strewing barasman during, §124, §258
—as originally included sauma drinking, §133
—as plants extracted for, §102
—as sauma intoxication outside of, §155 n.5
—as Zoroaster and, §31
yâtu spirits, §85
Yazd, §101 n.32, §106 n.1, §115, §122 n.11, §136, §276
yazīš, §24
yellow bahman, §122 n.11
yellow cow, §135, §138
Yemen, §68 n.7
Yima, §135
Younger Avestan language, §19 n.10
Zakariyar’ b. M. al-Qazwini, §§5 n.15
zaoḍras, §119, §§128-131, §138, §150, §282
zaotor, §103, §181
—as animal sacrifice by, §150 n.3
—as items consumed by, §113
—as prepares āb-zōhr during yasna, §104, §130
—as qualifications of, §151
—as role of, assumed by all Iranian priests, §151
—as acceptability demonstrated by ceremony, §152
—as follows Zoroaster, §150
—as self imprecations recited by, §150
—as Zoroaster as, §31
Zarathushtra, see Zoroaster
Zarātsht-Nāma, §28 n.4
Zātsparam, §32, §134, §138 n.29, §151 n.4
Zohary, M., §51 n.8
Zoroaster, §§28, §29, §98, §176
—as alleged mention of urine drinking by, §7, §158
—as alleged rejection of haoma by, §72, §159
—as alleged rejection of sacrifice by, §160
—as his father’s reward for preparing haoma, §32, §92
—as birth of, §32, §54 n.13, §71, §93
—as bravest, most active of creatures, §92
—as changed garment at haoma rite, §151 n.4
—as comes to drinker of haoma, §32
—as converses with haoma, §§91-92
—as converts Wishtâsp, §28 n.4
—as created within a twig of haoma, §32
—as dream of, §33
—as engendered by haoma and milk, §95, §138
—as first sees Ameshaespânts as demons, §30 n.6
—as given liquid omniscient wisdom, §33
—as haoma comes to, §§33 n.2
—as in river of haoma, §32
—as initial revelation of, §122 n.11, §134
—as mang of, §214 n.3
—as surrenders body to haoma, §150
—as reliance on sauma ceremonies by, §151, §152
—as reliance on sauma by, §31
—as šaēta of, §215
Zoroastrian holy days, see Gahâmbârs
Zoroastra, Greek plant name, §54 n.13
zōt, §103, see zaotor
Zygophyllum species, §265
Also available
University of California Publications: Near Eastern Studies


